Contents

Preface .............................................................................................................. xii
About this Book ............................................................................................... xv
Cast of Characters in the Book .......................................................................... xxii

Lesson 1: Basic Expressions .......................................................................... 1
Basic Expressions (I): Korean Script .............................................................. 1
Basic Expressions (I): Transcription .............................................................. 3
Guide to the Phonetic Transcription System in Lessons One to Four .......... 6
Lesson Notes ..................................................................................................... 7
  1.1. Styles of Speech ..................................................................................... 7
  1.2. Word Classes ........................................................................................ 8
Exercises ........................................................................................................... 10

Lesson 2: More Basic Expressions ................................................................. 12
Basic Expressions (II): Korean Script ............................................................ 12
Basic Expressions (II): Transcription ........................................................... 14
Lesson Notes ................................................................................................... 16
  2.1. Korean Sentence Patterns .................................................................... 16
  2.2. Korean Names ....................................................................................... 17
Exercises .......................................................................................................... 21

Lesson 3: Korean Writing and Basic Pronunciation .................................... 24
한글 The Korean Writing System ................................................................. 24
  The Vowels ................................................................................................. 25
  The Consonants ......................................................................................... 27
  More on the Three-way Consonants ......................................................... 30
The Alphabet in a Dictionary ........................................................................ 31
  1. Republic of Korea (South Korea) ........................................................... 32
  2. Democratic People’s Republic of Korea (North Korea) ..................... 33
How to Write Korean ...................................................................................... 34
  Stroke Orders ............................................................................................. 34
Structure of Written Syllables ...................................................................... 36
  Structure of Pronounced Syllables ............................................................. 37
Exercises ........................................................................................................... 39
Lesson 4: Further Pronunciation Guidelines ................................................................. 44
  4.1. Automatic Voicing of Plain ㄱ ㄴ ㄷ ㄹ ........................................................................ 44
  4.2. Non-release of Final Consonants .......................................................................... 45
  4.3. The Gang of Seven: ㄹ ㅁ ㅂ ㅅ ㅠ ........................................................................ 45
  4.4. Other Gang of Seven Situations ............................................................................ 46
  4.5. When the Gang of Seven Gets Up Your Nose ...................................................... 47
  4.6. Peculiarities of the Korean 음 .............................................................................. 48
  4.7. Automatic Doubling ............................................................................................ 49
  4.8. Leapfrogging 음 .................................................................................................. 50
  4.9. Pronunciation of 음 before i ................................................................................ 50
  4.10. Long and Short Vowels ...................................................................................... 50
  4.11. The Names of the Korean Letters ...................................................................... 51
Exercises: Pronunciation .............................................................................................. 52

Lesson 5: *This is my wife.* .......................................................................................... 54
Korean Dialogues ........................................................................................................... 54
Vocabulary ...................................................................................................................... 57
Lesson Notes .................................................................................................................. 59
  5.1. Pronouns in Korean .............................................................................................. 59
  5.2. Sentence Subjects and Topics ............................................................................... 60
  5.3. The Copula and Equational Sentences .................................................................. 64
  5.4. The Particle 도: too, also, even ........................................................................... 65
  5.5. Expressing Possession with the Particle 의 .......................................................... 66
  5.6. Nouns .................................................................................................................. 68
Exercises ......................................................................................................................... 70

Lesson 6: *Excuse me, but where is the Plaza Hotel?* .................................................. 73
Korean Dialogues ........................................................................................................... 73
Vocabulary ...................................................................................................................... 75
Lesson Notes .................................................................................................................. 78
  6.1. Existence and Location with 있어요 and 있어요 .................................................. 78
  6.2. Possession with 있어요 and 있어요 ..................................................................... 80
  6.3. Location Particle 에 in, at .................................................................................... 81
  6.4. The Particle 하고 and, with ............................................................................... 82
  6.5. Place Nouns ......................................................................................................... 82
  6.6. More about the Topic Particle 온 ~ 는 .................................................................. 85
  6.7. Answering Negative Questions ............................................................................ 85
  6.8. The Plural Marker 들 .......................................................................................... 86
Exercises ......................................................................................................................... 88
Lesson 7: Where do they sell tickets to Taejon?...............................................................94
Korean Dialogues.................................................................92
Vocabulary.................................................................94
Lesson Notes.................................................................97
  7.1. Verbs: The Polite Style and the Infinitive.........................................................97
  7.2. Korean Verbs with Consonant Bases.........................................................99
  7.3. The Dictionary Form of Korean Verbs......................................................100
  7.4. Three Types of Special Consonant Base...............................................100
  7.5. Korean Verbs with Vowel Bases..............................................................101
  7.6. The Direct Object Particle 였 ~ 투.........................................................104
  7.7. Particles of Direction: to, from..............................................................106
  7.8. Static and Dynamic Location..........................................................................107
  7.9. Using Location To Express Possession......................................................109
  7.10. Different Kinds of Verbs..............................................................................109
  7.11. More on the Particle 도..............................................................................111
  7.12. Placement of Manner Adverbs..................................................................112
Exercises ......................................................................................112

Lesson 8: Aren’t you taking any other subjects?.........................................................119
Korean Dialogues.................................................................119
Vocabulary.................................................................121
Lesson Notes.................................................................125
  8.1. Verbs: Short Negatives with 안 and 떠........................................................125
Pronunciation of 떠.............................................................................126
  8.2. Verbs: Honorifics..........................................................................................128
  8.2.1. The Honorific Marker -(으)시-..............................................................128
  8.2.2. The Honorific Polite Style: 하세요......................................................129
  8.3. Verbal Nouns: Processive and Descriptive.................................................133
  8.3.1. Separable Verbal Nouns (Processive)......................................................133
  8.3.1.1. Using 안 and 떠 with Separable Verbal Nouns (Processive)............134
  8.3.2. Nonseparable Verbal Nouns (Descriptive)............................................135
  8.4. More on Adverbs.......................................................................................135
  8.5. More New Particles: Instrumental -(으)로.........................................137
  8.6. More New Particles: -(이)랑 and..........................................................138
  8.7. Particle Sequences.....................................................................................139
Exercises ......................................................................................140
11.4. The Particles 부터 from and 까지 to .................................................. 202
11.5. Formal Style ............................................................................. 203
Exercises .......................................................................................... 207

Lesson 12: I like plays, but I don’t like concerts much .................. 212
Korean Dialogues .............................................................................. 212
Vocabulary ......................................................................................... 214
Lesson Notes ....................................................................................... 219
12.1. Verbs: Suspective Form -지 ...................................................... 219
12.2. Uses of the Suspective -지 ......................................................... 220
12.2.1: Any Base plus -지만 but.................................................... 220
12.2.2: Long Negatives in -지 않아요, -지 못해요 ............................. 221
12.2.3. Negative Commands and Suggestions in -지 마- 를- ................ 224
12.2.4. Negative Honorifics ............................................................... 226
12.3. The Particle 도: Noun Agreement ............................................. 226
12.4. Suggestions and Tentative Questions with -(으)르 까요 ......... 227
12.5. Thinking of Doing . . . with -(으)르 까 해요 ............................ 230
12.6. The Adverb 또, Particle 도, and Pseudo-particle (이)나 ............ 231
12.6.1. Adverb 또 versus Particle 도 ............................................... 231
12.6.2. The Particle (이)나 ............................................................... 231
12.7. More Ways To Say or ............................................................... 235
12.8. The Wanna Form in -(으)르 램 (요) ........................................ 236
12.9. Meanings for 좋아요 and Related Words ............................... 237
Exercises .......................................................................................... 238

Lesson 13: I just called a moment ago, but nobody answers ............ 243
Korean Dialogues .............................................................................. 243
Vocabulary ......................................................................................... 245
Lesson Notes ....................................................................................... 249
13.1. Verbs: the Sequential Form -(으) 니 (가) ................................... 249
13.1.1. -(으) 니 (가) As, Since, Because ......................................... 249
13.1.2. -(으) 니 (가) When . . ., (I realized or discovered . . .) ............ 250
13.2. Honorifics: Nouns and Particles ............................................. 251
13.2.1. Nouns ............................................................................... 251
13.2.2. Particles ............................................................................. 251
13.3. Kinship Terms .......................................................................... 252
13.4. Probable Futures with -(으) 르 거예요 ...................................... 254
13.4.1. Probable Futures in -(으) 르 거예요 on Plain Bases .......... 254
13.4.2. Probable Futures in -(으) 르 거예요 on Past Bases ............ 256
Reference Section

Korean to English Vocabulary .................................................. 317
English to Korean Vocabulary .................................................. 332
Korean to English Pattern Glossary .............................................. 349
English to Korean Pattern Glossary .............................................. 355
English Equivalents to the Korean Dialogues .................................. 363
Answer Key to Written Exercises ................................................ 370
Preface

This textbook began naively as a simple remake of Martin and Lee's *Beginning Korean* (1969). Because *Beginning Korean* is entirely in Yale Romanization, we believed Martin's system would be better appreciated if only the book were in Han'gul. The idea was to scan it onto disk, convert the Korean bits to a Korean font, and reissue the textbook. Ross King and Hyoshin Kim began scanning *Beginning Korean* onto disk at Harvard in 1989. Hyoshin Kim also did much of the initial hard work of creating the Microsoft Word™ files on the Apple Macintosh™ and converting the Korean fonts. She has been an excellent informant and critic throughout the project.

When we started teaching from *Beginning Korean* at the School of Oriental and African Studies (SOAS) in autumn 1990, we soon found that much needed updating, correcting, shortening, or throwing out. Much was also missing. We continued to write new dialogues, and rework and revise the grammar notes throughout the academic year 1991–92, during which time we taught first-year Korean not from *Beginning Korean*, but from the new Korea University textbooks. The Korea University books have given us many ideas, and we are grateful to the authors. We are also grateful to other textbooks for various ideas here and there: the Myongdo textbooks, Namguk Chang and Yong-chol Kim's *Functional Korean*, the Republic of Korea (ROK) Ministry of Culture's *Korean I-III*, and Adrian Buzo and Shin Gi-hyon's *Learning Korean: New Directions I* (Pilot Edition 5). Ho-min Sohn's recent descriptive grammar, *Korean* (1994), has also been of assistance.

In the nine years that have passed since this project began, the textbook has changed radically. While still owing much of its grammatical apparatus to the original *Beginning Korean*, this book has become a different creature. This is why, at the urging of Samuel Martin, we have changed the title to *Elementary Korean* and listed just our names as coauthors.

We would like to thank those who have helped make this textbook possible. Several cohorts of SOAS students have helped us—Chris Murphy and Eunice Brooker, who suffered through the first chaotic revision of *Beginning Korean*; Janet Poole and Denise Chai, who put in long hours during the summer of 1992 editing, organizing, and retyping the text; Flora Graham, Simon Hayward, Youngsoon Mosafiri, Natalie
Lemay-Palmer, Satona Suzuki, Lars Sundet, and Mark Vincent (the 1992–93 cohort); Tom Hunter-Watts, Sakura Kato, Stefan Knoob, Andrew Pratt, Andy Wong, Erin Chung, Charlotte Herlyk, Stephen Matthews, and Perinile Siern (the 1993–94 cohort); Andrew W. O'glinby, Adam Barr, Steven Conroy, Sung Khang, Sue Perkins Morris, Alex Calvo, Meher McIntosh, Aileen Baker, Ethan Bond, and Edith Hodder (the 1994–95 cohort); Akiko Maeda, Masamichi Yasuda, Daniel Choe, Fedor Tsoi, Yu Maeda, Reiko Yamazaki, Nakako Takei, and Izumi Nakamura (the 1995–96 cohort). Two British Foreign and Commonwealth Office (FCO) diplomats on the Korean Long Course at SOAS also used the second pilot version and gave us valuable feedback: Colin Crooks and Patrick Butler. Most recently, the University of British Columbia (UBC) Korean 102 (Elementary Korean) cohorts for the academic years 1995–98 have provided valuable feedback, especially Jeff Armstrong, Jenny Cho, Brian Choi, Chinfa Choi, Clara Choi, Dian Choi, Karen Cho, Mina Chung, Ted Kim, Hannah Joe, Janette Kim, Claudia Kwan, Jowan Lee, Marina Lee, Mieyoung Lee, Tammy Lee, Victor Lim, Liza Park, Delphine Tardy, David Thummm, Ryo Yanagata, and Jenny Yim. All have provided valuable comments and criticism for which we are grateful.

In particular, the authors wish to single out SOAS students Mark Vincent and Youngsoon Mosafiri for special thanks. Mark clocked nearly 100 hours revising, formatting, editing, and proofing the second pilot version on the Macintosh in May and June of 1993. He continued to provide excellent suggestions on fonts, formatting, style, content, and presentation in the 1993–94 academic session. Youngsoon performed the tedious, but important task of retyping all of the Korean in the new TrueType™ fonts on the Macintosh in the summer of 1994.

We have also benefited from the comments and criticisms of some of our colleagues. Seungja Choi was foolhardy enough to teach from the second pilot version during the 1993–94 academic session at Yale. She and her students raised many helpful points. SOAS Korean lecturers Youngjoo Lee, Jiyong Shin, and Jae-mog Song also provided valuable input. David Moon and Yoon-Suk Chung at the University of California-Berkeley both made many useful criticisms, and Bjørke Fredlesvig at the University of Oslo, Norway, gave valuable feedback too. In addition, some of our colleagues at the Korea Foundation-sponsored conference on "Collaborative Korean as a Foreign Language (KFL) Textbooks Development" in Seoul, December 1993, made some useful criticisms of the second version: Chongsuk Kim of Korea University, Dong-jae Lee of the University of Hawaii, and Young-mee Yu Cho of Stanford. More recently, the manuscript has benefited from excellent criticisms and suggestions by UBC Korean Language Instructor Insun Lee, who has taught from the book at

The recordings for this book were made in December of 1996, shortly before Tuttle Publishing underwent a series of managerial and editorial staff changes that have significantly delayed the appearance of this book. The technical aspects of the recording sessions were expertly supervised by Clay Dixon of UBC's Crane Production Unit in the Crane Resource Centre. Native speaker voices were cheerfully volunteered by Mr. Ilsung Lee, Mrs. Sunah Park Cho, Nam-tin Hur, Yunshik Chang, Miselli Jeon, Suk-man Jang, Hyoshin Kim, and a supporting cast of Korean visiting scholars and their families too numerous to name individually. We are grateful to them all.

Financial support for this project at SOAS came from the Korea Research Foundation through its generous annual grants to the SOAS Centre of Korean Studies. The authors also would like to thank the SOAS Research Committee for providing funds for research assistance on this project; and the Center for Korean Studies, University of California-Berkeley, for providing Ross King with the opportunity to convert the manuscript into NisusWriter™ as well as finish the pre-publication revisions while on a Korea Foundation post-doctoral fellowship during the 1994–95 academic year. Financial support for preparation of the final camera-ready copy at UBC came from the UBC Faculty of Arts, UBC’s Centre for Korean Research, and the SOAS Centre of Korean Studies. The authors were also pleased to win an Honorable Mention in the 1995 Tuttle Language Prize. We have used the prize money to support work on the textbook.

We would be delighted to hear more feedback, positive or negative, from future users of this book. Please contact us at these addresses.

Ross King
Department of Asian Studies
Asian Centre
1871 West Mall
Vancouver, B. C. (Canada)
email: jrpking@unixg.ubc.ca
fax: (604) 822-8937

J. H. Yeon
Centre of Korean Studies
SOAS, University of London
Thornhaugh Street, Russell Square
London WC1H 0XG (U.K.)
e-mail: jy1@soas.ac.uk
fax: (171) 323-6179
About this Book

Like other Korean language textbooks on the market, this textbook has its strengths and weaknesses. The authors have tried to write a book that will appeal to a broad range of learners, including individuals working on their own, professional people working with a tutor, and university students in a classroom setting. The following remarks are aimed at teachers contemplating using the textbook with learners of the latter type.

Main Objective

This course consists of two volumes, of which Elementary Korean is the first. The sequel volume, tentatively called Korean: A Continuing Course, should appear within a year of this volume. The main objective of the two volumes comprising this course is communicative competence in contemporary spoken Korean through a systematic and streamlined introduction to the fundamental patterns of the language. Most lessons in the sequel volume also contain a “Reading Passage,” and both volumes introduce a number of patterns more relevant to written language than spoken. In such cases, the student is advised as to the spoken vs. written language status of the pattern in question. Thus, Elementary Korean and Korean: A Continuing Course do not aim at oral competence alone.

In terms of the American Council of Teachers of Foreign Languages (ACTFL) Proficiency Guidelines, the authors believe that Elementary Korean and Korean: A Continuing Course together provide enough material for a student to attain an Intermediate-Low to Intermediate-Mid proficiency level. Of course, this is also dependent on the number of contact hours and the quality of “act-related” instruction provided.

Basic Methodology

This textbook is unabashedly structuralist and eclectic in its philosophy and methodology. Some teachers versed in the latest task-based and proficiency-oriented approaches to language teaching may find the book’s structuralist approach reminiscent of the grammar translation method and the audio-lingual method. Such teachers should remember one point: the book does not teach the course in the classroom.

The authors believe the textbook is amenable to any number of language-teaching approaches and styles in the classroom; yet, we see it primarily as an out-of-class reference tool to ready the students for whatever activities their teacher has prepared for them in class. The
grammar notes are richer (though still concise) than those in other textbooks for at least two reasons:

1. to help those students working on their own without recourse to a teacher
2. to reduce the amount of class time needed for “fact” (as opposed to “act”).

About the Exercises
The exercises at the end of each lesson are designed primarily as written homework, not as oral exercises for the classroom. We have deliberately omitted oral pattern drills from the lessons because we feel such drills take up unnecessary space and are easily constructed by the teacher. Thus, one major shortcoming of the textbook is the lack of a teacher’s manual with ideas and guidance for both task-based classroom activities and pattern drills. The lack of a teacher’s manual or activity book places an additional burden on the teacher, but in this respect our textbook is no different from other Korean textbooks currently available. Insun Lee at the University of British Columbia is currently working on a combination teacher’s manual-and-activity book; look for it in the near future. In the meantime, we encourage teachers using the book to share their ideas and supplementary materials with us.

About the Dialogues: Themes and Situations
The dialogues were written after the authors had determined which patterns were to appear in which sequence in the course. This increases the risk of producing dialogues that become mere vehicles for the structural items being introduced. Keeping this risk in mind, we have tried to write dialogues that succeed at once in illustrating each new structural point in the lesson and in introducing tasks and situations likely to be of immediate use to a beginner. We have tried to keep the conversations natural and colloquial and, where possible, humorous.

The dialogues cover the themes of daily academic life in Korea, business, and travel. Most of the dialogues center around two middle-aged foreigners (Chris and Eunice Murphy) and their two university-aged children (Eric and Sandy). The authors hope these characters will enhance the functional range and potential market for the book.

Situations and functions covered in the two volumes include: greetings and good-byes, classroom expressions, identifying things and introducing people, existence, location and possession, asking for directions, buying tickets and other travel-related situations, discussing one’s studies and one’s language abilities, telling time, ordering at a restaurant, asking for people on the telephone, shopping, social drinking, etc. Though our treatment of situations is by no means comprehensive, most situations and tasks necessary for attaining basic proficiency are covered.
About Transcription
The first four lessons include broad phonetic transcriptions of the Korean material. The transcriptions are not romanization—students can learn the McCune-Reischauer and Yale romanizations in a Korean studies course. The transcriptions are there for students who want them and are presented separately from the Korean-script renditions (in Lessons One and Two). Teachers and students who want or like transcription can use it, while others have the option to ignore it.

About Teaching the Korean Script
Some Korean teachers proudly teach the Korean script from day one. Others prefer to wait a few weeks while working in an exclusively oral-aural mode. All Korean teachers have their own way of teaching the Korean script, and thanks to the genius of the script itself, they all work. This is why our textbook does not dwell on the script; we simply give the basics rather than force one or another scheme on the teacher and student.

The authors prefer to wait at least a week or two before introducing the Korean script. We keep practicing the basic expressions from Lessons One and Two while hammering home the various pronunciation points treated in Lessons Three and Four until everyone is ready for Lesson Five. Lessons Three and Four are more akin to reference lessons—points to come back to again and again over the course of an entire academic year—than to lessons for formal, systematic presentation in the classroom. We find it most useful to treat Lessons One to Four as an organic whole, the contents of which can be covered in any number of ways.

Lessons One and Two introduce approximately seventy daily and classroom expressions, which at first blush seems a lot. But recall that these expressions are the raw material around which the pronunciation points in Lessons Three and Four are to be reinforced. Thus, students actually have four lessons’ worth of time to practice these expressions in class.

About Contact Hours
Most university Korean courses in the United States, Canada, United Kingdom, Australia, and New Zealand meet four or five hours per week. At this pace, the authors would recommend covering one lesson for every eight to ten classroom hours, in which the students have at least a 30-minute quiz at the end of every other week. But the authors recognize that different students and different courses proceed at different paces; thus, anywhere from six to ten hours per lesson is possible, depending on the circumstances. The authors believe the book is particularly well-suited for an intensive course of eight to ten
contact hours per week, in which case it would be possible to finish both Elementary Korean and Korean: A Continuing Course (forthcoming) in one academic year.

About Vocabulary
This textbook introduces a lot of vocabulary, some one thousand items in all. The authors are skeptical of statistical frequency list approaches to introducing vocabulary, since these frequency lists are never based on the vocabulary needs of university students, businessmen, or travelers learning Korean. Our book includes many sophisticated adult, intellectual vocabulary items—the sorts of words that mature adults would like to be able to say early in their Korean learning career. Furthermore, since Korean does not give the English speaker as many shortcut vocabulary “freebies” as does French or Spanish or German, it is a hard fact of life that students need to spend more time on vocabulary building.

It is also the view of the authors that some vocabulary items cost more than others to learn. This view is reflected in the layout of the vocabulary sections, where certain words are indented beneath others to indicate that these items are related to the main vocabulary item in question, and thus cost less to learn.

Other features of the vocabulary sections to be born in mind are these: (1) starting with Lesson Seven, all verb bases are given in the special notation which students learn in this lesson; (2) processive and descriptive bases are distinguished from each other by their English glosses—descriptive verbs are always preceded by be (blue, sad), while processive verbs are not; (3) vocabulary is broken up into sections according to part of speech—verbs, nouns, adverbs (although the classification of verbal nouns is often arbitrary); (4) we have tried to provide more exemplification of the vocabulary items than is typical of other textbooks. Example sentences using a particular vocabulary item in context are indented below the main word.

About Verbs and Lesson Seven
Lesson Seven is the “heartbreak hill” of the course—if the students don’t survive it, they will not survive the course (or ever learn Korean, for that matter). Lesson Seven is unusual in two ways. First, it covers more or less all major verb types in one fell swoop (sort of the way they do it in intensive university Latin and Greek courses). Crucially, it includes those verbs traditionally called irregular: p-w verbs and t-l verbs. The authors have found that it is usually possible to ask for and get more effort from students at the beginning of the course when they are still fresh and excited from the initial exposure to the language. Lesson Seven is to verbs as Lessons Three and Four are to pronunciation: it is important to master the basics early, after which one can keep coming back to problem points.
The second important feature of Lesson Seven is its treatment of the so-called irregular verbs. Our analysis follows Samuel E. Martin's style in turning the traditional analysis on its head. This is most significant for the p-w verbs and t-l verbs, but also applies to the L-extending verbs. In Martin's system, the p-w verbs are bases ending in w, and the students learn a rule that changes w to p (ㅂ) before consonants, e.g., hot 더 w- + -다 -> sharply (see below for use of linguistic symbols in this book). The w counts as a consonant, and students also learn the rule that w + 음 gives 우: 더 w- + -으세요 -> 더우세요.

In the case of verbs like 들다 listen, Martin takes the form with 놓 as the base (꼽-), and students learn a rule which changes 놓 to 놓 before consonants: 들- + -다 -> 들다. Verbs like 살다 live are treated as a special kind of L-extending vowel base (사- 놓-) that requires the addition of an 놓 in front of certain verb endings.

Our analysis of the p-w verbs actually saves the student one rule in comparison to the traditional treatment, and in general the analysis completely dispenses of the traditional Korean notion of irregular verbs for these conjugation classes. It is this prejudicial notion of irregular verbs that leads some Korean teachers (and students) to regard them as difficult, and tackle them far too late in a student's career.

About Speech Styles and Honorifics
Our book introduces Polite Style 써요 first, beginning in Lessons Five and Six (copula -이예요, 있어요, and 없어요), followed by a comprehensive overview of Polite Style for most major verb classes in Lesson Seven. This is directly related to the Martinesque analysis of those verbs traditionally called irregular by Korean grammarians (Martin chops off everything to the left of the infinitive vowel -야~ -어 and calls it the base). The honorific suffix -(으)시- is introduced in Lesson Eight, and Formal Style 합니다 is introduced in Lesson Eleven. Apart from the basic expressions in Lessons One and Two, which are presented without analysis for rote memorization, the student will not see honorific forms until Lesson Eight and Formal Style forms until Lesson Eleven. This seems a small price to pay for a systematic, streamlined, and sequenced introduction to the structures.

About Orthography
Some teachers are finicky about spelling and conforming to the latest official orthographic guidelines. We are not. Whether one writes 할 거예요 or 할 자예요, for instance, seems to have little or no bearing on how well students assimilate this pattern. Our book uses the latter spelling, even though it is now nonstandard orthography, because (1) this is how it is actually pronounced, and (2) students have already learned the simple rule for the copula that the -에- drops regularly in colloquial speech after a vowel. They can learn about the
vagaries and idiosyncrasies of official Korean orthography at a later stage, once they actually
know the patterns.

About the English Translations and Glosses
In a number of cases the English translations of Korean expressions and patterns are structured
to resemble as closely as possible the Korean meaning. In some cases, students and teachers
may feel that certain English renditions are not typical English usage. For example, the
authors are well aware that 'wanna' is not considered good English. However, this contracted
form is used for pedagogical reasons (the form in question is also historically derived from
a contraction in Korean), and seems to work as a mnemonic device, too. The authors ask for
indulgence on this matter.

About Linguistic Symbols
Both authors received their primary training in linguistics, and this background is reflected
in the analyses in the book and in the use of certain linguistic symbols. Our use of linguistic
symbols amounts to a special kind of code that is designed to streamline the learning
process for the student, and to streamline the book’s presentation. Once the teacher and
students have mastered the few simple symbols below, they should have no trouble following
the exposition in the book.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-(Times), -(Apple Myungjo)</td>
<td>The hyphen is used to demarcate boundaries and bound forms. Because the abstract Korean verb stems (we call them bases) to which students must attach endings are all bound forms (that is, they cannot be used and do not occur in real speech without some ending), verbs in each lesson’s Vocabulary List are listed as a base, that is, as a bound form, followed by a hyphen to its right (e.g., 고생을 하- e.g. 고생을 하- 하- he works). The same goes for all verb endings in Korean—they are abstract notions that only occur in Korean when attached to a verb base; they are bound forms, and always appear in the book with a hyphen to their left. We continue to refer to verb bases and endings in the grammar notes in this way, too.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ (Times), + (Apple Myungjo)</td>
<td>The plus sign means 'plus' 'added to' 'in combination with'.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Phonemic notations are enclosed by slash brackets and phonetic notations by square brackets. Most examples of slash brackets have been purged from the book, but we often use square brackets to indicate the phonetics, i.e., actual pronunciation of a Korean form when this is not indicated in the Korean orthography. Another usage of the square brackets is to indicate optional material.

* The asterisk is used to mark grammatically unacceptable utterances.

→ This arrow sign means 'becomes', 'gives', 'yields', 'produces'.

← This arrow sign means 'comes from', 'is a product of', 'derives from'.

~ (Times), ~ (Apple Myungjo) The tilde is used to represent an alternation, and means 'in alternation with'.

Note the following example:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{W} & + & \text{-} & \rightarrow \\
\text{-} & \text{-} & \text{O} & \downarrow
\end{array}
\]

Here, the w- identifies a particular verb class in Korean (p-w verbs), learned in Lesson Seven (think of it as a kind of code—this is how we teach it in class). The hyphens indicate boundaries, the + indicates “plus”, and the arrow means ‘yields, gives’. This particular example is as complicated as our ‘code’ gets, and makes sense in the context of the lesson in which it is introduced.
Cast Of Characters

The Murphy Family:

Christopher Murphy, a middle-aged British businessman in charge of the Seoul office of a Yorkshire textiles firm
Eunice, his Australian wife who teaches piano at an International School in Seoul;
Eric and Sandy, their 21-year old twins, both attending the International Division at Korea University

The Kim family:

Mr. Ch’ang-gi Kim, Chris Murphy’s Korean teacher, a middle-aged Korean
his wife, a full-time housewife active in their local church
Chin-yŏng, their 21-year old daughter
Chin-sŏp, their twenty-year old son, both attending Korea University

Others:

Miss Lee, Christopher Murphy’s secretary, a woman in her mid-twenties
할머니 (halmŏni), the grandmother living across the hall from the Murphy’s place
Mr. Kang, a senior employee of Han’guk Sŏmyu, a Korean textiles firm based in Pusan, a middle-aged man who is a long-time business associate of Chris Murphy
Mr. Nam, another business associate of Chris Murphy
Yŏngch’ŏl, a friend of Eric’s from Korea University
Sŏngman, a friend of Sandy’s from Korea University
Miss Kwak, a waitress befriended by Eric

The list above is given to clarify the gender, age, status and inter-relationships of the various characters in the book, since this affects the style of Korean which they use in addressing each other.
In this lesson you will learn the first of two sets of Basic Expressions that you will use constantly in everyday life in Korea and that you will need in the classroom. The purpose of memorizing these expressions is to help you come to grips with Korean pronunciation. You needn’t worry at this stage about the grammar or about how things are written. They are expressions of greeting and general politeness for the most part. We also introduce you to some of the fundamental features of all Korean sentences.

Basic Expressions I: Korean Script

Shortly you will learn the Korean alphabet, at which time you should use this section to review the basic expressions. Until then, you may find it helpful to have a simple Roman-script indication of how the sentences sound. Therefore, we have provided in the following section a transcription of the same set of basic expressions in a phonetic notation to give you a guide to pronunciation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. 네 or 예</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. 아니오</td>
<td>No.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 김 선생님, 안녕하세요?</td>
<td>How are you, Mr. Kim?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explanation: 김 (a family name); 선생 teacher, Mr. or Mrs. or Ms.; 선생님 revered teacher, Mr., Mrs. or Ms.; 안녕하세요? Are you peaceful (well)?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. 네, 안녕하세요?</td>
<td>Fine, how are you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. ... 입니다.</td>
<td>I'm ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. 만나서 반갑습니다.  
   Nice to meet you; nice to see you.
   Literally: I meet you, so I am pleased.

7. 안녕히 가세요.  
   Good-bye!
   To one who is leaving. Literally: Go in peace (i.e., health).

8. 안녕히 계세요.  
   Good-bye!
   To one who is staying. Literally: Stay in peace (i.e., health).

9. 수고하십시오.  
   Hello! (to someone working)
   수고하세요.  
   Good-bye! (to someone working)
   수고하셨어요.  
   Thank you for helping me or Well done!
   Explanation: 수고 hard work, i.e., You're doing a great job; Keep up the good
   work; and Well done.

10. 처음 뵐겠습니다.  
   Pleased to make your acquaintance.
   Literally: I see you for the first time (formally) i.e., How do you do?

11. 또 뵐겠습니다.  
   See you later! (FORMAL)
   Explanation: 또 again, 뵐겠습니다 will humbly see / meet. Literally: I will
   humbly see you again.

12. 고맙습니다 or 감사합니다.  
   Thank you.

13. 청만해요 or 편찮아요.  
   You're welcome! or Don't mention it!
   Literally: It's one of ten million (words).

14. 어서 오세요!  
   Welcome!
   Literally: Come (in) right away!

15. 들어오세요!  
   Come in!
   Literally: Please enter.

16. 안으세요.  
   Please take a seat / sit down.

17. 설례합니다.  
   Excuse me (for what I am doing).
   Literally: I am committing a discourtesy.

Lesson One / 2
Basic Expressions I: Transcription

You are meant to master the basic expressions of Lessons One and Two before learning the Korean alphabet. Some students will be able to do this through practice and listening to the tape alone. Other students will prefer the visual mode for memorization. As a memory aid in the first few days before you learn the Korean alphabet, we reproduce below the basic expressions you have just seen. This time in phonetic transcription, followed by a chart explaining the transcription symbols. This transcription writes the basic expressions roughly as they sound—use it to jog your memory, not as a crutch.

Lesson One/3
1. ne or ye.
   Yes.

2. anio.
   No.

3. kim sŏnsŏngnim, annyo[h]apse yo?
   How are you, Mr. Kim?

4. ne annyo[h]apse yo?
   Fine, how are you?

5. . . .imnida.
   I'm . . .

6. mannasŏ pangapssimnida.
   Nice to meet you; nice to see you.

7. annyo[h]i gase yo.
   Good-bye! (to one who is leaving)

8. annyo[h]i gese yo.
   Good-bye! (to one who is staying)

9. sugohašimnida!
   Hello! (to someone working)

   sugohase yo!
   Good-bye! (to someone working)

   sugohašosso yo.
   Thank you for helping me or Well done.

10. čoimb[w]epkkessimnida.
    Pleased to make your acquaintance.

11. tto b[w]epkkessimnida.
    See you later! (FORMAL)

12. komapssimnida. or kamsa[ha]mnida.
    Thank you.

13. čommaney yo. or kwaenčhana yo.
    You're welcome or Not at all.

Lesson One / 4
14. osò ose yo!
   Welcome!
15. tiro ose yo!
   Come in!
16. andźise yo.
   Please take a seat; please sit down.
17. šiĺ'le[h]amnida.
   Excuse me (for what I am doing).
   šiĺ'le[h]essimnida.
   Excuse me (for what I did).
   šiĺ'le[h]agessimnida.
   Excuse me (for what I'm about to do).
18. mian[h]amnida. or čwesoŋ[h]amnida.
   I'm sorry or Excuse me.
19. anio, kwənčbana yo.
   Not at all; it's all right.
20. yobose yo!
   Hello! or Hey there!
   It's time (to begin or stop).
22. tto b[w]a yo.
   See you later!
23. kirm yò?
   Is that so? Really?
   kirm yò.
   That's so. Really.
# Guide to the Phonetic Transcription System in Lessons One to Four

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phonetic Symbol</th>
<th>Approximate Sound Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>a as in father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ae</td>
<td>a as in bat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>č</td>
<td>relaxed ch as in chill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>čʰ</td>
<td>aspirated ch as in chop!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>čč</td>
<td>tense tch as in matchmaker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dž</td>
<td>dg as in edge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>e as in bet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>u as in pull but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>without lip rounding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>ee as in feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>h as in hope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>relaxed k as in kitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kʰ</td>
<td>aspirated k as in kill!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kk</td>
<td>tense k as in skill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>l as in lamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lʰ</td>
<td>soft l as in eel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>m as in mom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>n as in nice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋ</td>
<td>ng as in sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>o as in poke with lip rounding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oʰ</td>
<td>aw as in thaw or uh as in uh-oh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>relaxed p as in park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pʰ</td>
<td>aspirated p as in pow!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pp</td>
<td>tense p as in spa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>s as in sigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ss</td>
<td>tense s as in stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>š</td>
<td>sh as in sheet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>relaxed t as in tall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tʰ</td>
<td>aspirated t as in talk!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tt</td>
<td>tense t as in star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>oo as in boot with lip rounding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>w as in wide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>y as in yard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson One / 6*
Lesson Notes

1.1. Styles of Speech

Korean is characterized by an intricate system of social styles; you have just had a glimpse of the system in the basic expressions. This characteristic is so pervasive that it is impossible to speak more than a few connected words in Korean without becoming involved with HONORIFICS and politeness; yet, there is nothing in English which corresponds to it. Of course, in English there are also times when we select different speaking styles to suit the social setting. Compare, for example, the impersonal or official-sounding *What is your native country?* and the conversational *Where are you from?* To attract someone’s attention, we might say under certain circumstances *Pardon me, Sir!* and under certain others *Hey you!* However, in the Korean language these speaking styles are more formally codified. Every Korean sentence can be adjusted to each of several hierarchical styles in a regular and systematic way. This is done chiefly by changing the endings on the verbs. Occasionally, stylistic implications in Korean are conveyed in the vocabulary itself: two words denoting the same thing differ in social connotations. For the most part, however, the style factors appear not in the words themselves but in verb endings.

Two considerations are significant in the Korean speech styles:

When talking to a person:

Words have different endings attached to them, determined by the social relationship between the speakers.

When talking about a person:

Words and parts of words are changed to their Honorific form to show special respect to the person discussed. Honorific forms are never used by the speaker to refer to himself or herself.

The following chart presents the major styles you will be learning in *Elementary Korean*:

---

*Lesson One 17*
Major Speech Styles in this Book

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>(Regular)</th>
<th>Honorig</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Polite</td>
<td>해요</td>
<td>하세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formal</td>
<td>합니다</td>
<td>하십시오</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Most of the basic expressions of this lesson are in the Honorific Polite 하세요 (haseyo) style, but a few of the more stylized greetings and expressions are in the Formal 합니다 (hamnida) style. Most of the Korean you will learn in this course will be in the Polite 해요 (haseyo), Honorific Polite 하세요 (haseyo), Formal 합니다 (hamnida) or Honorific Formal 하십시오 (hashimnida) styles, the most useful styles for everyday conversation.

1.2. Word Classes

Korean words, like those of every other language, fall into several different kinds or classes; the words are classified according to the way they are used in sentences.

Korean VERBS (the words at the end of nearly every basic sentence in this lesson) are INFLECTED WORDS: they consist of a basic part, the BASE, to which various ENDINGS are attached in order to make them mean different things. For example, we have already had the following three sentences:

24. 설레 합 니다.                      Excuse me (for what I am doing).
    실레렇습니다.                      Excuse me (for what I did).
    설레한겠습니다.                   Excuse me (for what I'm about to do).
    실레한겠습니다.                      

Lesson One / 8
The verb in each case is the same. Here, it means *do*, and its basic part is -하[-ha-]. Only the endings are different, and it is these that give the changes in meaning.

Here are a few sentences of another kind (you are not meant to learn those you haven’t seen—just look at them).

25. 용서하세요.  
*yongsahaseyo.*  
*Please forgive me.*

26. 안녕히 가세요.  
*annyeon [h]i geose yo.*  
*Good-bye (Go in peace).*

27. 안녕히 계세요.  
*annyeon [h]i gese yo.*  
*Good-bye (Stay in peace).*

28. 책을 보세요.  
*ch'agil bose yo.*  
*Please look at your books.*

These sentences all have different verbs, but the verbs all end the same way: -세요 [-seyo]. This ending (a combination of suffixes) makes each verb express a polite request.

Korean NOUNS, on the other hand, are not inflected; they can be used with no endings attached to them. Instead, PARTICLES are optionally added to show the relationship between the noun and the rest of the sentence, much as prepositions are used in English. The great majority of Korean nouns correspond to English words which are also nouns, e.g. 책 [ch'ag] *book*, 질문 [ch'il'mun] *question*, 영어 [yǒŋ'o] *English*, etc. This is not always the case, however!

As a vocabulary item, 책 [ch'ag] means *book*. In sentences, however, we translate it variously: *book, a book, the book, some books, any books, the books*, and *books*. This is another way of saying that Korean has no words corresponding to *a(n), the, some, any*, and that Korean nouns may have a plural meaning without any explicit sign that they are plural. To be sure, it is possible to make Korean nouns unambiguously plural, as we will learn later, but it is not imperative to do so, as it is imperative with most English nouns. In English, *book*, for example, is specifically singular; whereas, *books* is specifically plural. This rule applies every time they are used.

*Lesson One 19*
Exercises

Exercise 1: English Equivalents

Give English translations of the following Korean sentences, and practice them until you recognize them and can pronounce them fluently.

1. 그래요?
2. 고맙습니다.
3. 또 왔습니다.
4. 김 선생님, 안녕하세요?
5. 수고하십시오.
6. 만나서 반갑습니다.
7. 여보세요!
8. 살례했습니다.
9. 처음 뵐겠습니다.
10. 들어오세요!

Exercise 2: Korean Equivalents

Give the Korean equivalents of the following English sentences. You may like to do this as a written drill when you have learned the alphabet, but you should also do it orally, as fast as you can.

1. Pleased to meet you!
2. Well done! (Thanks for doing such a good job.)
3. How are you, Mr. Lee?
4. Welcome!
5. Don't mention it!
6. It's time to stop.
7. See you later.
8. Do excuse me!
9. Good-bye. (As you are leaving, to someone staying behind.)
10. Good-bye. (To someone who is working.)
Exercise 3: How Do You Respond?

Picture yourself in the following situations. What would be the correct response to make, in Korean?

1. Someone crashes into you in the supermarket and apologizes profusely.
2. The phone rings. You pick it up.
3. Your boss introduces you to a friend of his whom you have not met.
4. What might the friend respond?
5. You are told some unusual news. How might you express your surprise?
6. You meet a friend in the street and wonder if she is well.
7. Someone visits your house, and you tell them to come in and sit down. How do you say that?
8. Class is nearly over, but your teacher seems oblivious to the time. What could you say to him?
9. You cut across the view of several Koreans watching television on your way through a room.
10. Someone gives you flowers.
11. You are asked whether or not you are married. Say yes or no, as appropriate.
12. You arrive late for an appointment. (Find a different expression to the one you used for number 9.)
14. What other expression might you have used?
15. If he were someone with whom you were on formal terms, how might you have said good-bye?
In Lesson Two we have the second set of Basic Expressions, most of which would be used in the classroom. In the Lesson Notes you will find out more about the characteristics of Korean sentences, plus there is a section on Korean names. The exercises cover both Lesson One and Lesson Two. Once again, the key expressions are given in the Korean script, then again in romanized transcription to help you memorize them.

**Basic Expressions II: Korean Script**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. 하나 좀 삽 넷 다섯</td>
<td>1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여섯 일곱 여덟 아홉 열</td>
<td>6, 7, 8, 9, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> 여덟 <em>eight</em> is actually pronounced 여덟.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. 시작할까요?</td>
<td><em>Shall we start?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 시작합시다.</td>
<td><em>Let's begin.</em> (teacher to students)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. 책을 보세요.</td>
<td><em>Please look at your books.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explanation:</strong> 책 <em>book(s)</em>; 책을 <em>book(s)</em> (as direct object); 보세요 <em>please look (at it).</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. 첫 페이지를 보세요.</td>
<td><em>Please look at the first page.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explanation:</strong> 첫 <em>the first</em>; 페이지 <em>page</em>; 보세요 <em>please look (at it).</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. 책을 보지 마세요.</td>
<td><em>Please don't look at your books.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. 다음 페이지를 보세요.</td>
<td><em>Please look at the next page.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson Two / 12*
8. 듣기만 하세요.  Just listen, please.  
Explanation: 듣기 the act of listening; 듣기만 only listening; 하세요 please do it.

9. 따라 하세요.  Please repeat (after me).  
Explanation: 따라 following, repeating 하세요 please do, please say.

10. 다 같이.  All together.  
Explanation: 다 all; everyone; 같이 together (pronounced 가치)

11. 다시 한번.  One more time.  
Explanation: 다시 again, once more; 한번 once, one time

12. 대답하세요.  Please answer.  

13. 말하세요.  Please say it or Please talk.  
Explanation: 말 language, word(s), speech, talking; 말(을) 하세요 please speak; please say it. 말씀하세요 is even more polite.

14. 다시 말씀해 주세요.  Please say it for me again. Please repeat.  
Explanation: 다시 again, once more; 해주세요 Please favor me by doing it, i.e., Please do it for me.

15. 크게 말씀해 주세요.  Please say it loudly.  
Explanation: 크게 so that it is big; loudly

16. 천천히 말씀하세요.  Please say it slowly.  

17. 한국말로 하세요.  Please say it in Korean.  
Explanation: 한국말로 in Korean; 하세요 Please say it.

18. 영어로 하지 마세요.  Please don't say it in English.  
Explanation: 영어로 in English; 하지 마세요 Please do not do it.

19. 알겠어요?  Do you understand?  
Literally: Will you know? Might you know? Would you know?

20. (네) 알겠어요.  (Yes,) I understand.  
Literally: I will know. I would know. I'll probably get it.

Lesson Two / 13
Basic Expressions II: Transcription

1. hana, tulv, set, net, tasot
   1, 2, 3, 4, 5

   yosot, ilv gop, yoldv, ahop, yolv
   6, 7, 8, 9, 10

2. šidžak halv'kka yo?
   Shall we start?

3. šidžak hapššida.
   Let's begin.

4. čamgıl bose yo.
   Please look at your books.
5. č'op peidžiril bose yo.
   Please look at the first page.

6. č'agił bodži mase yo.
   Please don't look at your books.

7. taim peidžiril bose yo.
   Please look at the next page.

8. tikki man hase yo.
   Just listen, please.

9. ttara hase yo.
   Please repeat.

10. ta gači.
    All together.

11. taši hanbon.
    One more time.

12. tədap hase yo.
    Please answer

13. mar[h]ase yo.
    Please say it.

    Please say it for me again.

15. k'ige mal'ssim[h]ædzuse yo.
    Please say it loudly.

    Please say it slowly.

17. hanguŋmal'lo hase yo.
    Please say it in Korean.

18. yöoro hadži mase yo.
    Please don't say it in English.

19. al'gesso yo?
    Do you understand.

20. [ne] al'gesso yo.
    Yes, I understand.
21. anio, morigesso yo.
   No, I don't understand.

22. čil'mun isso yo?
   Any questions?

23. ne, isso yo.
   Yes, I have (a question).

24. anio, opso yo.
   No, I haven't.

25. šippun man šwipššida.
   Let's rest for ten minutes.

26. nidžoš čwesoŋ[h]amnida.
   Sorry I'm late.

Lesson Notes

2.1. Korean Sentence Patterns

The basic sentences of Lessons One and Two give you an opportunity to observe, over and over, a basic characteristic of Korean sentences: the verb expression comes at the end. This means, of course, that in a great many cases the order of things in a Korean sentence is different from the English order. Translated directly, Sentence Twenty-one of Lesson One, for example, 시간이 다 됐습니다 is The time all has-become; Sentence Fourteen of this lesson, 다시 말씀해 주세요 is Once again saying-please give and so on.

In Korean sentences, the order of the various parts is determined not by grammatical function, as it is in English, but by importance: the closer a word is to the end of a Korean sentence, the more important it is. At the very end comes the one element that is indispensable: the verb. Many Korean sentences contain nothing but a verb.

먹었어요.  
I've eaten.

This verb says in a formal way that someone ate, past tense; that is all it specifies. But the sentence is grammatically complete. It would not be wrong to add a subject and/or an object, but it would be superfluous.

Lesson Two / 16
Aside from commands, it is a rare English sentence that has no subject. Telegram, postcard, or diary style are special cases: *Arrive 9 a.m. Monday. Will bring George. Saw a movie last night. Having a wonderful time.* Even commands not uncommonly have subjects: *You stop that!* *You boys get out of here!*

As a general rule, the nearer a word or phrase appears to the beginning of a Korean sentence, the less essential it is—the more readily expendable. The order of such elements as subject, object, time, place, is determined by the emphasis assigned to each; and one thing that makes them less necessary is earlier mention in a context.

A conversation beginning with a sentence like *John bought a new suit* could continue in Korean without further mention of either *John* or the *suit*. Notice that in English both of these must reappear, as pronouns if not in their original form: *When did he buy it?* The Korean equivalent could say simply *When bought?* and still be complete.

In other words, old information, if repeated at all, comes at or near the beginning of a Korean sentence, while newly supplied information clusters near the verb. If subject and object both offer new information, the object is more likely to come next to the verb.

### 2.2. Korean Names

In Sentence Three of Lesson One you saw the expression 김 선생님 [kim sonseon nim] *Mr. Kim.* This illustrates another difference in English and Korean word order: the title is used after the name.

김 [kim] *Kim* is a family name. As a general pattern, a Korean has two names: first of all the family name, then this is followed by a personal or given name. Most of the family names have one syllable, though there are some which have two: for example, 황보 [hwang bo], 육고 [tokko]. If the family name has one syllable, the personal name most commonly has two: 이승만 [isim man] *Syngman Rhee*, 김일성 [kim ilsong] *Ilsung Kim*. If the family name has two syllables, the personal name has only one, so that either way there are usually three syllables in the full name. There are exceptions to this pattern, and a number of Korean names have only two syllables: for example, 허웅 [houng], 백철 [baek cheol], 김구 [kim gu] etc. The following table shows some common Korean surnames:

*Lesson Two / 17*
It is often possible to guess the gender of a person on the basis of the syllables used in their given name. Some syllables tend to occur only in males' names, others only in females' names.

Syllables used typically in names for males: 천 [ch'ol], 호 [ho], 데 [t'we], 석 [sok], 준 [chun], 훈 [hun], 설 [sop], 식 [shik], 범 [pom]. For example:

천민 천수 천호 천호
ch'olmin ch'olsu chinho chinho
호철 석헌 홍석 석준
hoch'ol sokhonz honsok sokchun
혁준 테경 제훈 정호
hyokchun t'egyon chahun choho
태호 춘섭 익섭 규식
t'ahho chunsop iksoo kyu'ishik

Syllables used typically in names for females: 미 [mi], 회 [hiiy], 나 [na], 에 [ae], 자 [ca], 허 [he], 선 [son], 경 [kyo'og], 숙 [suk]. For example:

수미 미나 경애 승자
sumi mina kyonae sigdza

진희 회정 민희 경희
chinhny hyydzon minhiy chyhy
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kyeolgwa</td>
<td>miyong</td>
<td>inmi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyeol梭</td>
<td>mison</td>
<td>chison</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is only a general rule of thumb. Some syllables (like 회 [hiy]) can occur in both male and female names.

A title always comes at the very end, and can be used with a full name (surname plus given name) or just a given name, in the case of 씨, or with full name or just surname, in the case of 선생님.

김복동 씨  
Kimbokton 씨

Poktong Kim (a male's name), or

복동 씨  
Pokton 씨

Chinhee Chang (a female's name), or

장진희 씨  
Chandzinhie 씨

Činhiıy 씨

Mr. Poktong Kim (Honorific)

김복동 선생님  
Kimboktonsonseon Nim

Mr. Kim (Honorific)

Unless you are on intimate terms with somebody, it is usual to refer to that person in Korean by their name plus a title. One of the most commonly used titles is the little word 씨, which comes after a person's full name, or just after the given name. This is the title you should use when referring to your peers.

When talking to, or about, children, it is customary to attach the diminutive suffix -이 [i] to given names ending in a consonant. Thus, if 김복동 [kimbokton] is a small boy, you would refer to him as just 복동이 [poktoni], without a title. If the child's name ends in a vowel, as in the girl's name 진희 [činhie], it simply stays the same. No diminutive suffix is added.
선생 [саннён] is a word that, on its own, means teacher. With the honorific particle 님 [nim] after it, it functions as a title of respect honoring the person whose name it accompanies. You should use this title with the names of people to whom you wish to show courtesy. You should not use it with your own name. When you introduce yourself, for example, simply give your name My name is Adams or I'm Helen Baker with no title. 님 [nim] is an honorific suffix which you can add to titles (but not to 것 [sisi]) to show an added degree of respect or deference. Nowadays, Koreans seem to use 선생님 [саннённиним] more than plain 선생 [саннён].

When otherwise unspecified, the title 선생님 [= 산남님] is usually translated Mr., but sometimes the context tells you that Mrs. or Miss would be more appropriate. To say specifically Mrs. or Miss you have to say something like Mr. Kim's wife 김 선생님 부인 [kim 산남남 루인] or Mr. Kim's daughter 김 선생님 딸 [kim 산남남 뿰들], or else you can simply do it in English 미세스 김 [misessim], 미스 김 [misigim]. If the Kims are parents, an informal way of saying Mrs. Kim is to refer to her as the eldest child's mother, e.g., 북동이 아버지 [pok tongi abori] Mr. Kim (who is Pekong-i's mother), and similarly Mr. Kim may be referred to as 북동이 아버지 [pok tong abori] Mr. Kim (who is Pekong-i's father). Foreigners sometimes mistranslate Mrs. Kim as 김부인 [kim buin] rather than 김 선생님 부인 [kim 산남님 루인]. In Seoul you will often hear 사모님 [samoim] used for Mrs. or Madam (instead of so-and-so 선생님 부인). 사모 [samo] is an elegant word that originally means one's teacher's wife, but it can be used to refer to the wife of your superior or of any prominent man. The usual way for you to refer to your teacher's wife is 사모님 [samoim].

There are a number of ways to say you in Korean, and the most polite way is by using a title or name plus title. As your study of the language proceeds, you will notice that Korean is in many respects less direct than English. Sentence Three of Lesson One (김 선생님 안녕 하세요?) is an example of such indirectness; it seems to say How is Mr. Kim?, but it means How are you, Mr. Kim?

주의! Caution!

While it is acceptable to use either the Western order or the Korean order when giving a Western name, you should always use the Korean order with Korean names, e.g.,

애니 스미스입니다 or 스미스 애니입니다 I'm Annie Smith,

but only

김복동입니다 I'm Pekong Kim.

Lesson Two / 20
Exercises

Exercise 1: Practicing Responses

Which response(s) are appropriate to the sentence given? First read aloud the sentence itself, then all the responses given. Finally, read the initial question or sentence along with the correct response(s) and translate.

1. 안녕하세요?
   a. 네, 안녕하세요.
   b. 편찮아요.
   c. 천만해요.

2. 처음 뵙겠습니다.
   a. 실패합니다.
   b. 만나서 반갑습니다.
   c. 미안합니다.

3. 미안합니다.
   a. 들어 오세요.
   b. 수고하세요.
   c. 아니오, 편찮아요.

4. 고맙습니다.
   a. 네.
   b. 천만해요.
   c. 또 만나요.

5. 안녕히 가세요!
   a. 안녕히 가세요!
   b. 안녕히 계세요!
   c. 또 뵙겠습니다.

6. 질문 있어요?
   a. 없어요.
   b. 있어요.
   c. 다시 말해 주세요.

7. 알겠어요?
   a. 네, 알겠어요.
   b. 아니오, 모르겠어요.
   c. 네, 있어요.

8. 시작할까요?
   a. 시작합니다!
   b. 편찮습니다.
   c. 시간이 다 됐습니다.

Lesson Two /21
Exercise 2: Match the Appropriate Response

Match each sentence in the left-hand column with an appropriate response from the right-hand column. You may use some responses more than once; others not at all.

1. 고맙습니다.  
2. 안녕하세요?  
3. 질문이 있어요?  
4. 실례했습니다.  
5. 알겠어요?  
6. 그래요?  
7. 안녕히 계세요.  
8. 미안합니다.  
9. 실례했습니다.  
10. 수고하셨어요.  

a. 안녕히 가세요!  
b. 네, 있어요.  
c. 아니오, 죄송이요.  
d. 죄송이요.  
e. 네, 고맙습니다.  
f. 네, 그래요.  
g. 모르겠어요.  
h. 네, 안녕하세요?  
i. 네, 알겠어요.

Exercise 3: Remember the Korean Equivalent

Give the Korean equivalents of the following English expressions.

1. Shall we start?  
2. Excuse me.  
3. Yes, let's begin.  
4. All together. Please say it in Korean.  
5. Do you have any questions?  
6. Please don't look at your books.  
7. Could you repeat, please?  
8. Say it loudly, please.  
9. Please answer. Do you understand?  
10. Please look at the next page.  
11. Please speak slowly.  
12. I don't understand.  
14. Really?
15. Let's rest for ten minutes.
16. Please don't talk in English.
17. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10
18. Let's rest for ten minutes (again!).
19. Just listen, please.
20. I'm sorry I'm late.
21. Please look at the first page.
22. Please repeat after me.
23. Thank you.
24. Good-bye!

**Exercise 4: Practice with Korean Names**

Practice reading the following Korean names. Can you guess whether the person is male or female?

1. 김정호 
2. 이석현 
3. 박은미 
4. 최홍석 
5. 장혜경 
6. 남경자 
7. 홍진호 
8. 허미선 
9. 서지선 
10. 배경회 
11. 조철민 
12. 노호철 
13. 정재훈 
14. 임석준 
15. 오경애 
16. 강승자 
17. 안철호 
18. 한수미 
19. 심진희 
20. 윤철수

**Exercise 5: Vocabulary Drill**

The vocabulary items you have learned at this point are not easy to separate from the short sentences in which they appear. One way you can drill yourself on the words is to make use of a technique that will be valuable throughout the lessons.

After you have completed the job of memorizing the basic sentences, copy each one on a 3-by-5-inch index card or slip of paper. Write the Korean on one side, the English on the other, with one sentence to a card. Shuffle the cards thoroughly, arranging them so that you see only the Korean side. Run through them as rapidly as you can, reading aloud the Korean and immediately calling off the English equivalent.

Reshuffle and repeat, looking only at the English. See whether the Korean comes instantly to your mind. By this method, you can be the judge of whether you have completed your work on Lessons One and Two.

*Lesson Two / 23*
Lesson 3

Korean Writing and Basic Pronunciation

By the time you reach this lesson, it is time to learn the Korean writing system. This section is not intended as a complete training course on writing with the Korean alphabet, but the lesson gives you important information about Korean pronunciation and the way in which the written signs are tied to the spoken sounds. It is important that you take pronunciation seriously. Your aim should ultimately be to sound like a native Korean speaker. Good pronunciation of Korean is difficult, but the rules formulated in this and the following lesson should help you a great deal throughout your Korean studies, if you take time to learn them properly. The rules are demonstrated by Korean words, most of which you won't have seen before. You are not intended to learn all these off by heart; they are there merely to illustrate the different sounds of Korean. In the exercises there is plenty of practice with both writing and pronunciation.

한글 The Korean Writing System

Han'gul, the Korean writing system (한글 in Korean), is one of the most scientifically designed and efficient scripts in the world. Promulgated in 1446 by the sage King Sejong 세종 under the title Humin Ch'ong'um 혼민경음 (meaning The Correct Sounds for the Instruction of the People), han'gul was the product of deliberate, linguistically informed planning. The Korean script is remarkably original and has resisted all attempts to prove its relationship to this or that other system of writing.

As you will soon see, Han'gul is also quite easy to learn; the Korean language, on the other hand, is quite difficult. We have so far avoided the term alphabet. Han'gul is usually referred to as an alphabet, and that it is, but with one special quirk: rather than arranging its letters in a row from left-to-right and writing on-line, e.g., 슬 - 높 - 고 for han'gul, han'gul has always written Korean words in syllable blocks 한글.

Lesson Three / 24
Now let us look at the letter shapes that comprise the alphabet and learn how to pronounce Korean. To the left of each of the letters we have given an English sound approximation. This is not intended as a rigorous romanization system, but merely as a rough equivalent in English of the Korean letter. Always imitate your Korean instructor.

The Vowels

Korean has the following vowel signs.

\[ \text{a} \quad \text{aw} \quad \text{o} \quad \text{oo} \quad \text{æ} \quad \text{e} \quad \text{i} \quad \text{ee} \quad \text{we} \quad \text{wi} \quad \text{iy} \]

- \( \text{a} \) as in father
- \( \text{aw} \) as in thaw, \( \text{uh} \) as in uh-oh
- \( \text{o} \) as in poke (push your lips out!)
- \( \text{oo} \) as in boot (push your lips out!)
- \( \text{æ} \) as in bat
- \( \text{e} \) as in bet
- \( \text{i} \) as in pull (don't push your lips out!)

The vowel \( \text{u} \) is pronounced with your tongue in the position for \( \text{u} \), but with no lip-rounding (smile!)

- \( \text{ee} \) as in feet
- \( \text{we} \) as in wet

The vowel \( \text{we} \) is therefore pronounced exactly the same as \( \text{æ} \) by most Seoul speakers. (Pursed lips at the start only).

- \( \text{wi} \) French \text{oui}
- \( \text{iy} \) as in pull followed by \( \text{ee} \) as in feet, pronounced as one sound. At the beginning of a word, pronounce \( \text{æ} \) as Korean \( \text{æ} \), with two vowels run together in a row. When not at the beginning of a word \( \text{æ} \) is pronounced as Korean \( \text{æ} \) (some speakers use \( \text{æ} \) everywhere).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{의자} & \quad [\text{으이자}] \quad \text{chair} \\
\text{주의} & \quad [\text{주이}] \quad \text{attention}
\end{align*}
\]

Lesson Three /25
By adding a stroke to the first six vowel signs above, the Koreans produced the combination 
\( y \) plus VOWEL. For example, \( e \) (as in get) becomes \( ye \) (as in yes).

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
y a & \text{ya as in yard} \\
y o & \text{yo as in yonder} \\
y o & \text{yo as in yoga (push your lips out!)} \\
y u & \text{yu as in yuletide (push your lips out!)} \\
y e & \text{ya as in yap or Yankie} \\
y e & \text{ye as in yep}
\end{array}
\]

Finally, the following combinations give \( w \) plus VOWEL.

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
w a & \text{the first vowel sound of wide or wow} \\
w o & \text{wo of wonder} \\
w a & \text{wa of wax} \\
w e & \text{we of wet (that is, it has the same pronunciation as \( y \) above)}
\end{array}
\]

This concludes all the vowel sounds possible in Korean.

Any written syllable in \text{한글} (han'gul) must begin with a consonant sign. In order for 
these vocalic signs to form the nucleus of a syllable (remember that the Koreans write in 
syllable blocks), they must attach to the side of or below a consonant sign. This means 
that even when the syllable contains no spoken consonants (when it begins with a vowel 
in pronunciation), you still have to start the syllable with the little circle \( \circ \) representing 
a zero consonant.

To put it another way, when a spoken syllable begins with any of the vowel sounds 
above, Han'gul treats the initial consonant as a zero and writes it as such.

\[
a \quad \text{아} \\
w a \quad \text{와} \\
y a \quad \text{야}
\]

\textit{Lesson Three / 26}
The Consonants

We begin by continuing to look at the ￮ symbol. This zero sign has a clever alter ego: whereas at the beginning of a syllable (before a vowel) it functions as zero (telling the reader "Don't pronounce me!"), at the end of a syllable it represents the sound ng as in English singer. When it is not zero (before a vowel sound) this sound is always as ng in English sing, never as in finger (фин-гер). E.g.,

\[ o_n \quad o_n \quad a_n \quad a_n \quad o_n \]

Since Korean has no basic syllables of the type ɲ plus VOWEL (њa, ɲu, etc.), this is quite a clever economy and one good example of the ingenuity of Han'gul.

Now look at the rest of the consonants.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{p} CTOR \quad p as in park, but relaxed
  \item \textbf{pʰ}  %+ \quad p as in pow! with lots of aspiration (air)
  \item \textbf{pp}  %+ \quad p as in spa, tense, tight, no aspiration
  \item \textbf{t} CTOR \quad t as in tall, but relaxed
  \item \textbf{tʰ}  %+ \quad t as in talk! with lots of aspiration
  \item \textbf{tt}  %+ \quad t as in star, tense, tight, no aspiration
  \item \textbf{k} CTOR \quad k as in kiss, but relaxed
  \item \textbf{kʰ}  %+ \quad k as in kill! with lots of aspiration
  \item \textbf{kk}  %+ \quad k as in skill, tense, tight, no aspiration
  \item \textbf{ɕ} CTOR \quad ch as in chill, but relaxed
  \item \textbf{ɕʰ}  %+ \quad ch as in change! with lots of aspiration
  \item \textbf{čč}  %+ \quad tch as in matchmaker, tense, tight, no aspiration
  \item \textbf{m} CTOR \quad m as in mother
\end{itemize}
The sounds \( n, l, h, s \) and \( ss \) require a bit more explanation and a bit more care in learning to pronounce them.

\[ n \quad \text{as in no} \]

For \( n \) the tongue tip touches the upper teeth, as in most continental European languages. Be sure to make your double \( nn \) and double \( mm \) double!

\begin{align*}
\text{몸} & \quad \text{body} \\
\text{아마} & \quad \text{perhaps} \\
\text{삼만} & \quad \text{thirty thousand}
\end{align*}

\[ \text{눈} \quad \text{paddy field} \\
\text{이나} & \quad \text{no} \\
\text{언니} & \quad \text{older sister of a female} \]

\[ l \quad \text{as in lamp and feel or } r \quad \text{as in Spanish} \]

The Korean consonant \( l \) will sound different to you in different environments.

\begin{enumerate}
\item[a)] At the beginning of a syllable (in foreign words only), it is rolled like Japanese or Spanish \( r \).
\begin{align*}
\text{라디오} & \quad \text{radio} \\
\end{align*}

\item[b)] Between vowels (including \( w/y \) plus vowel) or vowel and \( h \) (which often drops), it is also rolled (like the Spanish \( r \)).
\begin{align*}
\text{아래} & \quad \text{below} \\
\text{일원} & \quad \text{one wŏn} \quad \text{(Korean currency)} \\
\text{설화} & \quad \text{tale, legend}
\end{align*}

\item[c)] When double, make a \textbf{long}, and somewhat soft \( l \).
\begin{align*}
\text{물라요} & \quad I \text{ don't know} \\
\text{실패} & \quad \text{discourtesy}
\end{align*}

\item[d)] When before a consonant, or final before a pause, you will hear a clear, soft \( l \) as in English \textit{feel}.
\begin{align*}
\text{물} & \quad \text{water} \\
\text{실망} & \quad \text{disappointment}
\end{align*}
\end{enumerate}

\textit{Lesson Three / 28}
**h**

- as in hope

  a. An initial *h* is made with friction in the throat, as when blowing to steam up glasses.

  하나

  *one*

  b. But before *y* or *i*, the friction may be between the middle front of the tongue and the hard palate, giving a soft sound close to the German *ich*.

  혓

  *tongue*

  혀

  *strength*

  c. And between voiced sounds (*m, n, l* and vowels) the *h* is weak, and often drops, especially when preceded by *ŋ* (the *ng* sound in *singer*) or *n* and followed by *i* or *y*.

  시험

  [*시험 or 시험*]

  *examination*

  안녕히

  [*안녕히*]

  *in good health*

  많이

  [*많이*]

  *much, lots*

  전허

  [*전혀*]

  *[not] at all*

---

**s**

- as in soul, but relaxed and somewhat weak.

**ss**

- as in soul (but more tense and tighter than the single *s*)

  a. The single *ㅅ* is very weak, something less than an English *s*, and often followed by a little puff of local air. You should practice trying to make your Korean *ㅅ* breathy. The double *ㅆ* is very strong, something more than an English *s*, with tension in the throat and tongue.

  살

  *flesh*

  삼

  *hulled rice*

  b. Before *ㅇ* and *ㄹ*, most speakers change the *s* to a soft *sh*. Some speakers do this also for the tense *ss*.

  시

  *poem*

  싶

  *seed*

  쉽시다

  *let's rest*
More on the Three-way Consonants

As you have seen above, for the sounds like p, t, k, č, Korean exploits a three-way contrast based on aspiration and tenseness where English exploits just a two-way contrast based on voicing. That is, where English has just pig/big, tug/dug, kit/git, chokeljoke, Korean has three types of consonants in each position. The question of voiced/voiceless (English p vs. b, t vs. d, k vs. g and ch vs. j) is irrelevant to Korean: it is not distinctive.

The basic series in Korean is:

\[ p \quad t \quad ć \quad k \quad ď \quad č \quad s \]

By doubling each of these consonants, the Koreans write the tense, unaspirated series:

\[ pp \quad tt \quad ČČ \quad kk \quad ďď \quad ĆĆ \quad xx \]

The best way to master their pronunciation is to start off pronouncing an s-cluster, e.g., spa, and then suppress the s. Alternatively, it is useful to fake a French or Spanish accent when pronouncing these: French and Spanish p, t, k are much less aspirated than in English.

Next, by adding a stroke to the basic plain series, the Koreans write their lax, aspirated series:

\[ p^h \quad t^h \quad Ė Ė \quad k^h \quad ĝ ĝ \quad ĉh \quad ž \]

These sound like English pike, take, kite, cheat, but with more aspiration than in English. If you hold a piece of paper three inches from your mouth, it should jump away when you pronounce the aspirated sounds. On the other hand, if you hold a piece of paper three inches from your mouth and pronounce the tense, unaspirated (double) sounds, the paper should not move at all. When you pronounce plain p, t, k, ć, the piece of paper should move slightly, but not nearly as much as with the aspirated sounds. It is useful to practice producing these consonants one after the other, with one of each three types.

We can now draw out the comparison between the three different types of consonants for each one in turn.

Lesson Three / 30
Three kinds of initial беж:  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lax</th>
<th>Lax Aspirated</th>
<th>Tense Unaspirated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>불</td>
<td>fire</td>
<td>蝄 horn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Three kinds of initial 틀: (Tongue tip touches upper teeth!)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lax</th>
<th>Lax Aspirated</th>
<th>Tense Unaspirated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>달</td>
<td>moon</td>
<td>달 daughter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Three kinds of initial 개:  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lax</th>
<th>Lax Aspirated</th>
<th>Tense Unaspirated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>개</td>
<td>dog</td>
<td>개 sesame</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Three kinds of initial 자:  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lax</th>
<th>Lax Aspirated</th>
<th>Tense Unaspirated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>자</td>
<td>sleeps</td>
<td>자 is cold</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Alphabet in a Dictionary

Korean dictionaries employ a bewildering variety of han'gul alphabetizations. However, they can be divided into two broad types. The first is most common in South Korea, the second is official in North Korea. The South Korean dictionaries imbued all the vowel signs under the letter 오; whereas, the North Korean dictionaries relegate the letter 오 in its zero reading (i.e., preceding vowels) to the back of the dictionary. In the early stages of your course you will not need to consult a dictionary often, but later you will do so considerably. You will probably want to refer to this section at a later stage.

Lesson Three /31
1. Republic of Korea (South Korea)

(Read from left to right.)

Consonant Order

\[
k \rightarrow (kk \mathrm{kk}) \quad n \rightarrow \quad t \rightarrow (tt \mathrm{tt}) \\
l \rightarrow m \mathrm{m} \quad p \rightarrow (pp \mathrm{pp}) \quad s \rightarrow \\
(\mathrm{ss} \mathrm{ss}) \mathrm{ø} / \mathrm{øj} \quad o \rightarrow (\mathrm{ örg} \mathrm{ örg}) \quad \check{e} \rightarrow \\
k^h \rightarrow t^h \mathrm{t} \quad p^h \mathrm{p} \quad h \rightarrow
\]

Note: For an explanation of the letters in parentheses, see the next page.

Vowel Order (within the zero consonant sign \( \mathrm{ø} / \mathrm{øj} \quad o \))

\[
a \rightarrow a \quad a \rightarrow y \rightarrow y \rightarrow \\
\check{e} \rightarrow e \quad e \rightarrow y \rightarrow ye \rightarrow \\
\check{o} \rightarrow w \rightarrow w \rightarrow we \rightarrow yo \rightarrow \\
u \rightarrow w \rightarrow w \rightarrow wi \rightarrow yu \rightarrow \\
i \rightarrow iy \rightarrow i \rightarrow i \\
\]

Lesson Three / 32
There are three variations on the South Korean ordering:

1. Ignore double consonants except where entries are otherwise the same.

2. Ignore double consonants except where entries are otherwise the same, but keep a difference for final double consonants analogous to that of the singlets:

   k ㄱ kk ㄲ ks كس n ㄴ nכ nn
   l ㄹ lk ㄠ lm ㄠ lp ㄠ lp ls ㄌ
   lth ㄪ lph ㄪ lh ㄪ p ㅂ ps ㄫ
   s ㅅ ss ㅆ

3. Recognize double consonants both initially and finally, making separate places for the initial double consonants (as in parentheses on the preceding page), and keeping the final double consonants in the order shown in item two.

2 Democratic People’s Republic of Korea (North Korea)

In North Korea, the doubled consonants and all the vowel signs are placed at the back of the dictionary:

Consonant Order

k ㄱ n ㄴ t ㄷ l ㄹ m ㅁ p β s ㅅ -o ç 스
ch ㅊ kβ ㅋ th ㅌ pβ ㅍ h ㅎ
kk ㄲ tt ㄸ pp ㅃ ss ㅆ ç ㅆ

Lesson Three / 33
Vowel Order (within the zero consonant sign ㅇ)

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
a & 아 & ya & 아
\end{array}
\begin{array}{cccc}
o & 오 & yo & u
\end{array}
\begin{array}{cccc}
i & 이 & i & y
\end{array}
\begin{array}{cccc}
æ & 에 & yæ & e
\end{array}
\begin{array}{cccc}
we & 와 & wo & wa
\end{array}
\begin{array}{cccc}
iy & 위 & iy & we
\end{array}
\begin{array}{cccc}
yo & 여 & yu & ye
\end{array}
\begin{array}{cccc}
y & 여 & ye
\end{array}
\begin{array}{cccc}
\end{array}
\]

How To Write Korean

Stroke Orders

It is important to learn correct stroke orders from the beginning. Let's begin with two general principles of Korean writing.

1. Everything horizontal moves from left to right. This applies to the movement of individual strokes, as well as to writing a sequence of letters (e.g., the consonant first, then the vowel).

2. Everything vertical moves from top to bottom.

How to combine a consonant with a vowel:
Any written syllable in 한글 must begin with a consonant sign. This means that even when the syllable contains no spoken consonants (i.e., when it begins with a vowel in

Lesson Three / 34
pronunciation), you still have to start the syllable with the little circle ○ representing a zero consonant, as you have learned.

A vowel letter is placed to the right of, or below the initial consonant. Possible patterns, therefore, are as follows:

```
  C  V
```

Examples:
가  조
키  유
더  그

The final consonant of a syllable (if it has one) is placed directly below the preceding consonant and vowel, regardless of how they are arranged (i.e., whether horizontally or vertically).

The possible combinations are:

```
  C  V
```

Examples:
감  좀
침  윤
德尔  글

A block forming a syllable with three letters (C - V - C) will naturally be more congested than a block with two letters (C - V). However, each syllable (or block) should be approximately of the same size, regardless of the number of letters contained in it. It is, therefore, necessary to make the size of the letters smaller when a syllable contains three
or four letters, as you can see in the examples below (don’t worry about how to pronounce these for now—they are here to demonstrate written syllable composition). Those syllables with four signs in them will have the shape:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c}
\text{C} & \text{V} & \text{C} & \text{C} \\
\hline
\text{C} & \text{V} & \text{C} & \text{C} \\
\end{array}
\]

Examples:

입

삼

넙

더

茹

Structure of Written Syllables

These notes concern the written structure of syllables, that is, how syllables are recorded and dealt with in the writing system, not how they are pronounced.

1. If the vowel letter has a long vertical stroke, then the vowel letter is written to the right of the initial consonant sign.

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c}
\text{kim} & \text{nam} & \text{som} & \text{pak} \\
\hline
\text{han} & \text{ka} & \text{mo} & \text{si} \\
\end{array}
\]

2. If the vowel letter has a long horizontal stroke, then the vowel letter is written below the initial consonant letter.

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c}
\text{song} & \text{mun} & \text{tong} \\
\hline
\text{no} & \text{tu} & \text{čo} \\
\end{array}
\]

Lesson Three / 36
3. If the vowel letter has both a long vertical stroke and a long horizontal stroke, then the (diphthong) vowel letter is written in such a way as to fit under and to the right of the initial consonant letter.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{곽 금 위 원} \\
kwak & \quad k\text{won} \\
\text{ㅈيء 쩔 죄} \\
\text{čwi} & \quad č\text{we} & \quad č\text{we}
\end{align*}
\]

4. It is possible to have a written syllable with two consonant letters filling the final position.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{있 복 않 절} \\
it-- & \quad muk-- & \quad an-- & \quad čom--
\end{align*}
\]

But note that in the pronunciation, the double ss, double kk, nč and lm at the end of each syllable are reduced to t, k, n, m respectively. This is because no vowel yet follows, and so the Korean is stuck on a consonant which he cannot yet release.

**Structure of Pronounced Syllables**

The following notes concern only the structure of pronounced syllables, not written forms.

1. Sometimes, Korean pronounced syllables follow Korean written syllables closely, if we ignore the technicality that an initial ◯ is a consonant, but not pronounced.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{하나} & \quad (CV\cdot CV) \\
h\text{ana} & \\
\text{어머니} & \quad (V\cdot CV\cdot CV) \\
o\text{moni} & \\
\text{째이} & \quad (CV\cdot V) \\
\text{če}i & \\
\text{여기} & \quad (V\cdot CV) \\
y\text{ogi}
\end{align*}
\]

*Lesson Three / 37*
2. At other times, the written structure tries to preserve consistency where, in pronunciation, changes occur. Thus, the final consonant of a preceding syllable is pronounced as the initial consonant sound of the following syllable when the following syllable begins with a vowel.

받아요 CVC-V-V in writing, CV-CV-V pa-da-yo in pronunciation
먹어요 CVC - V-V in writing, CV-CV-V mo-go-yo in pronunciation

Note that in earlier times, when the Korean spelling system was less consistent, these would have been written 바다요 and 먹어요.

산이나 CVC - V - CV in writing, CV -CV-CV sa-ni-na in pronunciation
있어 VC - V in writing, V-CV i-ssā in pronunciation

3. If the syllable has two different final consonants before a vowel-initial syllable, then the first of these closes the first phonetic syllable, and the second begins the following phonetic syllable.

읽어요 VCC-V-V in writing, VC-CV-V il-y-go-yo in pronunciation
露(948,939),(976,951)

Lesson Three / 38
Exercises

Exercise 1: The Korean Script—Review and Practice

Practice your writing and stroke orders in the empty boxes under Practice.

1. The Vowels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter Shape</th>
<th>Sound Value</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Practice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ㅏ</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>ㅏ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅑ</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>ㅑ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅓ</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>ㅓ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅕ</td>
<td>yo</td>
<td>ㅕ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅗ</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>ㅗ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅛ</td>
<td>yo</td>
<td>ㅛ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅜ</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>ㅜ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅠ</td>
<td>yu</td>
<td>ㅠ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅣ</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>ㅣ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅣ</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>ㅣ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Three / 39
2. The Consonants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter Shape</th>
<th>Sound Value</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Practice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ㄱ</td>
<td>k, -g-</td>
<td>기역</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄴ</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>니온</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄷ</td>
<td>t, -d-</td>
<td>디근</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄹ</td>
<td>l/r</td>
<td>리울</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅁ</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>미음</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅂ</td>
<td>p, -b-</td>
<td>비음</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅅ</td>
<td>s/š, -t</td>
<td>시옷</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅇ</td>
<td>ø/-ŋ</td>
<td>이옷</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅈ</td>
<td>ğ, -dž-, -t</td>
<td>지옷</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅊ</td>
<td>ğʰ, -t</td>
<td>치옷</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅋ</td>
<td>kʰ, -k</td>
<td>키옷</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅌ</td>
<td>tʰ, -t</td>
<td>티옷</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅍ</td>
<td>pʰ, -p</td>
<td>퍼옷</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅎ</td>
<td>h, -t</td>
<td>헤옷</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercise 2: Recognizing Country Names

The following Korean words written in Han'gul are the names of countries which you should be able to recognize. To practice your writing in Han'gul, copy each one out three times and then write down the English equivalent.

1. 케냐  
2. 프랑스
3. 파키스탄  
4. 멕시코
5. 라오스  
6. 그리스
7. 이라크  
8. 핀란드
9. 뉴질랜드  
10. 싱가포르
11. 덴마크  
12. 네덜란드
13. 타이  
14. 폴란드
15. 칠레  
16. 스웨덴
17. 리비아  
18. 브라질
19. 인도네시아  
20. 캐나다
21. 말레이시아  
22. 니카라구아
23. 쿠바  
24. 베트남
25. 리히텐슈타인  
26. 레바논
Exercise 3: Recognizing Loans from English

The following Korean words have been borrowed from English, and you should be able to recognize them. To practice your writing in Han’gul, copy each one out three times and then write down the English equivalent.

1. 라디오 2. 버스
3. 택시 4. 피아노
5. 캥거루 6. 토스트
7. 데니스 8. 바나나
9. 카메라 10. 쓰세지
11. 레몬 12. 체즈
13. 케이크 14. 아이스크림
15. 카세트 16. 인터뷰
17. 호텔 18. 골프
19. 토마토 20. 나이트클럽
21. 텔레비전 22. 타이어
23. 컴퓨터 24. 헬비거
25. 트럭 26. 샌드위치
Exercise 4: Practicing Consonant Contrasts

Practice pronouncing the two-way and three-way consonant contrasts in the words below. Do not worry about the meanings—many are nonsense words anyway.

1. 달 2. 팔 3. 칼 4. 쟈
   달 박 박 달 박
   달 박 박 달 박

5. 키 6. 피 7. 조 8. 터
   기 빼 조 떠
   기 빼 조 떠

9. 차차 10. 코코 11. 페페 12. 두두
    쟈차 코코 빼빼 두두
    차차 고고 빼비 두두

13. 아차 14. 위퀴 15. 우쭈 16. 어뻐
    아차 위퀴 우쭈 어뻐
    아차 위퀴 우쭈 어뻐

17. 안카 18. 온파 19. 인차 20. 원차
    안카 온빠 인짜 원짜
    안가 온바 인차 원차
Further Pronunciation Guidelines

There are certain pronunciation rules which you must learn for the Korean language and it is best to get these out of the way towards the start of the course. Words may be pronounced differently than they appear. Nonetheless, there are a number of rules that apply universally when certain letters appear together, and learning these rules will help you not to make those mistakes that betray you as a foreigner! You may need to refer to the various sections in this lesson again later in the course—they will provide a valuable reference.

4.1. Automatic Voicing of Plain ㅂ, ㄷ, ㅈ, ㄱ

The normally voiceless sounds shown by the single ㅂ, ㄷ, ㅈ, ㄱ p, t, z, k (which have a light puff of local air when they are at the beginning of a word) are voiced between voiced sounds (i.e., vowels, y, w, m, n, ŋ, l) so that they will sound like b, d, dʑ, g.

아버지  a-bŏ-dʑi  father
단아요  taa-da-yo  closes it
애기    a-gi     baby
담배    tam-bae  cigarettes, tobacco
안동    an-dong  (name of a city)
중국    choong-guk  China
갈비    kal-bi  ribs
안주    an-dʑu  food to go with alcoholic drinks
4.2. Non-release of Final Consonants

Korean never allows its speakers to release a consonant at the end of a syllable unless they have to. Korean speakers have to release a consonant at the end of a syllable when the word is followed by (1) a particle or ending that begins with a vowel, or (2) by the special verb -이예요 it is......

In the case of final unreleased p, t, k, it is often difficult for English speakers to hear the consonant—it sounds as though the Koreans swallow their consonants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Final /-P/</th>
<th>Final /-K/</th>
<th>Final /-T/ (usually from /-l/)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>꽁 hoof</td>
<td>국 soup</td>
<td>꽁 kut exorcism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꽁 pus</td>
<td>옥 jade</td>
<td>꽁 ot garment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>임 mouth</td>
<td>목 throat</td>
<td>꽁 mot pond; nail</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3. The Gang of Seven: 같다, 네, 외, 왼, 오, 오, 일

The only consonants that can be pronounced at the end of a syllable in Korean are the following seven: 같다, 네, 외, 왼, 오, 오, 일 (see above) and 네, 왼, p, t, k (but remember: Korean doesn’t allow you to release them unless you have to).

When the basic form of a word ends in something else other than these seven consonants, the "something else" must be reduced to one of these seven consonants, unless the word is followed by (1) a particle or ending that begins with a vowel, or (2) by the special verb -이예요 it is.....

| 앞에 ape | 앞 a[ap] | front |
| 앞은 kapsin | 앞 kap | price |
| 앞에 pakke | 밖 pak | outside |
| 앞이예요 tali'gieyo | 앞 t[ak] | chicken |

Lesson Four /45
The reduction rules are as follows.

Original sounds Reduce to


Note how many different consonant sounds an unreleased ㅏ can disguise. In particular, note that an unreleased ㅅ gets pronounced as ㅏ. In fact, most unreleased ㅏ-sounds you will hear in Korean are really a final ㅅ in disguise.

4.4. Other Gang of Seven Situations

The final-reduced forms in ㅂ, ㅏ, ㅋ and ㅅ, ㅈ, ㅊ are used not only when the word is before a pause, but also before words beginning with consonants and even before words beginning with vowels, provided the following word is not a particle (e.g., the subject particle ㅓ or the locative particle ㅔ) or the special verb -어 or -어요. it is . . . .

닭고기 → 닭고기 [다наци] chicken (as meat)

takkogi

Lesson Four / 46
발도 → 발도  [바도]  patto  the field too
발안 → 발안  [바단]  padan  inside the field
옷 안 → ot + an  [오단]  odan  garment lining
옷 도 → ot + to  [오토]  otto  the garment too

4.5. When the Gang of Seven Gets Up Your Nose

When p, t, k precede m or n (or l pronounced as n due to the rule in section 4.6 below), they (that is, p, t, k) are pronounced as m, n, η, respectively.

Remember that in Korean, p, t, k cannot be released in this position. When you have an unreleased p before a nasal sound like m or n and want to pronounce the next syllable, the p has nowhere else to go but up your nose. Once a p goes up your nose, it becomes an m. The same logic holds for unreleased t turning into n and unreleased k turning into η.

합니다  [함니다]  hamnida  does it [Formal style]
닫는다  [닫는다]  tanninda  closes it [Plain style]
먹는다  [먹는다]  mogninda  eats it [Plain style]
십육  [십육]  šimnyuk  sixteen
독립 → 독립 → [동립]  to̞nip  independence
합리 → 합니 → [합니]  hanni  rationality, reason

Note that this rule also applies to any t which has been reduced from tʰ, ᵇʰ, ᵇ, s, ss, or even h:
발 + 만  →  [반만]  →  [반만]  the field only
panman

Lesson Four/47
buquerque → [ 순만 ] → [ 순만 ] the charcoal only
sunman

낮 + 만 → [ 납만 ] → [ 납만 ] daytime only
nanman

빛 - + -네 → [ 번네 ] → [ 번네 ] he's taking it off!
ponne

있었 + -네 → [ 있렬네 ] → [ 있렬네 ] she had it!
isonne

The case of h changing to (t and then) n like this is an unusual one, and we will alert you
to it again when you learn about verbs that end in final h.

냉 - + -네 → [ 논네 ] they're inserting it!
nonne

중의! Caution!

If you wish to conceive of this nasalization process in terms of written 한글 symbols,
note that the symbol ㅇ can only count as zero following a preceding syllable-final
consonant. Thus, the sequence 밥어요. eats can only be pronounced 묻어요 and not
* 묻어요.

4.6. Peculiarities of the Korean ey

1. When n is next to l (н.л or l.n, where the period represents a syllable
break) a double ll is pronounced.

일년 [ 일년 ]
illyon

신라 [ 신라 ]
Silla (ancient Korean state)

2. When preceded by a consonant other than l or n, the l is pronounced as
n.

심리 [ 심리 ]
Simni

psychology

Lesson Four / 48
3. When followed by t, Chad, or s in words borrowed from Chinese, the 1 has the effect of doubling these to tt, Chad, and ss, respectively.

철도  [철도]  철도  
철도  

결정  [결정]  결정  

설사  [설사]  설사  

Because you have no way of telling which words are originally from Chinese and which are not, and because the Korean writing system ignores these differences between spelling and actual pronunciation, we will alert you to any such pronunciation details (by rewriting the pronunciation in 한글 in square brackets) when you first learn new words in the vocabulary lists at the beginning of each lesson.

4.7. Automatic Doubling

If the final sound of the preceding syllable is п, т, or k, the single voiceless consonants п, т, Chad, s, m, n, r, s, t, l, r, s, m, n are automatically doubled in pronunciation so they sound like pp, tt, Chad, kk, ss, mm, nn, rr, ss, tt, ll, rr.

약방  [약방]  약방  
약방  

작다  [작다]  작다  
작다  

먹자  [먹자]  먹자  
먹자  

덥다  [덥다]  덥다  
덥다  

입자  [입자]  입자  
입자  

십삼  [십삼]  십삼  
십삼  

Lesson Four / 49
4.8. Leap-frogging ʰ ʰ

The Korean ʰ ʰ can leap over a following plain ㅂ, ㄷ, ㅈ, ㅊ to yield a corresponding aspirated sound in pronunciation (ㅍ, ㅌ, ㅊ, ㅋ). In other words, the aspirated consonants ㅍ, ㅌ, ㅊ, ㅋ can be considered as equivalent to combinations of ㅂ + ʰ (or ㄷ + ʰ) , ㄷ + ʰ (or ㅌ + ʰ), ㅈ + ʰ (or ㅊ + ʰ), ㅊ + ʰ (or ㅋ + ʰ), respectively. Here are some examples.

璆 + ㅋ → ㅋ: 종 - + -고 → 종고, pronounced 조코 is good, and...
璆 + ㄷ → ㅌ: 종 - + -타 → 종타, pronounced 조타 is good

4.9. Pronunciation of ㅌ before ㅗ

The Korean ㅌ (aspirated ㅌʰ) is palatalized to ㅈ when it occurs at the end of a morpheme or word and is followed by ㅗ.

같이 together is pronounced 가치
발 field + ㅗ (subject marker) is pronounced 바치

4.10. Long and Short Vowels

Many Koreans distinguish words by pronouncing a vowel as long or short: 일 11 one, 일 11 (i.e., with a long vowel) affair, work. But even for those speakers, vowel length is often suppressed, especially when not at the beginning of a phrase, so that you will often hear short vowels in words that have basically long vowels.

Modern Korean spelling does not indicate the long vowels, and we do not show them in the body of this textbook. But you should at least be aware of this contrast. Here are some examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SHORT VOWELS</th>
<th>LONG VOWELS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>밤</td>
<td>evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>굴</td>
<td>oyster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>말</td>
<td>horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>눈</td>
<td>eye</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Four / 50
In the case of long and short ㅗ, many speakers pronounce the long ㅗ with the tongue in a considerably higher position than it is in for the short ㅗ, as something resembling English uh in uh-oh. Many speakers hollow the back of the tongue to make the short ㅗ so that it sounds rounded like the vowel sound that many people use in English saw, song, dawn.

**Short Vowels**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>거리</td>
<td>street</td>
<td>&quot;kawrie&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연기</td>
<td>postponement</td>
<td>&quot;yawn'gi&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Long Vowels**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>거리</td>
<td>distance</td>
<td>&quot;kuhri&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연기</td>
<td>performance</td>
<td>&quot;yuhn'gi&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.11. The Names of the Korean Letters

The han'gul vowel signs do not have special names of their own. Instead, they are called by the sounds they represent. For example, ㅏ is called "wa". Each han'gul consonant sign, however, has its own name based on the ingenious mnemonic device of beginning and ending the name with the consonant letter in question.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가</td>
<td>기악</td>
<td>kiyok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나</td>
<td>니온</td>
<td>niin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>떼</td>
<td>틸 긁</td>
<td>tigit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>리</td>
<td>리울</td>
<td>riil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미</td>
<td>미움</td>
<td>miim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비</td>
<td>바울</td>
<td>piip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시</td>
<td>시웃</td>
<td>šiot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이</td>
<td>이옵</td>
<td>iîng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지</td>
<td>지웃</td>
<td>čîit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찰</td>
<td>찰웃</td>
<td>čhîit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>카</td>
<td>카욱</td>
<td>kîik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타</td>
<td>타울</td>
<td>thîit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파</td>
<td>파움</td>
<td>pîip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>싱</td>
<td>심울</td>
<td>hiit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson Four / 51*
The tense, or 'doubled' consonants, have the same name as the corresponding plain series consonant, preceded by the word *double*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>상기역</td>
<td>ssanggiyok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>상티급</td>
<td>ssangdigung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>상비율</td>
<td>ssangbiyul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>상시유</td>
<td>ssangsiyul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>상지율</td>
<td>ssangjizul</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercises: Pronunciation**

**Exercise 1: Voicing Practice**

1. 가방
2. 안주
3. 지도
4. 방법
5. 감자
6. 만두
7. 두부
8. 공장
9. 모자
10. 구기
11. 군대
12. 아기
13. 담배
14. 공기
15. 구두
16. 수제비

**Exercise 2: Non-release of Final Consonants**

Practice pronouncing the following (mostly nonsense) syllables, first saying each one alone, then saying it again, followed by the subject particle 이.

1. 각
2. 옛
3. 것
4. 난
5. 갖
6. 셋
7. 침
8. 젤
9. 겨

*Lesson Four / 52*
Exercise 3: Nasal Assimilation Practice

1. 합니다  
2. 한국말  
3. 달는다  
4. 초등학교  
5. 먹는다  
6. 독립  
7. 밥먹  
8. 독립문  
9. 앞문  
10. 압록강  
11. 숙녀  
12. 설리  
13. 못난이  
14. 삼만  
15. 작문  
16. 부엌문  
17. 붙는다  
18. 꽃만  
19. 빗만  
20. 옛날  
21. 옷만  
22. 찾네

Exercise 4: Cluster Reinforcement Practice

1. 잡지  
2. 목소리  
3. 십자가  
4. 엽서  
5. 철도  
6. 답장  
7. 식당  
8. 높고  
9. 학교  
10. 밑자  
11. 학생  
12. 건자  
13. 역사  
14. 국방  
15. 국수  
16. 국비  
17. 설사  
18. 결정

Lesson Four / 53
우리 집사람이에요.

We now begin the lessons proper. In this first one you will find out how to introduce and address people, identify things and ask simple questions. We also learn vocabulary for countries, nationalities, etc. In the Lesson Notes we cover pronouns, four essential particles, the use of the copula, and the ways in which Korean nouns are used. By now you should be comfortable with 한글, so we discontinue use of the phonetic transcription.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Chris Murphy and his wife have gone into a Seoul coffee shop. Chris thinks he recognizes someone sitting at a table reading a newspaper:

크리스
저— 실례합니다.

김
어, 머피 선생님! 오래간만입니다!

크리스
(to Kim) 선생님, (gestures in Eunice's direction)
— 우리 집사람이에요.

유니스
유니스에요. 처음 봤겠습니다.

김
김창기야요. 처음 봤겠습니다.

크리스
김 선생님은 내 한국말 선생님이에요.

유니스
아, 네. 만나서 반갑습니다.

Notes
저—
어!

Uh—
Well! Ah!!
Dialogue 2

Chris and Eunice join 김 선생님, and they talk a while:

크리스 우리 집 사람은 피아노 선생이에요.
김 아니, 그래요? 미피 선생님은 영국 사람이지요?
크리스 네.
김 부인도 영국 분이에요?
크리스 아니오, 영국 사람이 아니에요. 호주 사람이에요.

Notes
NOUN -이지요? is a NOUN, isn’t it? is a NOUN, right? This is a special form of the copula in -(이)에요. You will learn more about the ending in -이요 later.
NOUN 도 NOUN, too; NOUN, also
NOUN 이 ~ 가 NOUN (as subject)
NOUN(이 ~ 가) 아니에요 is not a NOUN

Dialogue 3

They all get up and go, leaving the newspaper on the table. Chris notices an umbrella on the floor and picks it up.

크리스 (to Kim) 이거 김 선생님 우산이에요?
김 네, 제거예요. 고맙습니다.

Lesson Five /55
유니스

이 신문도 선생님 거에요?

김

아니오, 그런 게거 아니에요.

Notes

이 NOUN

이거

this NOUN

이거

this thing (abbreviated from 이것은)

제

my (Humble)

제거

mine (= my thing); pronounced 제거

고맙습니다

Thank you.

선생님 거

yours (your thing); pronounced 선생님꺼

그 NOUN

그건

that NOUN

그건

that one, that thing (as topic, old information, or contrast,
and abbreviated from 그것은)

Dialogue 4

Chris and Eunice then take 김 선생님 to a special fair of imported goods which Chris has
helped to organize at a nearby exhibition center.

김

그게 어느 나라의 와인이에요?

유니스

이거요? 이건 프랑스 와인이에요.

김

그럼, 저건 왜에요?

유니스

아, 저건 영국 셀이에요.

김

무슨 셀이에요?

유니스

웨스키에요.

김

전부 다 수입품이지요?

크리스

아니오, 저 인삼주는 한국제품이에요.

Notes

그게

that thing equidistant from both of us (as new information,
and abbreviated from 그것이)

어느 NOUN?

NOUN의 NOUN

which NOUN? what NOUN? (out of several)

NOUN’s NOUN (note exceptional pronunciation of 의 as
에! Some speakers pronounce 의 as 오, but this is
standard.)

이거

this thing (abbreviated from 이것은)

뭐

what? (abbreviated from 무엇)
### Vocabulary

#### Countries, Languages and Nationalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>러시아</td>
<td>러시아말</td>
<td>러시아사람</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>캐나다</td>
<td>영어, 프랑스말</td>
<td>캐나다사람</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일본</td>
<td>일본말 (일어)</td>
<td>일본사람</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중국</td>
<td>중국말</td>
<td>중국사람</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미국</td>
<td>영어, 영국사람</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영국</td>
<td>영어, 영국사람</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한국</td>
<td>한국말, 한국사람</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍콩</td>
<td>중국말, 홍콩사람</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>호주</td>
<td>영어, 호주사람</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>독일</td>
<td>독일말 (독어)</td>
<td>독일사람</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>프랑스</td>
<td>프랑스말 (불어)</td>
<td>프랑스사람</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외국</td>
<td>외국어</td>
<td>외국사람</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### People and Places

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>교수 (님)</td>
<td>professor (honorific)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>의사</td>
<td>doctor, physician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>은행</td>
<td>bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>은행원</td>
<td>banker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>회사</td>
<td>company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>회사원</td>
<td>company employee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>집</td>
<td>house, home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사람</td>
<td>person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>선생 (님)</td>
<td>teacher (honorific)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아내, or</td>
<td>wife (my)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>접사람</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
부인
남편
나라

People and Places (cont.)
사장(님)  
친구
학생
가수
-씨
외교관
박사(님)

company president (honorific)
friend
student
pop-singer
polite title for name
diplomat
Dr., Ph.D. (honorific)

Things
제품
신문
잡지
책
공책
분필
연필
볼펜, 펜
성냥
담배
말
중이
칠판
와인
술
위스키
전부
다
전부 다
수입품
인삼
인삼주
피아노
우산

manufactured good(s)
newspaper
magazine
book
notebook
chalk
pencil
ball-point pen
match(es)
cigarette(s)
language, words
paper
blackboard
wine
any alcoholic drink
whisky
the whole thing, total
all, everything
everything, all of it
imported goods
ginseng
ginseng wine
piano
umbrella
Lesson Notes

5.1. Pronouns in Korean

In general, Koreans use pronouns much less in conversation than we do in English. When they do use pronouns, they have to choose between a number of different words depending on the social relationships of the people involved (this is probably why they avoid using them in the first place).

Korean has the following first-person pronouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>We</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>나</td>
<td>우리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저 Humble</td>
<td>저회 Humble (pronounced 저이)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
It is always considered more polite to use the humble forms in polite conversation with people you may not know very well or with people deserving of deference for whatever reason.

주의 Caution!
Of all the pronouns, Koreans avoid words for you the most, and so should you.

The following table shows some of the ways to say you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>너</th>
<th>Intimate</th>
<th>FIRST NAME/FULL NAME + 씨</th>
<th>Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>당신</td>
<td>Polite</td>
<td>차례</td>
<td>Semi-Formal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE ( + 녀)</td>
<td>Polite</td>
<td>SURNAME/FULL NAME + 선생님</td>
<td>Polite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You are always safest using no pronoun at all. If unavoidable, try title ( + 녀) or surname + 선생님. Of the items above, you should avoid less polite terms like 너, 차례, and 당신. The latter pronoun tends to be used mostly between spouses, but some Koreans occasionally address foreigners in this manner (as a kind of translation equivalent for English you), so you may hear it directed at yourself, too. When talking about or addressing your student peers, whether here or in Korea, the safest pattern is name + 씨, e.g. 만호 씨 he (Manho) or you (Manho).

Technically speaking, Korean has no proper third-person pronouns at all. Instead, for he, she, it, they, Korean uses an expression equivalent to that person, that woman, that thing, those people, etc. For now, what you need is:

그 사람

that [aforementioned] person

(he, him; she, her; they, them)

그것

that [aforementioned] thing, same as it

5.2. Sentence Subjects and Topics

As you have seen, Korean nouns commonly appear in particle-marked phrases. The particle after a noun sometimes has no exact English equivalent but rather assigns a grammatical function to the noun.

Lesson Five /60
Two such particles are the SUBJECT PARTICLE ə | 가, which puts FOCUS or a spotlight on the noun before it (often the subject), and the TOPIC PARTICLE 은 | 음, which has three functions:

1. to mark its noun as the sentence topic (what the sentence is about)
2. to point up a contrast, or
3. to mark its noun as old or given or assumed information

Some particles have two pronunciations or shapes: one when they come after a word that ends with a consonant, the other after words ending with vowels. Except for the reversed order of things, this is completely analogous to the English indefinite article an:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Before Consonant</th>
<th>Before Vowel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a man</td>
<td>an apple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a sandwich</td>
<td>an orphan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a headache</td>
<td>an idea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The subject and topic particles are both TWO-SHAPE PARTICLES. The subject particle is pronounced ə | 가 when it comes after a consonant and 가 when it comes after a vowel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>After Consonant</th>
<th>After Vowel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>책이</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부인이</td>
<td>wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>제품이</td>
<td>product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무엇이</td>
<td>what?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연필이</td>
<td>pencil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡지가</td>
<td>magazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아내가</td>
<td>wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내가</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>누가</td>
<td>who?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>종이가</td>
<td>paper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

주의 Caution!

나 I, 너 You, 저 I (Humble) and 누가 who? have altered shapes when they come before the subject particle ə | 가. These are:
내가, 네가, 제가 and 누가.

Remember that ə and 가 are the same word: it is a word with two pronunciations. The same is true of the topic particle, which is pronounced 은 after consonants and 음 after vowels.

Lesson Five /61
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>After Consonant</th>
<th>After Vowel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>우산은</td>
<td>umbrella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>은행은</td>
<td>bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일본은</td>
<td>Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신문은</td>
<td>newspaper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>성냥은</td>
<td>matches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>의사논</td>
<td>doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>박사논</td>
<td>Ph.D., Dr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나는</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>친구논</td>
<td>friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>담배논</td>
<td>cigarettes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A Korean sentence subject (noun plus the particle 이 ~ 가) usually corresponds to an English sentence subject. So, often, does a Korean topic (noun plus the particle 은 ~ 는). They are usually interchangeable, but you should be sensitive to their different nuances, as explained below.

When you first mention a subject—when it is new information—you usually attach 이 ~ 가, the subject particle, to it. Thereafter in the same context, if you repeat the subject at all, it has become old information and usually has the particle 은 ~ 는. The following exchanges exemplify this:

1. A. 이것은 무엇이에요?       What's this?
   B. 이것은 우산이에요.  That's an umbrella.

2. A long, long time ago, a man [사람] lived in the mountains. One day, he [그 사람] came down the mountain, and...

Once a particular subject has been mentioned there is no requirement in Korean to keep referring to it in subsequent sentences; you can just drop it. However, if the subject is mentioned again, then it would be followed by the topic particle (marking the noun as old information), not the subject particle. To repeat, the subject of conversation does not need to be referred to continuously, but if it is mentioned again then it is marked as old information by the topic marker 은 ~ 는.

We can say, therefore, that the topic particle 은 ~ 는 is a particle that flags the word or phrase in front of it as the least unknown ingredient or oldest piece of information in your communication—the part you would be most likely to drop if you wanted to make your sentence brief. For this reason, the topic phrase nearly always comes at the very beginning of the sentence. As you have learned, the important things in a Korean sentence tend to accumulate toward the end, near the verb—the single indispensable element. The dispensable things are what the other person is most likely to know already and are put closer to the beginning, where they are missed the least if they are dropped out altogether.

Lesson Five /62
You can create topics from (mark with 은 ~ 는) any element in the sentence (except the verb) by pulling the element out of place, saying it first, and putting 은 ~ 는 on it. To give you the feel of this de-emphasis, here is a single English sentence showing how each element might appear as the topic of a Korean sentence, and the emphasis of the resulting order:

*That student is studying Korean at school now.*

a. That student 은 ~ 는 is studying Korean at school now
   
   "What about that student? As for that student . . ." The new information is the nature of the activity, not who is doing it.

b. Now 은 ~ 는 that student is studying Korean at school.
   
   Talking about what's happening now: "That student is studying Korean at school."

c. At school 은 ~ 는 that student is now studying Korean (there).
   
   To mention what's going on at school ...

d. Korean 은 ~ 는 that student is studying [it] at school now.
   
   "What I want to say about the Korean language is . . ."

Another common function of the particle 은 ~ 는 is to mark CONTRAST, which occurs when each of two parallel statements (one of which may be implied rather than stated) begins with a topic. The contrast between them is pointed up.

3. 김 선생님은 의사예요. 그럴지만 나는 회사원이에요.
   
   *Mr. Kim (he) is a doctor. But (me) I'm an office employee.*

The subject particle 이 ~ 가, on the other hand, puts a spotlight on the noun it follows. It appears most often with subjects that have not been mentioned previously in the context. Certain words, by the very nature of their meaning, rarely appear as Korean topics, but frequently as subjects. These are words that inherently ask for new information, such as 누가 who?, 무엇 what (kind of)?, 무엇이 what?, and 어느 which? By the same token, when you answer a question having one of these words, you use a subject to supply the new information, rather than using a topic. For example:

4. 어느 것이 잡지예요? 저것이 잡지예요.
   
   *Which one is a magazine? That one over there is a magazine.*

5. 누가 선생이예요? 이분이 선생이에요.
   
   *Who is the teacher? This [esteemed] person is the teacher.*

6. 누가 학생이에요? 내가 학생이에요.
   
   *Who is the student? I am the student.*
Of course, if the question word occurs outside of the subject or topic, then the subject and topic positions in the sentence are handled as described above. The subject upon its first mention will have 이/이 가 and if mentioned thereafter, 였/은. Here are some examples of this sort of sequence.

7. 이것은 무엇이에요? 그것은 잡지에요.
   This thing is what? (That thing) is a magazine.

8. 이것은 무슨 책이에요? 그것은 한국말 책이에요.
   This thing is what kind of book? (That thing) is a Korean book.

   The Korean teacher is who? (The Korean teacher) is Mr. Kim.

5.3. The Copula and Equational Sentences

Many of the sentences in this lesson end with a special verb called the COPULA. The copula is pronounced 이에요 after consonants but generally shortened to 여요 after vowels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>After Consonants</th>
<th>After Vowels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>선생이에요</td>
<td>It is a teacher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>책이에요</td>
<td>It is a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연필이에요</td>
<td>It is a pencil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>성냥이에요</td>
<td>It is a match.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Note: The shape 여요 is just an abbreviation of 이에요 and sometimes you will hear the full form, even after a vowel.)

The copula is different from other verbs in this respect: it cannot make a complete sentence by itself, but must always have something in front of it—most often a noun expression. It is pronounced as though it were part of its preceding word, like a suffix, and your voice should never pause or hesitate between the noun expression and the copula.

The copula translates the English verb to be (am, are, is) when it means it equals or it is (the same thing as). For this reason sentences ending with the copula are called EQUATIONAL SENTENCES.
The copula is made negative by the word 아니, followed generally by the abbreviated form that is normal after vowels: 아니예요. The noun expression before the negative (but not before the affirmative) copula may, optionally, appear as a subject, i.e., it may have the particle 이~가 after it.

10. 신문(이) 아니예요.
   *It isn't a newspaper.*

11. 영국 사람(이) 아니예요.
   *He is not English.*

Negative equational sentences thus can accommodate two subjects, the second of which corresponds to the English complement.

12. 누가 학생(이) 아니예요?
   *Who is not a student?*

13. 그 사람은 일본 사람(이) 아니예요.
   *He isn't Japanese.*

14. 이것이 영어(가) 아니예요.
   *This isn't English.*

5.4. The Particle 도: *too, also, even*

The particle 도 means *too, also, indeed, even.* It puts emphasis on the word before it, with reference to something earlier in the context. The particle 도 (often pronounced 두) has only one shape regardless whether it follows a vowel or a consonant.

The English words that correspond to the particle 도 fall most naturally at the end of the sentence, so that they may be widely separated from the word with which they belong, as in this example:

15. 그 가수도 한국 사람이예요.
   *That pop singer is a Korean, too.*

In a negative sentence, English substitutes *either for too,* but in Korean 도 still does all the work.

16. 이것은 한국 제품이예요. 저것도 한국 제품이예요.
   *This is a Korean product. That is a Korean product, too.*

*Lesson Five / 65*
5.5. Expressing Possession with the Particle 의

The particle that is spelled 의 (but pronounced 에) is a one-shape particle: it is always the same, whether it comes after a vowel or a consonant. Its function is to link noun expressions together in such a way that the first one modifies, describes, or limits the meaning of the second one. The instances you have observed illustrate the possessive meaning of 의.

18. 남 선생님의 종이예요?
   Is it Mr. Nam's paper?

19. 어느 분의 집지예요?
   Whose [which esteemed person's] magazine is it?

20. 김 선생님의 것이라는, 의사선생님의 것이라는?
   Is it Mr. Kim's or is it the doctor's?

In this usage the particle corresponds to the English suffix -s: John's, Mr. Cooper's.

English pronouns, of course, are made possessive in other ways: I – my, you – your, he – his, and so on. Even who plus 's undergoes a spelling alternation: whose. In Korean, the following possessive pronouns are also somewhat irregular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MY (Plain/Intimate)</th>
<th>MY (Humble/Polite)</th>
<th>YOUR (Plain/Intimate)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>내</td>
<td>계</td>
<td>내</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The form 내 my is actually a combination of 나 I and the possessive particle 의 run together. Likewise, 계 is from 저 + 의 and 내 is from 너 + 의. It is also perfectly acceptable to use the unabbreviated sequences of 나의, 저의, and 너의.

주의!

Note that it is not possible to abbreviate 나의 NOUN and 저의 NOUN my NOUN to 나 NOUN and 저 NOUN, respectively.

Lesson Five / 66
Quite often a possessive meaning is present in phrases even when there is no 
주의!

In effect, there are three different ways to make a possessive construction, as indicated below.

a) NOUN 의 NOUN
   크리스 씨의 선생
   Chris' teacher

b) NOUN NOUN
   선생님 와인
   your wine

c) NOUN [squeeze!] NOUN
   선생님 것 [것]
   yours (your thing)

21. 그것은 선생님(의) 위스키예요.
    That whiskey is the teacher's. [Lit.: That thing is the teacher's whiskey.]

22. 그 위스키는 선생님(의) 것이예요.
    That whiskey is the teacher's (thing).
You must not say something like:

*그 위스키는 선생님의예요.

Here are some further examples of the possessive particle.

23. 이집이 영진 씨(의) 집이예요?
   *Is this house Youngjin's?*

24. 이것이 일본صل 선생님(의) 연필이예요.
   *This is the Japanese teacher's pencil.*

25. 저 신문이 누구(의) 신문이예요? 제것이예요.
   *Whose newspaper is that? It's mine.*

26. 저 담배가 어느 분(의) 것이예요? 제 것이예요.
   *Whose cigarettes are those? They're mine.*

5.6. Nouns

It was pointed out in Lesson One that Korean nouns usually correspond to English nouns. Correspondence of vocabulary is one thing, and correspondence of sentence patterns is another. Korean sentences in general are less specific than English sentences. A key spot where this difference shows up is in what strikes us as an omission of pronouns from Korean sentences, particularly subjects and topics.

As emphasized already in section 5.1., it is especially important to be cautious about addressing the second person, i.e., saying you. The person you are addressing may be called, respectfully, 선생님 or 김 선생님. Or you may use a professional title, like 박사님 you (who are a Ph.D.) or 김 박사님 you (Dr. Kim). All of these can also be used for the third person, so that a given sentence containing such an expression is, when seen or heard out of its context, ambiguous.

Korean nouns are used in sentences in one of the following four positions.

1. Before particles
   A particle after a noun shows its grammatical relationship to the rest of the sentence.

2. Before the copula
   A noun plus the copula means *is (the same thing as) NOUN*, in the formula
   \[ X \text{ is NOUN} \] or \[ I \text{ is NOUN} \].

Lesson Five / 68
3. Before another noun
   See below for explanation.

4. By itself (absolute)
   [Note: Korean nouns are sometimes used by themselves, with nothing but a pause after
   them, in absolute position, usually at the beginning of a sentence like a topic. You will learn
   more about this later.]

Nouns are used to modify or describe other nouns. Such noun-plus-noun phrases as 김 선생
남 and 김복동 are quite familiar to you. Names of nations (e.g., 영국 England, 한국
Korea) combine in such phrases as these.

영국 사람
Englishman (England-person)

한국말
Korean (Korea-language)

You have seen instances of the latter phrase, 한국말, in turn being used to modify a third
noun.

한국말 책 (선생, 학생)
Korean language book (teacher, student)

Some nouns are used more frequently as modifiers of other nouns than by themselves. Then
there is a special group of nouns used only before other nouns. These are PRE-NOUNS, and
you have learned the following in this lesson.

무슨 (담배)
what kind of (cigarettes)?
어느 (것)
which (thing)?
이 (것)
this (thing)
그 (것)
that (thing)
저 (것)
that (thing), yonder

Another special group of nouns are used only after such pre-nouns (or after other modifying
elements). These are called QUASI-FREE NOUNS, since they seem to be free to do
everything except start a sentence.

(그) 것
(that) thing
(그) 곳
(that) place
(그) 분
(that) esteemed person

Lesson Five / 69
Exercises

Exercise 1: Manipulating Two-shape Particles

To practice making a quick choice of shapes when using two-shape particles, say each of the following words aloud (together with its English meaning). Say it again with the subject particle 이 ~ 가 after it; then with the topic particle 온 ~ 는 after it. Finally, add the copula in -이/예요 ~어요 so that you have a sentence It is ... . Do you remember what each word means?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>아내</th>
<th>한국말</th>
<th>남편</th>
<th>선생</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>리시아 사람</td>
<td>신문</td>
<td>연필</td>
<td>나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점자</td>
<td>일본 사람</td>
<td>분필</td>
<td>러시아</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>책</td>
<td>이것</td>
<td>부인</td>
<td>담배</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>침대</td>
<td>그 사람</td>
<td>학생</td>
<td>술</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>종이</td>
<td>친구</td>
<td>사람</td>
<td>의사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>선생님</td>
<td>중국말</td>
<td>영어</td>
<td>미국</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저</td>
<td>홍콩</td>
<td>수입품</td>
<td>우산</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 2: Complete the Sentence

Complete 김 선생님’s sentence below in Korean, using each of the expressions in the list below. Repeat the entire sentence each time. Then write each one again, making it negative as in 미피 선생님’s sentence.

김 선생님: 저 사람은 _____(이)예요.
미피 선생님: 저 사람은 _____(이~가) 아니예요.

1. Japanese [person].
2. a Korean pop-singer.
3. a banker.
4. a Russian student.
5. an American doctor.
6. a company employee.
7. Professor Kim’s wife.
8. my friend.
9. my wife.
10. my husband.
11. a Chinese diplomat.
12. an English language teacher.
Exercise 3: Complete the Sentences

Now, fill in the blanks of the following two pattern sentences with each of the expressions below, again writing out the entire sequence each time.

김 선생님: 이건 ______ (이/가) 아니에요. 그럼 뭐에요?
머파 선생님: 이건 ______ 이에요. 누구(의) ______ 이에요. 

1. blackboard 2. magazine
3. chalk 4. matches
5. Chinese language newspaper 6. newspaper
7. cigarettes 8. paper
9. ball-point pen 10. pencil

Exercise 4: Complete the Sentence

Complete this sentence by using each of the following expressions, of course writing out the whole sentence every time.

이 신문은 ______ 거예요.

1. 박 박사님's 2. 김복동 씨's
3. his 4. 박 박사님's wife's
5. mine 6. 만호 씨's
7. my friend's 8. 수진 씨's
9. my husband's 10. my wife's

Exercise 5: Translation into Korean

Translate these sentences into Korean.

1. Is that Mr. Pak's notebook?
2. No, that's not Mr. Pak's.
3. Whose umbrella is it?
4. It's the pop star's.
5. Is Mr. Chang's wife a student?
6. No. She isn't a student. She's a Korean teacher.

Lesson Five / 71
7. Is that foreign student an American?
8. No. He's not an American. He's an Australian.
9. Are these Manho's matches?
10. What country's product is this notebook?
11. That man over there is a Chinese diplomat.
12. This is the Chinese diplomat's Korean language book.
13. Which one is the Russian newspaper?
14. I don't know. Is it that one?
15. Dr. Mogami is Japanese.
16. Is your wife Russian? No, she's not Russian. She's French.
17. Who is that man? He is Professor Chang.
18. What kind of magazine is that? I don't know.

Exercise 6: Vocabulary Drill

Each of the following sets of words contains a misfit, a word whose meaning does not fit in with that of the rest. Spot the misfit, and be sure you know why it does not belong. (This drill is best done orally and rapid fire.)

1. 가수
2. 종이
3. 일본
4. 선생
5. 중국말
6. 나
7. 성냥
8. 남편

원문
본문
의사
언필
영어
학생
영국
당신
의사
부인

Lesson Five / 72
실례지만, 프라자 호텔이 어디에요?

In this lesson you will learn how to ask for and buy things in a shop, and how to ask directions and locations. You will learn two important verbs of existence and location, and how to manipulate place nouns and the location particle 에. You will also learn how to make nouns specifically plural and how to answer negative questions.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Chris Murphy has popped into a shop to buy some cigarettes.

아저씨  어서 오세요. 필 드릴까요?
크리스  담배 있어요?
아저씨  네, 있어요.
크리스  성냥도 있어요?
아저씨  아니오, 없어요. 라이터는 있어요.
크리스  그럼 담배하고 라이터 주세요.
아저씨  담배는 미국 거 드릴까요?
크리스  아니오, 저 (pointing behind the 아저씨) 한국담배 주세요.
아저씨  예, 알겠습니다. 여기 있어요.
크리스  전부 얼마에요?
아저씨  천원이에요.
Notes
여서 오세요  Welcome! (Come in) right away!
월 Abbreviation of 무엇을 (what? plus object marker)
드릴까요? Shall I give you? You will learn the verb and its ending in a later lesson.
For now, memorize it as part of this dialogue.
주세요 Please give me. You will learn the verb and its ending in a later lesson.
For now, memorize it as part of this dialogue.
미국 거 American one(s).
여기 있어요 Here you are, Here it is, Here you go.

Dialogue 2

Eunice is looking for the British Embassy downtown and knows it is near the Plaza Hotel. Little does she know, but she is only yards from the Embassy.

유니스  아가씨, 실향지만, 프라자 호텔이 어디에요?
아가씨  프라자 호텔요? 저기, (pointing) 저 침종 맞춘 곳에 있어요.
유니스  아, 네, 그러면 영국 대사관은요?
아가씨  영국 대사관요? 바로 이 건물 뒤에 있어요.
유니스  고맙습니다.

Notes
실향지만... Excuse me, but... (It is a discourtesy, but...)
Memorize this as a handy expression.
-은~는요? What about? How about?

Additional Text for Reading

교실 안에 학생들이 있어요.
책상 위에 신문하고 잠지가 있어요.
창문 밖에는 무엇이 있어요? 창문 밖에는 나무가 있어요.
가방 속에 담배는 없어요? 네, 없어요.
화장실이 어디에 있어요? 교실 바로 옆에 있어요.

Lesson Six/74
## Vocabulary

### Places

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>학교</td>
<td>school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대학교</td>
<td>university</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이화여자대학교</td>
<td>Ewha Women's University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연세대학교</td>
<td>Yonsei University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서강대학교</td>
<td>Sogang University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서울대학교</td>
<td>Seoul National University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고려대학교</td>
<td>Korea University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교실</td>
<td>classroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>방</td>
<td>room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>캠퍼스</td>
<td>campus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서점</td>
<td>bookstore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기숙사</td>
<td>dormitory, residence hall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학생회관</td>
<td>student union [building]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화장실</td>
<td>toilet, restroom, bathroom, washroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>커피숍</td>
<td>coffee shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>호텔</td>
<td>hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>프라자호텔</td>
<td>Plaza Hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>롯데호텔</td>
<td>Lotte Hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>조선호텔</td>
<td>Chosun Hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신라호텔</td>
<td>Shilla Hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>셰라톤 워커힐호텔</td>
<td>Sheraton Walker Hill Hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하얏트호텔</td>
<td>Hyatt Hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>라마다 올림피아호텔</td>
<td>Ramada Olympia Hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대사관</td>
<td>embassy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영사관</td>
<td>consulate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>건물, 빌딩</td>
<td>building</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교보빌딩</td>
<td>the Kyobo building, near Kwanghwamun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시청</td>
<td>City Hall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공원</td>
<td>park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파고다공원</td>
<td>Pagoda Park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>올림픽공원</td>
<td>Olympic Park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도산공원</td>
<td>Tosan Park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>백화점</td>
<td>department store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현대백화점</td>
<td>Hyundai Department Store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신세계백화점</td>
<td>Shinsegae Department Store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미도파 백화점 롯데 백화점</td>
<td>Midopa Department Store Lotte Department Store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시장</td>
<td>market</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>남대문</td>
<td>Great South Gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>동대문</td>
<td>Great East Gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>광화문</td>
<td>Kwanghwamun, Kwangwha Gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>종로</td>
<td>Chongno (main thoroughfare in Seoul)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신촌</td>
<td>Shinch’on (near Ewha, Yonsei and Sogang Universities)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정문</td>
<td>main gate (e.g., of a university)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>근처</td>
<td>vicinity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가게</td>
<td>a shop; store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>역</td>
<td>train station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서울역</td>
<td>Seoul station, pronounced 서울력</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여기</td>
<td>here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거기</td>
<td>there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저기</td>
<td>over there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어디</td>
<td>where</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Things or Objects**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>책상</td>
<td>desk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>상, 테이블</td>
<td>table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그림</td>
<td>picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>의자</td>
<td>chair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>창문</td>
<td>window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문</td>
<td>door, gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나무</td>
<td>tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가방</td>
<td>bag, briefcase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>라이타</td>
<td>lighter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>텔레비전</td>
<td>television</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**People**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>어머니</td>
<td>mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아버지</td>
<td>father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부모(님)</td>
<td>parents (honorific)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아이~에</td>
<td>child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아기~에기</td>
<td>baby</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson Six/76*
아저씨  
mister (way of referring to or addressing a man old enough to be married)

아가씨  
young lady (way of referring to or addressing an unmarried young woman)

남자  
man

남자친구  
boyfriend

여자  
woman

여자친구  
girlfriend

Ways to Connect Sentences

그래서 . . .
나는 학생이에요.
그래서 돈이 없어요.

And so . . ., And then . . ., Therefore . . .
I'm a student.
Therefore I have no money.

그래도 . . .
그 사람은 의사에요.
그래도 돈이 없어요.

Even so; Nevertheless
He's a doctor.
Even so, he has no money.

그리고 . . .
이제는 신촌에 있어요.
그리고 연대도 가기 있어요.

And also . . ., And then . . .
Ewha University is in Shinch'on.
And Yonsei University is there, too.

그런데 . . .
책상 위에 가방하고 노트가 있어요.
그런데 볼펜은 없어요.

But . . ., And then . . ., By the way . . .
There is a bag and a notebook on the table.
But there is no pen.

Other Items

얼마  
how many? how much?

천  
thousand

원  
Korean monetary unit

돈  
money

노트  
notebook (same meaning as 공책)

바로  
just, right (below, above, etc.), straight (adverb)

있어요  
it exists, there is/are

없어요  
it does not exist, there is not/aren't

주세요  
please give

You are also responsible for the Place Nouns listed in section 6.5.
Lesson Notes

6.1. Existence and Location with 있어요 and 없어요

The English word be (am, are, is) has a variety of meanings. These are expressed in Korean by a number of vocabulary items.

a. Be in the sense that something equals or is the same thing as something else corresponds to the Korean copula -(이)에요. Lesson Five dealt with this.

b. Be in the sense that something is located somewhere or is existing, on the other hand, is 있어요. The negative is a separate word 없어요. does not exist, is not located. These words also mean there is/are and there isn’t/aren’t.

Here are some pairs of sentences that contrast the meanings of these two types of verbs—equational -(이)에요 and existential 있어요 and 없어요.

1. A. 책이 있어요. 
   B. 책이 있어요.
   
   C. 책(이) 아닙니다.
   D. 책이 없어요.

   It's a book. They are books. 
   There is a book (somewhere).
   There are some books (somewhere).
   (Someone) has got a book.
   It's not a book.
   They aren't books.
   There isn't any book (somewhere).
   There aren't any books (somewhere).
   (Someone) hasn't got a book.

2. A. 학교에요.
   B. 학교에 있어요.

   C. 학교(가) 아닙니다.
   D. 학교에 없어요.

   It's a school. or They are schools.
   It's at school.
   They are at school. or
   There's (one) at school.
   There are (some) at school.
   They've got one at school.
   It's not a school.
   They aren't schools.
   It's not at school.
   They aren't at school. or
   There isn't or aren't (any) at school.

Lesson Six / 78
3. A. 여기가 어디에요?  
B. 여기 어디(에) 있어요?
What is this (place)?
[Lit.: This place is what place?]
Where in this place is it? or
Where in this place is there (one)?

The copula -(이)에요, then, has one meaning—identity.

The verb 있어요 and its negative 않아요 have meanings we can label EXISTENCE (there is[n't] or are[n't]) and LOCATION (is[n't] or are[n't] in a place). A third related meaning for these—POSSESSION—is discussed in the following section. Here are some further examples of the location usage.

4. 그 학생이 여기 있어요.
The student is here.

5. 대학교 뒤에 시장이 없어요.
There isn't any market behind the university.

6. A. 교실 안에 그림이 있어요?
Are there any pictures in the classroom?
B. 네, 있어요.
B'. 아니요, 없어요.
Yes, there are.
No, there aren't.

7. A. 백화점이 어디(에) 있어요?
A'. 백화점이 어디에요?
Where is the department store?
B. 여기 있어요.
It's over there.

8. A. 화장실이 어디(에) 있어요?
Where is the toilet?
B. 왼편에 있어요.
It's to your left.

9. A. 여기 호텔이 있어요?
Is there a hotel here?
B. 없어요.
(No) there isn't.

Note that when the thing being asked about is a place, one has two ways of asking its location (see sentences 7A and 7A' above). This is not possible with nouns which do not express a location: *잡자가 어디에요? is impossible for *잡자가 어디에 있어요?
6.2. Possession with **있어요** and **없어요**

As you have just observed, **있어요** is in one way more limited than its English counterpart. It is equivalent to **be (am, are, is)** in only one of its meanings.

At the same time **있어요** is too broad in scope for a single English equivalent. It is the normal Korean way of expressing possession, as conveyed by English **has (have) and has got (have got)**.

10. 둘이 **있어요**?
    either
     or
    **Is there money (in some place)?**
    **Have you [any] money?**

11. 여자친구가 **있어요**.
    either
     or
    **There aren’t any girlfriends.**
    **I haven’t got a girlfriend.**

The above two meanings seem quite distinct to people who are accustomed to English vocabulary patterns, but Koreans do not ordinarily draw the distinction. The context usually makes it clear which English translation is more suitable in each instance.

It is not unknown for a Korean sentence of this type to have two subjects, one naming the possessor of an object, the other naming the object possessed, as follows.

12. 내가 **있어요**.
    **I have a baby.**

Another kind of sentence that might have two subjects, you may recall, is a negative copula sentence: 그것이 내 것이 아니에요. **That isn’t mine.**

But it is more usual in such cases for the possessor to be expressed as a topic, and the things possessed as a subject.

13. 그 사람은 가방이 **있어요**?
    **Does he have a satchel/bag?**

14. 우리는 **있어요**.
    **We don’t have a television.**

15. 만호는 종이가 **있어요**.
    **Manho hasn’t got any paper.**
16. A. 있느냐?  
    **Have you got a match?**

    B. **(Yes), I have.**

17. 돈이 없어요.  
    **I haven't any money.**

18. 나는 가방이 없어요.  
    **I haven't got a briefcase.**

### 6.3. Location Particle 에 in, at

To begin with, take a look at the following examples.

19. 우리는 교실 안에 있어요.  
    **We're in the classroom.**

20. 그 사람은 학교에 없어요.  
    **He's not at school.**

Korean uses the particle 에 to locate things in space. This single particle 에 conveys the meaning carried by several different English prepositions relating to general location. Perhaps the hardest thing to get used to in Korean is placing the particle after the noun, to correspond to what in English appears before the noun.

After certain nouns that end in 이, 에, or 에, the particle 에 is often not heard. This can happen, for example, in these expressions.

21. 어디에 있어요?  
    **Where is it?**

22. 거기 에 . . .  
    **(In) that place . . .**

But this is not true in every case: for example, 사이에 between and 위에 on top of.
6.4. The Particle **하고** *and, with*

Another single vocabulary item in English, the connective *and*, is translated variously in Korean, depending on its usage. Between Korean nouns, the word for *and* is **하고**.

23. 담배하고 성냥  
    *cigarettes and matches*

If English speakers pause when they are giving a list, it is natural for them to do so before the *and*, but the Koreans pause after **하고**. This is because **하고** is a particle, and particles are pronounced as part of the word they follow, like a suffix rather than a separate word. Until you learn Korean equivalents for *and* in other uses, such as to join sentences, you can use two separate sentences and begin the second with **그리고**.

Note that the particle **하고** can also mean *with*.

24. A. 진영 써는 어디(에) 있어요?  
    *Where’s Jinyŏng?*

   B. 열방에 남자친구하고 있어요.  
    *She’s in the next room with her boyfriend.*

6.5. Place Nouns

You have seen in this lesson a number of nouns denoting specific place relationships. With 예* in, at, on* after them, they mean *in* (a certain place relationship). Here is a list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>안에</td>
<td>inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>속에</td>
<td>inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밖에</td>
<td>outside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>위에</td>
<td>above, over, on (top)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밑에</td>
<td>at the bottom, below under (neath)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아래(에)</td>
<td>below, lower, down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앞에</td>
<td>in front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>뒤에</td>
<td>at the back; behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>근처에</td>
<td>near, in the vicinity of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옆에</td>
<td>next to, beside</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson Six / 82*
편 (or 쪽) side, direction
원편 ~ 쪽에 on the left
오른편 ~ 쪽에 on the right
맞은편에 across from, opposite
건너편에 across from, opposite
사이에 between

These are PLACE NOUNS. They are most frequently used in phrases with other nouns [refer to section 5.6., noun use (3) if necessary].

대학교 앞에 in front of the university
d사관 앞에 next to the embassy

It is important to put these nouns in the right order. If the place noun comes before the other noun, the meaning is changed. The place noun modifies the noun that follows it. This point is best illustrated by example. There are many, but the following are typical.

문 앞에 in front of the door
앞문 the front door
방 앞에 next to the room
옆방 the next room

The place noun 사이 (사이에 between) by the nature of its meaning usually requires two nouns before it. These are linked with 하고 and.

학교하고 집 사이에 between the school and the house

Some place nouns are also used as time nouns: 사이 can refer to an interval of time as well as of space; 앞 can refer ahead in time (앞으로 in future); 안 can mean within (a certain time); and, 다음 most commonly means next (in order or time).
주의!

General location is marked with the particle 에.
연 방에 있어요. It's in the next room. or 집에 있어요. She's at home.

But Korean has two place nouns — 안 and 속 — for the same more specific English gloss: inside. It is difficult to distinguish the nuances, but 안 tends to mean the inside of loosely filled spaces, for example, a room, a building, a garden—things which generally have more air than substance filling their interior. 속, however, tends to mean the inside of things which are normally well filled or which are easily filled up, for example, a suitcase, a drawer.

Corresponding to such English expressions as where in this room (requests for more specific locations), there are Korean phrases like these.

이 교실 안 어디(요)? Where in this classroom? [Literally: in what place of this classroom's inside?]
책상 위 어디(요)? Where on (top of) the desk?

You may have noticed the relationship between a special set of place nouns and the set of noun-modifying nouns you learned.

이 this
그 that
(нearby, aпfоrmеntionеd)
저 that (over there)

여기 this place, here
거기 that place, there
(нearby, aрformеntionеd)
저기 that place, (over) there

You will hear these words occasionally pronounced 요, 고, 조 and 요기, 고기, 조기. These add a connotation of smallness or cuteness this lil'... or of depreciation this ole. Here are further examples of the usage of place nouns.

25. 광화문 근처에는 무슨 건물이 있어요?
What kind of buildings are there in the vicinity of Kwanghwamun?

26. 백화점 건너편에 무엇이 있어요?
What is there across from the department store?

Lesson Six / 84
27. 대학교 정문 앞에 가방가게가 있어요?
   Is there a briefcase shop outside (in front of) the main gate of the university?

28. 이 건물 안에 커피숍이 있어요?
   Is there a coffee shop inside this building?

6.6. More about the Topic Particle 은 ~ 는

This lesson offers more examples of the topic particle in its capacity for reducing or subduing the emphasis of what goes before it. We can put these usages of the topic particle into three general categories: stage setting, contrast, old business.

Stage setting occurs when the topic particle sets the stage for what the sentence is going to be about. It comes after a noun expression and sets it aside as what we are going to talk about.

29. 가방 속에는 무엇이 있어요?
   Talking about the inside of the bag, what is in there?

In the case of contrast, two noun expressions or other phrases (about which you want to make contrasting statements or offer differing information) are set aside at the beginning of their respective clauses. Each is followed by the particle 은 ~ 는, to subdue its emphasis so the way is cleared for the important contrasting statements.

30. 왼편에는 ... 오른편에는 ...
   On the left (guess what?!) ... (and) on the right (guess what?)

We have seen that one function of 이 ~ 가 is to introduce new business. The first time a subject is mentioned in context, its newness calls for emphasis through marking with the subject particle 이 ~ 가. However, if this subject reappears in the conversation, it comes under the heading of old business. In this case, it appears with the particle 은 ~ 는, which relegates it to the realm of subdued emphasis. In fact, it often happens that the subject disappears altogether.

6.7. Answering Negative Questions

If you want to answer a Korean question with yes or no, you do it just as you would in English, so long as the question is an affirmative one. If the question is negative, you use the Korean word for yes to agree with the negativeness, and the Korean word for no to disagree with the negativeness. The resulting usage is the opposite from the English.

Lesson Six / 85
31. 가방 속에 담배는 없어요?
   Don't you have any cigarettes inside your briefcase?
   a. 네, 없어요.
      Yes, [I agree with your words] there aren't any.
   b. 아니요, 있어요.
      No, [your impression is mistaken] there are some cigarettes.

Occasionally there are exceptions, for example, when the question is put in the negative form just to be polite. Here are some further illustrations. Note carefully the difference between the Korean and the English translations.

32. A. 그 사람은 미국 사람이 아니에요?
     Isn't that man an American?
     B. 네, 아니에요. 영국 사람이에요.
        No, he's not. He's English. (Yes, he's not an American.)

33. A. 연필이 없어요?
     Haven't you a pencil?
     B. 네, 없어요.
        No, I haven't.

34. A. 가방(이) 없어요?
     Don't you have a bag?
     B. 아니요, 있어요.
        Yes, I do.

6.8. The Plural Marker 들

Korean nouns are not specific with respect to number. The following sentence conveys information which might correspond to several English sentences.

35. 책하고 공책하고 연필이 있어요.
    I've got a book, a notebook, and a pencil.
    I've got some books, a notebook, and a pencil.
    I've got some books, a notebook, and some pencils.
    I've got some books, some notebooks, and a pencil.
And so on, until the mathematical possibilities are exhausted. But if it is really necessary, Korean can make nouns specifically plural. (Without using numerals, Korean cannot make them specifically singular.) Korean does this by placing 들, a word meaning something like group, after them.

선생      teacher or teachers
선생들     teachers

As you might expect, Korean also allows you to put 들 on pronouns, including even those which are already plural.

우리, 우리들     we
저희, 저희들     we (Humble)
너희, 너희들     you all (Intimate)
그 사람, 그 사람들 he, she, they

Particles to be used with the plural phrase come after the 들.

The word 들 is uniquely versatile. It may pop up just about anywhere in a Korean sentence except on the verb at the very end. Furthermore, 들 need not always refer to the words near it. It is used to make explicit that the speaker is talking about (or to) more than one thing (or person). Here are some examples.

36. 어서들 오세요.
    Welcome! (said to more than person to be explicit that all are welcome)

37. 천천히들 가세요.
    Go slow! (said to two or more people going too fast)

38. A. 학생들이 어디에 있어요?
    Where are the students?

B. 교실에 들 있어요.
    They're in the classroom.
Exercises

Exercise 1: Fill in the Blanks

Fill in the blanks of the following sentences with each of the place expressions listed. Express them in Korean and practice them aloud.

1. 집 _____ 나무가 있어요.
   a. in
   b. outside
   c. in front of
   d. next to
   e. at the back of

2. 만호 씨 공책은 가방 _____ 있어요.
   a. on top of
   b. in
   c. beside
   d. under
   e. to the right of

3. 교보빌딩은 광화문 _____ 있어요?
   a. at
   b. behind
   c. next to
   d. in front of
   e. in the vicinity of
Exercise 2: Sentence Construction

Make up two sentences with each of the sets of information given below, one indicating that there is something, the other that there isn't. For example, if you were given 교실 and 학생, then your two sentences would be: 교실에 학생이 있어요 and 교실에 학생이 없어요.

1. 방
   책상
2. 집
   텔레비전
3. 교실
   학생
4. 방
   의자
5. 학교
   화장실
6. 가방
   책
7. 대사관
   그림
8. 호텔
   가게
9. 백화점
   커피숍
10. 대학교
    은행

Exercise 3: Naming Locations

Make Korean sentences filling in each blank five times using the phrases given in (a) - (e), completing the sentences in any way you choose. Practice saying them aloud until you feel sure of them.

1. 수진 씨는 _______.
   a. next to
   b. to the left of
   c. across from
   d. between
   e. to the right of
2. 제 책은 _______.
   a. on
   b. under
   c. just beside
   d. between
   e. inside of

3. 은행은 _______.
   a. beside
   b. right across from
   c. at the back of
   d. to the left of
   e. outside of
4. _______ 공원이 있어요.
   a. in the vicinity of
   b. in front of
   c. between
   d. opposite
   e. behind
Exercise 4: English to Korean Translation

Translate these sentences into Korean and practice them until you can say them fluently.

1. Where are my cigarettes?
2. Are they inside Manho’s briefcase?
3. In my briefcase I’ve got some books, some papers, and a lighter.
4. But I don’t have any paper.
5. Here, I have some paper. Have you got a pen?
6. The pen is on the desk.
7. I’m sorry. There isn’t any pen on the desk.
8. Is it under the desk? Is it on the television?
9. There isn’t any. But I have one in the next room. Excuse me.
10. Here is a pen. It’s a Korean pen.
11. Are Manho’s cigarettes Korean cigarettes?
12. No. They’re American (ones).
13. Professor Park’s wife is between Manho and Sujin.
14. Manho is my friend. He’s a Korean student.
15. Who is Sujin? Is Sujin a student, too? Is she a company employee?

Exercise 5: Korean to English Translation

Translate the following Korean sentences into English.

1. A. 학교 앞에는 나무가 있어요.
   B. 나무 밑에는 뭐가 있어요? 어떻게요?
   A. 모르겠어요.
2. 영진 씨 부모님하고 영진 씨가 여기 있어요. 만호 씨는 열방에 있어요.
3. 책상 위에는 그림이 있어요.
4. 최 선생님은 돈이 얼마나 있어요?
   A. 얼마나요?
   B. 천원 주세요.
5. 책상 위에는 신문하고 잡지가 있어요.
6. A. 내 공책이 어디에 있어요?
   B. 미안해요. 다시 한번 말해 주세요. 그리고 천천히 말해 주세요.
7. A. 내 담배는 책상 위 어디에 있어요?
   B. 저 책 바로 밑에 있어요.
8. A. 대사관 근처에는 무슨 건물이 있어요?
   B. 외관에는 호텔이 있어요. 그리고 맞은편에는 시청이 있어요.

Lesson Six / 90
Exercise 6: Possession and Plurals

This exercise is designed to practice the way to say I have and also the explicit plural marker 들. You should use that particle in the following questions whenever it is reasonable to do so. This is for the purposes of this exercise only. Remember that Korean does not need to mark words as explicitly plural in the way that English does.

1. I have some books and magazines.
2. Please give me those pens. I haven't got any.
3. By the way, don't you have any Korean newspapers?
4. Teacher Lee doesn't have any chalk.
5. Are there any students in this room?
6. [Three people knock at your office door]
   Please come in!
7. A. Where are the magazines?
   B. They're over there [be explicitly plural].
8. A. Doesn't Manho's friend have any books?
   B. No, he doesn't.
9. A. Do you have any pictures in (your) room?
   B. No, but my parents do in their room.

Exercise 7: Vocabulary Drill

Complete the following sentences by filling in the blanks with each of the words listed below them. Write out each entire sentence in Korean.

1. 책상 옆에 ______이/가 있어요?
   a pen  a briefcase  a lighter
   a notebook  a child  a TV
   pencils  pictures  a desk
   a door  a book  a baby
   chairs  a blackboard  matches
   1000 won

2. 만호 씨 집 근처에 ______은/는 있어요?
   a school  an embassy  a bank
   a park  a department store  a hotel
   a company  a university  a shop

Lesson Six / 91
In this lesson you will learn how to ask people where they are going and what they are doing. You learn to talk a bit about eating and drinking and how to buy tickets at a railway station. Finally, the lesson introduces you to the most important verb types in Korean, the object particle 을~을, ways to say to and from, and dynamic location with 에서.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Eunice runs into the elderly Korean lady across the hall as she leaves on her way for her morning Korean language classes.

유니스 안녕하세요?
할머니 안녕하세요? 어디 가요?
유니스 학교에 가요.
할머니 요즘 학교에 다녀요?
유니스 네, 월요일~수요일에 고려 대학교에 가요.
고대에서 한국말을 배워요.
할머니 그래요? 빨리 다녀와요!

Notes

할머니 grandmother (term of address for any woman old enough to be a grandmother).
수요일~ on (Mondays and) Wednesdays. The particle 에 is used to locate things in time, as well as in space.
다녀와요! See you later! (said to somebody leaving home who will be back later).

[Memorize this as a useful expression.]

Lesson Seven /92
Dialogue 2

Later after class, Eunice runs into the elderly lady again downstairs.

유니스: 다녀 왔어요.
할머니: 그래, 점심은 보통 어디에서 먹어요?
유니스: 학교 식당에서 먹어요.
할머니: 거기는 음식을 잘 해요?
유니스: 네, 불고기하고 비빔밥을 잘 해요. 아주 맛이 있어요.
할머니: 술도 팔아요?
유니스: 아이구, 할머니 — 학교 식당에서 무슨 술을 팔아요?!

Notes

다녀왔어요! I'm back! (said by someone who has just come back home from going out for a while). [Memorize this as a useful expression.]

그례 Literally: It is so; really. This is simply the elderly lady's way of saying I've heard your greeting (and I am much older than you are, which is why I've dropped the 오, so I can get away with this perfunctory response).

거기는 잘 해요? Literally: Do they do (it) well there? This is a useful way for expressing Are they any good? Are they good at what they do?

아이구! Oh, my! Oh, dear! This is the most ubiquitous Korean exclamation.

무슨 술을 팔아요? Since when do they sell booze? Lit.: What sort of booze would/do they sell (none!). Korean can use questions with 무슨 like this to make a rhetorical question with exclamatory force.

Dialogue 3

Chris Murphy has to catch the train from Seoul station to Taejon for a business meeting. Unsure of which queue he should be standing in, he asks somebody.

크리스: 실패합니다. 대전행 차표는 어디서 팔아요?
어저씨: 매포소가 저기 있어요.
크리스: 감사합니다.

Chris buys the ticket.

크리스: 대전행 기차는 어느 플랫폼에서 떠나요?
아가씨: 첫 플랫폼에서 떠나요.

Lesson Seven /93
크리스: 몇 시간 걸려요?
야가씨: 두 시간 걸려요.

He then notices the agent looking for something.

크리스: 필 찾아요?
야가씨: 제 볼펜요.
크리스: 아, 여기 있어요. 미안해요.

Notes

여기 있어요: Here it is. Here you go. Here you are.
두 시간: Two hours. Notice that the final 에 of 둘 two drops before the counter expression 시간 hours. You will learn more about numerals and counters in Lesson Eleven.
미안해요: I'm sorry. This is the Polite Style version of 미안합니다.

Vocabulary

Days of the Week and Related Expressions

어제: yesterday
오늘: today
내일: tomorrow
월요일(예): (on) Monday
화요일(예): (on) Tuesday
수요일(예): (on) Wednesday
목요일(예): (on) Thursday
금요일(예): (on) Friday
토요일(예): (on) Saturday
일요일(예): (on) Sunday

Other Time Expressions

요즘: nowadays, these days
보통: usually, normally
날: day
아침(예): (in the) morning; breakfast
낮(예): (in the) daytime; noon

Lesson Seven / 94
오후(에)  (in the) afternoon, PM
오전(에)   (in the) AM
저녁(에)    (in the) evening; supper
어제 저녁(에)   yesterday evening
오늘 저녁(에)  this evening (not *이 저녁)
밤(에)       (at) night
어제 밤(에)   last night
오늘 밤(에)  tonight (not *이 밤(에))
일찍          early (adverb)
아침 일찍    early in the morning
늦게          late (adverb)
이따가       in a while, a while later
 언제         when?
지급          now
주말(에)      (on the/over the) weekend
시간          hour; time

Food, Eating and Drinking
식당       dining room, restaurant, cafeteria, refectory
음식점   restaurant
레스토랑     restaurant (somewhat upscale)
탕        bread
고기       meat
불고기      pulgogi
비빔밥 [비빔밥] pibimbap, pibimbap
음식    food
밥        cooked rice
밥(을) 먹어요 eats a meal, has a meal
아침      breakfast, morning meal
점심      lunch
저녁      supper, evening meal
우유      milk
물       water
taste
 맞(이) 있- be tasty, delicious (pronounced 마시이씨요.)
맞 익- taste bad, not taste good (pronounced 마담써요. 마시엄써요.)
Travel and Transport

PLACE

부산행 기차

차
기차
비행기
저전거
표
차표
매표소
플랫폼

bound for PLACE
a Pusan train, train bound for Pusan
car, vehicle
train
airplane
bicycle
ticket
(train, bus) ticket
ticket counter
platform

Miscellaneous

아버지
어머님
도서관
슈퍼마켓
장(을) 보-
영화
극장

편지
불
일
개
고양이
휴지
수건, 타올
노래
노래(를) 불리요

father (honorific)
mother (honorific)
library
supermarket
do grocery shopping
movie, film
theatre (can mean both cinema and venue for a dramatic performance)
letter
fire; light; a light
matter, business; work
dog
cat
tissue paper, Kleenex, toilet tissue
towel
song
sings a song
noraebang: Korean karaoke box
first NOUN
how many?
alone, on one's own, by oneself
quickly
a lot (adverb)
a little
well; often
very
Lesson Seven introduces you to many different verbs. These are listed in groups in the Lesson Notes. For that reason they have not been repeated here. The first group below gives the verb bases occurring in the Korean dialogues at the beginning of the lesson, the second group lists verbs that are formed with 하-.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>배우-</th>
<th>learn</th>
<th>과-</th>
<th>sell</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>다니-</td>
<td>attend, go on regular basis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있-</td>
<td>be; exist; have</td>
<td>사-</td>
<td>buy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머나-</td>
<td>leave, depart</td>
<td>가-</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸리-</td>
<td>take (time)</td>
<td>찾-</td>
<td>look for (it)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부(을) 하-</td>
<td>study</td>
<td>잘하-</td>
<td>do well, do (it) well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>산보(을) 하-</td>
<td>stroll, take a walk</td>
<td>말(을) 하-</td>
<td>speak, talk (a language)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[삼보]</td>
<td></td>
<td>미안하-</td>
<td>be sorry, feel sorry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일(을) 하-</td>
<td>work; do work</td>
<td>구경(을) 하-</td>
<td>do viewing or sightsee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영화구경(을) 하-</td>
<td>see a film</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Lesson Notes**

**7.1. Verbs: The Polite Style and the Infinitive**

The Korean sentences of this lesson end with verbs of various kinds. Notice that the verbs you have learned, including 있어요, is, exists; 있어요, isn’t, doesn’t exist; and the copula -(이)에요 is, end with 요, and that before this 요, there is a vowel sound. Verbs that end this way are in the Polite Style (해요) of speech.

As you have seen earlier, the social relationship between two speakers determines what style they use when speaking to each other, i.e., what endings they will use with the verbs at the end of their sentences. If they are educated people who respect each other and yet do not feel stiff or formal together, they are apt to use the Polite Style most of the time.

The Polite Style ending is the same regardless of whether it is used with a verb that asks a question or one which makes a statement. It is usually the speaker’s tone of voice, rather

*Lesson Seven /97*
than the actual syllables he utters, that indicate this sort of meaning. It is similar to the way that you can turn such a sentence as *You're not going* into either a question or an announcement.

Verbs in the polite style can make suggestions *Let's...* or even gentle commands *Why don't you* or *How about VERBing?* All use the same verb form, ending in a vowel sound plus ᵁ.

Korean verb forms are made up of BASES with ENDINGS on them. The present-tense forms you have seen so far are all in the Polite Style and have the particle ᵁ at the end to mark the style. If you remove this ᵁ, the part that remains is called the INFINITIVE of the verb (the term has nothing to do with the denotation of infinitives in European languages). The Korean infinitive has a great many uses of its own, and in addition it is what the past tense is based on (we will look at this in the next lesson).

Here is a list of common verbs in the infinitive form (you need to learn these as part of the vocabulary for this lesson).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>앉아</td>
<td>sits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자</td>
<td>goes to bed; sleeps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작아</td>
<td>is little in size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적어</td>
<td>are few in number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>해</td>
<td>does [IRREGULAR]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>발라</td>
<td>is fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받아</td>
<td>receives, gets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배워</td>
<td>learns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가</td>
<td>goes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가르쳐</td>
<td>teaches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>놀아</td>
<td>plays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>커</td>
<td>is large, big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기타려</td>
<td>waits (for)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>끝나</td>
<td>stops, ends, is over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많아</td>
<td>is much; are many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>만나</td>
<td>meets/sees (s.b.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마셔</td>
<td>drinks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹어</td>
<td>eats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>됐(← 되어)</td>
<td>becomes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물어</td>
<td>bites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찾아</td>
<td>looks for; finds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋아</td>
<td>is good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쌓다</td>
<td>gives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없어</td>
<td>is nonexistent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일어나</td>
<td>gets up; stands up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일어</td>
<td>reads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있어</td>
<td>exists; stays; has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>와</td>
<td>comes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피워</td>
<td>smokes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서</td>
<td>stands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>박다</td>
<td>looks at, sees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사</td>
<td>buys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>살아</td>
<td>lives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>써</td>
<td>writes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉬어</td>
<td>rests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닫다</td>
<td>closes it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들리</td>
<td>hears; listens to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열어</td>
<td>opens it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다녀</td>
<td>attends, goes regularly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>묻어</td>
<td>asks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you glance down the list, you will see that all of the infinitives end in a vowel \\- or \\- (\\- does is irregular). The vowel at the end is in some cases an ending (to mark the infinitive), while in others it belongs to the basic part of the verb (its base) and the infinitive vowel \\- has been dropped or abbreviated.

You may wonder about the translation of infinitives by English forms like does it instead of to do. It is because the Korean forms can be used as sentences just as they stand: when you remove the polite-style particle Ę, you have sentences in the Intimate Style (about which we will learn later).

The word infinitive (like many grammar terms) does not mean the same thing when we talk about Korean as when we talk about English. It is simply a label or tag for the \\- ending in Korean, and you should memorize it as such.

7.2. Korean Verbs with Consonant Bases

Bases of Korean verbs are classified into two main types: CONSONANT BASES and VOWEL BASES. In this section we look at the former; vowel bases are discussed in Section 7.5.

Consonant-base verbs typically have the infinitive ending -\\- and their infinitives consist of the base plus this vowel ending. However, if the last vowel of the base is 오 or 아 then the ending is -\\- instead of -\\-. Here is a list of some consonant bases and infinitives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>양-</td>
<td>sits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작-</td>
<td>be little in size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입-</td>
<td>wear; put on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>착-</td>
<td>look for; find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>벗-</td>
<td>take off (clothes)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>양아</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작아</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>착아</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>벗이</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Seven / 99
7.3. The Dictionary Form of Korean Verbs

Korean dictionaries list verbs in a special dictionary form or citation form with the one-shape ending -다. This ending is the same for all verbs, and is not an infinitive. Remember that in English or other commonly learned Indo-European languages, the infinitive is something quite different. The rule for making the dictionary form is simple: base plus -다. The first four verb bases in the list on the preceding page will appear in a Korean dictionary as follows:

안타  작다  입다  찾다

7.4. Three Types of Special Consonant Base

The only tricky point to remember about consonant-base verbs concerns the last three bases in the list in section 7.2. (들- listen to, 더- be hot, 나(야)- get/be better).

1. INAL verbs

Verbs that end in -nal change the -nal to -n before endings that begin with a consonant.

들- listen to → 듣다 to listen to (Dictionary form)
2.  

Verbs that end in -w change the -w to - before endings that begin with a consonant.

더 w- be hot  → 었다  to be hot (Dictionary form)

주의
The O or zero consonant sign which gets written before any syllable beginning with a vowel does not count as a consonant for the purposes of our rules.

3.  

S-irregular Verbs
Verbs that end in (ㅅ) drop the ㅅ before endings that begin with a vowel.

나(ㅅ) - be better  → 낳다  to be better [dictionary form]

→ 나아  is better [infinitive form]

These are different from regular verbs in ㅅ, which keep the ㅅ in all forms.

.RemoveAt(articles)  → 빼여  takes off (clothes) [infinitive form]

→ 빼다  to take off (clothes) [dictionary form]

7.5. Korean Verbs with Vowel Bases

The second major type of Korean verb entails bases that end with a vowel. Vowel-base verbs are unfortunately somewhat more complex:

1.  

In one group, the infinitive is the same shape as the base. This includes bases ending in 아, 어 and 았:

자-  sleep  자  sleeps
가-  go  가  goes
바-  be expensive  바  is expensive
만나-  meet  만나  meets
사-  buy  사  buys

Lesson Seven / 101
2. In another group, the base ends in 이 and the infinitive ending -어 is added, but 이 is abbreviated to 어.

가르치- teach 가르치 ← 가르치어 teaches
gi-ya- wait 기다리 ← 기다리어 waits
마시- drink 마셔 ← 마시어 drinks
치- strike, hit 쳐 ← 치어 strikes, hits

Note that the base 쉬- cannot abbreviate (there is no 한글 letter combining 위 and 어 in one syllable).

쉬- rest 쉬어 rests

3. A similar group consists of bases that end in 우; they add the ending -어 and then the sequence 우어 abbreviates to 어 if the base is just one syllable.

배우- learn 배위 ← 배우어 learns
피우- smoke 피위 ← 피우어 smokes
주- give 취 ← 주어 gives

4. Vowel bases that end in 오 add the infinitive ending as -아 and then 오아 is shortened to 와.

오- come 와 ← 오아 comes
보- look at, see 보 ← 보아 looks at, sees

[Note: In the case of come, the contraction from 오아 to 와 is obligatory. In the case of see, note that Korean pronunciation frequently drops ㅅ after consonants, especially labial sounds like ㅂ, so you will hear 와 pronounced 바 in fast or sloppy speech.]

5. Most vowel bases that end in 오 drop the 오 before adding the infinitive ending -어 (or -아, if there is a preceding syllable with 오 or 아).

Lesson Seven / 102
6. Most vowel bases that end in 림 not only drop the 오 but double the 림 before adding the appropriate infinitive ending (normally -어, but -아 when the vowel of the preceding syllable is 오 or 아).

高速增长

快速

唱(一首歌)

不知道

These are called L-doubling bases.

7. Another common kind of vowel base is one which looks at first glance like a consonant base: it ends in a vowel before some endings, but picks up an 림 before others, two of which are the infinitive and the dictionary form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Dictionary Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>노- 림-</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>놀아</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사- 림-</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>살아</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여- 림-</td>
<td>open it</td>
<td>열어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아- 림-</td>
<td>know it</td>
<td>알아</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파- 림-</td>
<td>sell it</td>
<td>팔아</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For each new ending you learn, you must memorize whether the - 림- of these verbs stays or drops before it. So far you have not learned any endings that require the - 림- to drop. These are called L-extending bases.

It is vital that you keep these L-extending bases apart from the 림 ~ 림 verbs like 들- (들다) listen introduced in section 7.4 above. Given an infinitive form like 물-어, you do not know whether the underlying base is 무- 림- (물다) or 물- (문다). As it turns out, both bases exist.

물- 림- | bite | 물어 | bites | 물다 | to bite (dictionary form) |
| 물-   | ask  | 물어 | asks  | 물다 | to ask (dictionary form) |

Lesson Seven / 103
Finally, there are three special infinitives we should mention.

1. Become

The infinitive of this verb usually has the same shape as the base, but is sometimes spelled, and occasionally pronounced, 되 (though pronounced with a long vowel).

되↔ become 되어 or 되

2. Copula

The infinitive of the copula is irregular in that it does not abbreviate from 되어 to 되어. Note also that the relationship between Polite Style and infinitive in the copula is irregular:

-이예요 (Polite Style) -이어 (infinitive) -이다 (dictionary form)

3. Do

The important verb 해↔ do has an irregular infinitive: 해. The literary form of the infinitive, which you may sometimes see, is: 하여 does.

해요 (Polite Style) 해 (← 하여) (infinitive) 하다 (dictionary form)

There are a few other kinds of verb bases that you will learn later.

7.6. The Direct Object Particle 을 ~ 를

The DIRECT OBJECT PARTICLE 을 ~ 를 is another two-shape particle, like the subject particle 이 ~ 가 and the topic particle 은 ~ 는. Its form is 을 after consonants and 를 after vowels. Here are some examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>을 After Consonant</th>
<th>를 After Vowel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>물을 water</td>
<td>노래를 song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밥을 cooked rice</td>
<td>고기를 meat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빵을 bread</td>
<td>개를 dog</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After a vowel, 를 is often abbreviated to just 를, especially in common expressions like 날 me and 이걸 this thing.
Remember that Korean requires you to pronounce most particles without hesitating, as though they were part of the preceding word, like suffixes. Much like English requires its speakers to pronounce "sandwich-es" or "boy-s" without stopping between the word and its suffix. If you need to pause and think what particle to use, it is better to do so before you begin to say the noun, not after you have said it. If you find you must pause, once you have found the right particle, go back and start from the noun again: 친구 . . . , 친구 . . . , 친구를 . . . .

Again like the subject and topic particles, 을 ~을 has no English translation. Rather, it marks a grammatical function: the noun before it is the direct object of the verb, the *it* of does it.

Since the subject and object particles flag their nouns as subject and object, the order in which these expressions come along in a Korean sentence is not crucial, as it is in corresponding English sentences where word order alone marks grammatical functions, so that *Mother sees baby* does not mean the same thing as *Baby sees mother*.

1. 어머니가 예기를 봤어요. 
   예기를 어머니가 봤어요.  
   *Mother sees baby.*
   (same)

2. 어머니를 예기가 봤어요. 
   예기가 어머니를 봤어요.  
   *Baby sees mother.*
   (same)

In spoken Korean, either subject or object particle may drop out. If both are omitted the sentence may become ambiguous. 어머니 예기 봤어요 and 예기 어머니 봤어요 can both have two opposite meanings. *Mother sees baby* and *Baby sees mother*, because Korean does not use simple word order to signal subject-object relations. If only one particle drops, of course, the sentence is not ambiguous. 어머니가 예기 봤어요 and 어머니 예기를 봤어요 can only mean *Mother sees baby*.

Many English verbs take objects by way of a linked preposition: 사람을 기다리어요 *waits for a person, i.e., awaits a person*. So you can't always count on a one-to-one correspondence between transitive verbs in Korean and what are called transitive verbs in English.

In certain kinds of Korean sentences, as you have learned, a verb can have two subjects: two different nouns with the particle 이 ~가. There is, however, usually only one direct object to a verb. Most often, a direct object is similar in meaning to English direct objects: 책을 봤어요 *reads [looks at] a book*, 편지를 써요 *writes a letter*.

*Lesson Seven / 105*
7.7. Particles of Direction: *to, from*

Corresponding to English *to* are the particle 에 for places and 한테 (or also 에게) for living things:

- 은행에 가요  
  - goes to the bank
- 공원에 가요  
  - goes to the park
- 내 친구한테 줘요  
  - or 내 친구에게  
  - give it to my friend
- 만호 씨한테 줘요  
  - or 만호 씨에게  
  - give it to Manho

*From* is expressed by the same particles with 서 after them. Sometimes the original particle is omitted, and you can simply say 서. You can do this when you want to say *from* (a place).

- 은행에서 학교에 가요  
  - or 은행서  
  - Goes from the bank to school.
- 식당에서  
  - or 식당서  
  - from the cafeteria

To express *from* with living things, you do the same thing you do to express *from* with nonliving things: add 서 to the directional/locational particle.

- 내 친구한테서  
  - or 내 친구에게서  
  - from my friend
- 만호 씨한테서  
  - or 만호 씨에게서  
  - from Manho

However, colloquial Korean allows you to use 한테 (or 에게) without 서 in the sense of *from* (a person).

3. **A.** 한국말은 누구한테 배워요?  
   - Who are you learning Korean from?
3. **B.** 한국사람한테 배워요.  
   - I'm learning from a Korean.

*Lesson Seven / 106*
Here are some example sentences.

4. A. 편지는 누구한테서 왔어요?
   *Who do you get letters from?*

   B. 어머니한테서 왔어요.
   *From my mother."

5. 학생이 선생에게서 책을 받아요.
   *The student receives a book from the teacher."

Finally, here is a chart to help you keep these various meanings and particles straight.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Living thing</th>
<th>TO</th>
<th>FROM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>에게</td>
<td>에게서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>한테</td>
<td>한테서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>한테 (colloquial)</td>
<td>한테 (colloquial)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Place</th>
<th>에</th>
<th>/from</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>에서</td>
<td>에서 (colloquial)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.8. Static and Dynamic Location

Corresponding to English in, at, on, as you learned in section 6.3, is the particle 에 (being) at, with or without some specific word of location in front of it. This is a particle of STATIC location: something *is in (at, on) a place*. For DYNAMIC location, when something *happens in (at or on) a place*, Korean uses the particle 시 (happening) at or the combination 에서. These particles have the same English translation as 에, but are used when the verb denotes an action.

Directional 에 is used with verbs of motion like 가요, 와요.

Static location 에 is used with verbs of location like 있어요 and 않아요. This same 에 is used to locate things in time, too.

6. 월요일에 쉬어요.
   *On Monday(s) I take it easy.*
7. 아침에 우유를 사요.
    In the morning I buy milk.

However, just as in English certain time adverbs do not take 에 (or a preposition in English): *어제에, *오늘에, and *내일에 are all unacceptable for yesterday, today and tomorrow.

Dynamic location 에서 is used with all other verbs to describe where an action is taking place. Here are some examples.

8. A. 만호 씨는 어디에 있어요?
    Where is Manho?

     B. 집에 있어요.
    He is at home.

9. A. 점심은 어디에서 먹어요?
    Where does he eat lunch?

     B. 음식점에서 먹어요.
    He eats at a restaurant.

10. 동호 씨는 학교에 있어요.
    Tongho is at school.

11. 내 친구는 학교에서 가르치요.
    My friend teaches at school.

주의!

With some verbs either 에 or (에)서 is used:
서울에 살아요 or 서울(에)서 살아요. lives in Seoul.

With most verbs only one of the alternatives is possible:
있어요 is, stays and 앉아요 sits take only 에.
7.9. Using Location To Express Possession

You learned in section 6.2 to use Ở- and Ó- for expressing possession in sentences of
the type.

12. 나는 책이 있어요.
    I have a book [Literally: As for me, there exists a book].

Korean can also use a locational construction to express possession; whereas Ở functions
to locate things in inanimate (nonliving) places, the particles 한데 or 에게 are used to
locate things with living creatures, especially humans. Compare the following three sentences.

13. 은행에 돈이 있어요.
    The bank has money. [Literally: There is money in/at the bank.]

14. 나한테 돈이 있어요.
    I have money. [Literally: Up to me there exists money.]

15. 수진 씨한테는 돈이 없어요.
    Sujin has no money.

7.10. Different Kinds of Verbs

Korean verbs are either PROCESSIVE or DESCRIPTIVE. Processive verbs usually mean
does (it), i.e., performs an action. Descriptive verbs (sometimes called adjectives) usually
mean is (a certain way), i.e., has some characteristic. In the vocabulary lists for this
textbook, descriptive verb bases are glossed with English be, e.g., 크- be big.

The distinction between descriptive and processive verbs will become more and more
important as you advance through this book. For now, only a few are pointed out of the
differences between these two types of verbs. One of the differences is that you can use the
processive verbs as commands (do it!) and suggestions (let's do it!), but the descriptive
verbs are limited to statements (it is) and questions (is it?). To say let's be good in Korean
you have to turn the sentence into one that means let's behave nicely.

Another difference is that descriptive verbs never take an object marked with the object
marker 을-를 (but this does not mean that all processive verbs can take the particle 을-를).
Sometimes descriptive verbs mean has one that is (a certain way) as follows.

16. 책이 많아요.
    I have lots of books.
Notice that what corresponds to the object in English (*books*) is marked with 이 ~ 가 in Korean.

Descriptive verbs can have a subject (sometimes even two).

17. 누가 술이 있어요?  
   *Who has the booze?*

18. 나는 이것이 좋아요.  
   *I like this.*

19. 그 음식은 맛이 좋아요.  
   *The food has good flavor (tastes good).*

Many processive verbs, on the other hand, can take a direct object (sometimes even two) as well as a subject, as you learned in Section 7.6. Some examples are:

20. 책을 읽어요.  
   *Reads the book*

21. 한국말을 공부를 해요.  
   *Studies Korean*

In addition, some processive verbs can take an indirect object marked by the particle 한국어 (or 에게) for living things and the particle 에 for things or institutions. This was covered in Section 7.7.

22. 동생한테 돈을 빌어요.  
   *Gives money to one’s younger sibling.*

23. 중국사람한테 중국말을 배워요.  
   *Learns Chinese from a Chinese.*

A few processive verbs take an indirect object with the double particle 한국어 (or 에게서) for people and the particle 에서 for things or institutions.

24. 어머니한테 돈을 받아요.  
   *Receives money from one’s mother.*

25. 은행에서 편지를 받아요.  
   *Gets a letter from the bank.*

* 있어요 and 없어요 cannot take a direct object marked with 을 ~ 를. Any object that may be required for an English translation appears as a subject.*

*Lesson Seven / 110*
26. 돈이 있어요.
*has money*

27. 시간이 없어요.
*has no time*

주의!
You must never say a sentence like 돈을 있어요.

The copula is a special kind of descriptive verb; it has a number of grammatical peculiarities all its own, which you will learn through the course.

7.11. More on the Particle 도

When you use the particle 도 with a noun, you do not use the particles that would mark that same noun as topic (은 ~ 는), subject (이 ~ 가), or direct object (을 ~ 를); notice how 도 takes the place of those particles.

28. A. 나는 미국 사람이에요.
*I'm an American.*

B. 나도 미국 사람이에요.
*I'm an American too.*

29. A. 담배 있어요?
*Have you a cigarette?*

B. 블도 있어요?
*Have you a light too?*

30. 책을 읽어요.
*I read books.*

잡지도 읽어요.
*I read magazines too.*

This means that some sentences with 도 are ambiguous out of context: 애기를 봤어요 can mean either The baby sees it (or him, her) too or (She etc.) sees the baby too. You can clear
up the ambiguity by adding context: 어머니가 얘기도 하고, The mother sees the baby too, or 어머니를 얘기도 하고, The baby sees the mother too. You can, however, use 도 after any of the other particles. For example, 학교에서도 means at school also or from school also. 김 선생님한테도 means to Mr. Kim too and so on.

Two occurrences of 도 in the same Korean sentence often correspond to English both . . . and . . . or in a negative sentence (not) either . . . or . . . (which you will learn how to do in section 8.1.).

31. 아침에도 밤에도 일해요.
   I work both in the morning and at night.

32. 화장실에는 휴지도 수건도 없어요.
   There is neither toilet paper nor a towel in the bathroom.

7.12. Placement of Manner Adverbs

Manner adverbs are adverbs like 잘 well; often, 많이 lots, a lot, and 자주 often which tell how you do something. In Korean, such adverbs like to park just in front of the verb. In cases of VERBAL NOUN plus 하-, then, the adverb comes right before 하-:

33. 수진 씨는 공부를 잘 해요. [not 잘 공부를 해요.]
   Sujin studies well.

34. 수진 씨는 일을 많이 해요. [not 많이 일을 해요.]
   Sujin works a lot.

Exercises

Exercise 1: Fill in the Blanks

Fill in the following blanks with the noun-plus-particle expressions indicated below each sentence. Say the complete Korean sentence out loud.

1. 나는 저녁에 ______을 읽어요.  

   - a magazine
   - the newspaper
   - both a magazine and the newspaper
   - a Chinese book
   - an English newspaper and a Russian newspaper
   - some American magazines

Lesson Seven / 112
2. 동생이 나한테 _______을~를 취요.
   a radio
   some meat
toilet paper and a towel
   both cigarettes and matches
   a notebook
   some money
   pencils and paper

3. 나는 오후에 _______을~를 빌려~받아요.
   the doctor and his wife
   both Manho and Tongho
   a movie
   both Mrs. Kim and Mrs. Pak
   the teacher
   my friends
   a lot of (many) students

Exercise 2: Building Sentences from Phrases

Here is a list of phrases in Korean. Build a complete Korean sentence around each one. Then practice your sentences aloud.

1. 영화 구경을
2. 의자 앞에
3. 밥 박상한테서
4. 집하고 나무 사이에
5. 집 안에
6. 공원에
7. 극장 오른 쪽에
8. 아버지한테서
9. 요즘
10. 이 방 안에
11. 아침에
12. 원 쪽에
13. 친구한테
14. 매장소에서
15. 음식점에서
16. 집에

Exercise 3: Verb Phrases

Here are two Korean sentences with blanks in them. Complete the sentences using the verb expressions from the list below—use the same verb in both blanks.

내 친구는 _______. 그리고 나도 _______.

1. closing windows  2. looking at a magazine
3. drinking some water  4. taking it easy [playing] at home
5. singing a song  6. seeing a movie
7. getting up late  8. smoking a cigarette
9. going to school  10. speaking English
11. learning Korean  12. waiting for the doctor
13. listening to the radio  14. working

Lesson Seven / 113
Exercise 4: Korean to English Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. A. 지금 일 해요?
   B. 텔레비전을 바요.
   A. 혼자 바요?
   B. 아니요. 얘기하고 바요.

2. A. 집에 개 있어요?
   B. 네, 있어요.
   A. 지금은 어디에 있어요?
   B. 모르겠어요.
   A. 개는 잘 낼어요?
   B. 네, 잘 낼어요.

3. 우리 개는 공원에서 놀아요.
4. 우리 애기는 별도 우유도 잘 마셔요.
5. A. 뭐 해요?
   B. 친구를 기다려요.
6. A. 어디에 가요?
   B. 공원에 가요. 우리 개를 찾아요.
7. A. 어디에 가요?
   B. 음식점에 가요.
8. 우리 동생은 은행에서 일해요.
   은행에서는 편지를 많이 받아요.
   그리고 집에서는 편지를 많이 써요.
9. A. 일요일에는 집에 있어요.
   B. 집에서는 뭐 해요? 선물을 입어요?
   A. 네, 그리고 집지도 봐요.
10. 동생이 많이 적어요.
11. 호주 대사관이 커요, 작아요?
Exercise 5: English to Korean Translation

Translate the following sentences into Korean. Remember that you do not need to translate literally. The important thing is to convey the ideas that are being expressed.

1. He is a school teacher. He usually teaches English.
2. Saturday morning he reads the newspaper. And Thursday evenings he goes to the cinema.
3. He studies hard (well). He learns a lot.
4. At night I rest.
5. At the library there are lots of books. Nowadays books are expensive.
6. On Friday mornings I get up late. I drink some milk quickly. And then [그리고] I go to school.
7. I'm waiting for Professor Lee.
8. Give me a tissue. Give me a towel too.
9. Our house is little. But it's nice.
10. On Wednesdays I buy bread and milk.
11. The baby is playing by itself.
13. The mother calls the baby. But the baby is sleeping.
14. My mother lives in Seoul. There are many stores and department stores there.
15. A. Where is the library? Do you know?
   B. Yes, it's between that cafeteria over there and that building.
16. I'm seeing a film this evening.

Exercise 6: Conversation Practice

Make up five conversations based on the following sets of information. First, one asks the other where he is going. Respond appropriately (e.g., by the Korean equivalent of I'm going to the cafeteria). The next question is What do you do/buy/eat/drink there? (etc., as appropriate), and the response can then be made according to the information supplied. This can be done either as a written or an oral exercise.

1. 식당
   비빔밥을 먹ा-
2. 방
   텔레비전을 보-
3. 공원
   친구들과 만나-
4. 수퍼마켓
   우유를 사-
5. 점
   책을 읽-

Lesson Seven / 115
Exercise 7: Particle Insertion

Copy and translate the following sentences, inserting the correct particles.

1. 빵은 ___ 아요.
2. 맛 ___ 좋아요.
3. 내일은 우리 동생이 와요. 그리고 동생의 남자친구 ___ 와요.
4. 친구 ___ 만나요.
5. 책 ___ 비싸요.
6. 밥 ___ 먹어요.
7. 나는 공원 ___ 놀어요.
8. 나 ___ 친구 ___ 돈 ___ 받아요.
9. 우리는 식당 ___ 밥 ___ 먹어요.
10. 교실 ___ 학생 ___ 한국말 ___ 배워요.
11. 책상 위 ___ 선문 ___ 있어요.
12. 플랫폼 앞 ___ 기차 ___ 있어요.
13. 메모장 앞 ___ 여자 ___ 포 ___ 사요.
14. 주말 ___ 남자친구 ___ 영화구경 ___ 해요.

Exercise 8: Vocabulary Drill

1. Express the sentences below in Korean, filling in the blank space with each of the expressions listed beneath the sentence. Say the complete sentence aloud each time. Rearrange or add words if you can make better sentences by doing so.

나는 아침에 ________.

study
take walks
read the paper
go to the park
go to the movies
stay home
speak in English
listen to the radio
smoke cigarettes
learn Chinese
meet [my] friends
eat breakfast
play with the dog [use 하고]
go to the bank
come home
write letters
sell newspapers
learn Russian
drink milk
watch films
look for my dog
drink lots of water
work at the library
open the window

Lesson Seven / 116
2. 나는 편지를 _______ 씁니다.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>at night</td>
<td>in the morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturdays</td>
<td>fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on Friday mornings</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on Sundays</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this evening</td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a lot</td>
<td>in the daytime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the afternoon</td>
<td>Monday mornings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>often</td>
<td>tonight</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Give the dictionary form, infinitive, and Polite Style for each of the following verbs. Write each one out initially. Then practice them so that you can call them off fluently just by looking at the English. For example, the answer to number (1) will be: 좋다, 좋아, 좋아요.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dictionary Form</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Polite Style</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is good</td>
<td>sleeps</td>
<td>sleeps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finds</td>
<td>meets</td>
<td>meets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plays</td>
<td>goes</td>
<td>goes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bites</td>
<td>asks</td>
<td>asks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opens it</td>
<td>comes</td>
<td>comes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sits</td>
<td>is hot</td>
<td>is hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is little</td>
<td>receives</td>
<td>receives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lives</td>
<td>looks at</td>
<td>looks at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smokes</td>
<td>listens</td>
<td>listens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is large</td>
<td>teaches</td>
<td>teaches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knows it</td>
<td>waits</td>
<td>waits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eats</td>
<td>drinks</td>
<td>drinks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gives</td>
<td>sells</td>
<td>sells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is fast</td>
<td>buys</td>
<td>buys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calls</td>
<td>is great in number</td>
<td>is great in number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has</td>
<td>[copula]</td>
<td>[copula]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>closes</td>
<td>puts on [clothes]</td>
<td>puts on [clothes]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gets up</td>
<td>ties</td>
<td>ties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rests</td>
<td>learns</td>
<td>learns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writes</td>
<td>sings</td>
<td>sings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson Seven / 117*
Exercise 9: Dictionary Exercise

In Lesson Three you learned the various alphabetization schemes in use in North and South Korean dictionaries. In this lesson, you have learned the dictionary form in -다 for verbs. Look up the following words and add them to your vocabulary notes.

1. 달다
2. 빠다
3. 콴다
4. 꽁다
5. 빠들다
6. 까블다
7. 놀다
8. 무성하다
9. 셋다
10. 영터리
11. 쌍이다
12. 시끄럽다
13. 염다
14. 색다
15. 바뀌다
16. 좀다
17. 파업
18. 직장
19. 호랑이
20. 명함
21. 천사
22. 진짜
23. 가짜
24. 설거지

Lesson Seven / 118
다른 과목은 안 하세요?

In this lesson you will learn how to talk about your Korean language skills and your university studies, and you will attempt to make a reservation over the telephone. You will learn about verbal nouns, how to negate verbs (doesn’t, isn’t and can’t), how to exalt others by making verbs honorific, and how to use two new particles: instrumental (으)로, and (이)랑 and.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Miss Lee, Christopher Murphy’s secretary, is chatting with Eunice while Eunice waits for Chris at the office.

미스 리  요즘 볼 하세요?
유니스  한국말을 공부해요.
미스 리  어디서 한국말을 배우세요?
유니스  고려대학교에서 배워요.
미스 리  그레요? 무슨 책으로 배우세요?
유니스  "한국어 회화"를 써요. 책이 팔라아요.
미스 리  일본말도 아세요?
유니스  아니요, 일본말은 못 해요. 너무 어려워요.
미스 리  그럼 다른 과목은 안 하세요?
유니스  아니요, 경제학이랑 정치학도 배워요.
미스 리  한국말 광부가 잘 되세요?
유니스  아니요. 아주 힘들어요. 아직 들었어요.

Lesson Eight / 119
Dialogue 2

Eunice and Miss Lee decide to go to the National Theatre together on Sunday. Miss Lee has Eunice dial the National Theatre to reserve seats.

유니스 여보세요?
고혈원 네, 국립극장입니다. 말씀하세요.
유니스 예약 좀 부탁합니다.
고혈원 네, 성합하고 신용카드 번호를 말씀해 주세요.
유니스 네? 다시 한번 말씀해 주세요! (passing the receiver to Miss Lee)
아이구, 미스 리, 너무 혼들어요. 못 알아 듣겠어요.
미스 리 그러세요? 그럼 제가 통화합계요.

Notes
...는 잘 되요?  Is... going well?
힘(이) 들어요.  It's tough. I'm having a difficult time. It requires [lots of] effort.
아직 밝혀어요.  [Literally: It is still distant, that is, has a long way to go.]

Notes
...(를) 부탁합니다.  (on the telephone) Please give me so-and-so, or I would like so-and-so.
말씀해 주세요.  Please say it for me. Please do me the favor of saying.
못 알아 들겠어요.  I can't catch what's being said. I can't make out what [you, they, etc.] are saying.
그러세요?  Really? (This is the honorific version of 그래요?)
통화합게요.  I'll get through/speak (on the telephone). Let me get through/speak.
Vocabulary

School and Education

과목
몇 과목을 들으세요? (들-, 들다)
수업
경제학
경제
 정치학
 정치
 한국학
... (을) 전공(을) 하-
 전공이 뭐예요?
교재
 대학

More New Verbs

사랑(을) 하-
애구(을) 하-
예약(을) 하-
통화(을) 하-
수영(을) 하-
청소(을) 하-
... (을) 좋아하-
كات

School subject
How many courses are you taking?
a class, lesson [at school]
economics
economy
politics [as a field of study], political science
politics
Korean studies
major in something
What's your major?
teaching materials; textbook
four-year college

love
play baseball
baseball
make a reservation
reservation
get through to/contact somebody by telephone, talk
by telephone
swim
swimming pool
clean up, tidy up
like it
be bad
be clean
neatly, cleanly
be similar; be the same (as something — 하고, (이)랑)
together
cut [hair], sharpen [pencil], mow [grass]
(Somebody) sharpens a pencil.

Lesson Eight / 121
머리를 깎아요
머리(볼) 자르-
어려움-
쉬운-
착하다-
밀(울) 둔 -(둔다)
밀을 잘 들어요.
약(울) 먹-
약-
쓴-
잡-
힘(이) 더하다-
힘-
오늘은 힘이 없어요.
험장-
폐요.
안 되요.
잘 되요.
잘 안 되요.
미요-
여기서 멀어요?
네, 한 시간 걸려요.
알아 들-
부탁(을) 하-
부탁-
PERSON 한테 부탁(을) 하-
PERSON 한테 부탁(이) 있-
부탁해요.
만호 셔한테 부탁 하나 있어요.

(Somebody) gets a haircut. (for males)
get a haircut (for females)
be difficult
be easy
be good by nature; be a good boy [girl, dog, etc.]
obey (listen to words)
Obeys well.
take (eat) medicine
medicine
use
be cheap, inexpensive
be difficult, taxing
strength, energy
I have no energy today.
be all right, OK
It's OK; It’ll do.
It's not OK; It won’t do; One mustn’t do it.
It's going well. It's turning out well.
It's not going well.
be distant, far
Is it far from here?
Yes, it takes an hour.
understand [spoken words], catch something said
[Literally: hearing after having understood]
make a request, ask a favor/errand
a request, favor
ask somebody for a favor
have a favor to ask of somebody
Please, I beg you. or I’m counting on you. Please
do it for me.
Manho, I have a favor to ask of you.

Some Honorific Bases
The following verbs have the honorific marker -(으)시- incorporated in their bases.
잡수시-
고기 더 잡수세요.
est (honorific)
Please eat some more meat. (to a guest, your
parents, etc.)

Lesson Eight / 122
고기 더 먹어요.
Please eat some more meat. (to a friend you usually call 씨)
주무시-
sleep (honorific)
안녕히 주무세요.
Good night (to somebody esteemed, e.g., your parents)
잘 자요.
Good night (to a friend you usually call 씨)
잘 자.
Good night (your parents to you; you to a close friend or younger sibling)
계시-
be, exist, stay (honorific)
교수님 계세요?
Is Professor at home?
만호 씨 있어요?
Is Manho at home?
드시-
eat, drink (honorific)
자, 많이 드세요.
Well then, bon appetit [eat up, please eat a lot]
(to a guest, your parents, etc.)
자, 많이 먹어요.
Well then, bon appetit (to a friend you usually call 씨)
자, 많이 먹어요.
Well then, bon appetit (your parents to you; you to a close friend or younger sibling)

주의:
Because these bases already have honorific -(으)시- in them, you cannot produce forms like *드시세요, *계시세요, or the like.

Frequency and Quantity
 좀
a little; please (to soften a request or command)
늘
always, all the time, continuously
항상
always, at all times, habitually
언제나
always
주로
mainly, for the most part
가끔
sometimes
자주
often
매일
every day
열심히
diligently, very hard
공부를 열심히 해요.
She studies hard/diligently.

Lesson Eight / 123
More Adverbs

아직

 먼저

 함께

 PERSON하고 함께

 참

 정말(로)

 정말이에요?

 정말로 키요.

 정열적(으로)

 천천히

 너무

 언제가

 (not) yet, still

 first (of all), before anything else

together

 (together) with a person

 truly, really

 the truth (truly, really)

 Really? Is it true?

 It is really/truly large.

 passionate(ly)

 slowly

 too much so, too; very [to an excessive degree]

 sometime or other; at one time; some time ago

Other Nouns

 버스, 페스

 런던

 전화

 전화(를) 하-

 뉴욕

 다른 NOUN

 교회

 교회에 나가세요?

 나가-

 성당

 신용카드

 성

 성씨

 이름

 성함

 성함이 어떻게 되세요?

 머리

 머리(가) 좋아요.

 머리(가) 나빠요.

 bus

 London

 telephone

 make a telephone call

 New York

 (an)other NOUN(s)

 church [Protestant]

 Do you go to church?

 attend, go to (church)

 church [Catholic]

 credit card

 surname, last name

 [your or his] esteemed surname/last name

 name, given name

 [someone’s esteemed] name (honorific equivalent of 이름)

 What is your name? (honorific and polite)

 head; hair

 She is smart.

 She is dumb.

 Lesson Eight / 124
Lesson Notes

8.1. Verbs: Short Negatives with 안 and 못

The rule for putting a verb into the short negative form is simple: place immediately before the verb one of the two negative words 안 and 못. However, DESCRIPTIVE verbs (translated is) cannot take the short negative with 못 in this way; instead you must use the long form that is optional for the other verbs. (The long negative form is discussed later, in Lesson Twelve).

안 is an abbreviation of 아니 no; the full form is used before the copula (아니에요 it isn’t..) It is a simple negative word meaning not. 못 basically means cannot, but can also be more
emphatic than 아니. Its meaning ranges from not possibly, cannot to emphatically (definitely, absolutely) not, not at all.

Pronunciation of 못

You will never hear the  canActivate in the word 못, because it never occurs in those environments where the  can be released—before a particle or the copula -이에요. When 못 precedes a verb beginning with  or  y, it is usual for the sequence to be pronounced as -nni- or -nny-. So when one wants to say 못 읽어요 can’t read; doesn’t read at all, the form is pronounced 못년저요, and when one wants to say 못 열어요 can’t open it, doesn’t open it at all, the form is pronounced 못년리요. One may occasionally hear versions of these sequences with the final  retained as unreleased 놓: 못 읽어요 as 못년저요, 못 열어요 as 못년리요.

Here are some examples of 암 and 못.

1. 우리 예기는 잘 안 자요.
   My baby doesn’t sleep well (or much).

2. 요즘은 잘 못 자요.
   Lately I can’t sleep well.

3. 나는 술을 못 마셔요.
   I can’t drink (alcohol). (Maybe I am allergic to alcohol.)

4. 나는 술을 안 마셔요.
   I don’t drink (alcohol). (as a matter of personal policy; it is my conscious decision)

5. A. 비싸요?
   Is it expensive?

   B. 아니요, 안 비싸요. 싸요.
   No, it’s not expensive. It’s cheap.

6. A. 빵 먹어요?
   Do you eat bread?

   B. 아니요, 안 먹어요.
   No, I don’t. (I just don’t like it.)

7. A. 빵 먹어요?
   Do you eat bread?

   B. 아니요, 못 먹어요.
   No, I can’t. (I’m allergic to wheat-based foods.)

Lesson Eight / 126
8. A. 학교에 가요?
   Are you going to school?

   B. 아니요, 안 가요.
   No, I'm not. (I've decided to skip class today.)

9. A. 학교에 가요?
   Are you going to school?

   B. 아니요, 못 가요.
   No, I can't. (I have a doctor's appointment.)

10. A. 야구 좋아해요?
    Do you like baseball?

    B. 아니요, 안 좋아해요. (not * 좋아 안 해요.)
    No, I don't.

11. A. 한국신문을 읽으세요?
    Do you read Korean newspapers?

    B. 아직 못 읽어요.
    I can't read [them] yet.

12. A. 수영을 해요?
    Do you swim?

    B. 아니요, 못해요.
    No, I can't swim.

13. 만호 씨는 오늘 와요.
    Manho doesn't come today.

14. 만호 씨는 오늘 못 와요.
    Manho can't come today.

15. 나는 한국신문을 못 읽어요.
    I can't read Korean newspapers.

16. 나는 한국신문을 안 읽어요.
    I don't read Korean newspapers. (I choose not to.)
8.2. Verbs: Honorifics

8.2.1. The Honorific Marker -(으)시-

When a Korean speaker uses a verb to describe the action of a person he especially esteems (or honors), he makes the verb form honorific. Esteemed (honored) people in Korea include parents and other older relatives; older people in general; high officials; people of education—teachers, doctors, other professional people.

The honorific marker is a two-shape ending attached in the shape -(으)시- to consonant bases, but -(으)시- to vowel bases. The HONORIFIC BASE of a verb is its base plus this honorific marker. In other words, by adding the honorific marker to a verb base, you are creating a new verb base ending in -(으)시-.

The honorific infinitive consists of the honorific marker -(으)시- plus the infinitive ending -(으)시-, with the expected abbreviation of -(으)시- to -(으)서-, except that is, when followed by -(으)서.

주의!

Honorific bases in -(으)시- behave just like the other bases you know that end in -(으)시-, with the following important exception: honorific present-tense polite forms end in -(으)서요, the ending introduced in this lesson. This is the usual pronunciation of what is sometimes written -(으)서요, the HONORIFIC INFINITIVE -(으)시+-(으)서요 plus the polite particle -(으)서요.

Observe the following forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Honorific Base</th>
<th>Honorific Infinitive</th>
<th>Honorific Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>가시-</td>
<td>가서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>오시-</td>
<td>오서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배우-</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>배우시-</td>
<td>배우서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉-</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>앉으시-</td>
<td>앉으서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡-</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>잡으시-</td>
<td>잡으서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽-</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>읽으시-</td>
<td>읽으서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빠르-</td>
<td>be fast</td>
<td>빠르시-</td>
<td>빠르서</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Eight / 128
The example of 노- 뽐- play shows that when you have an L-extending vowel base, you attach the honorific marker to the unextended base (in this case, 노-). Note also the treatment of 뽐- and 뽐- consonant bases (bases 들- and 더- above).

8.2.2. The Honorific Polite Style: 하세요

We have already mentioned above the sorts of people that might qualify as esteemed, and therefore be worthy of honorification. Often, when questions are asked, the esteemed person is the listener (you).

17. 한국말을 무엇으로 배우세요?
    What do you learn Korean from? [Literally: with]? (The new particle is explained later this lesson.)

In the following sentence, a parent is spoken of in honorific terms.

18. 아버님은 매일 약을 드세요.
    Father takes medicine every day.

Just as important as showing esteem for others is to avoid showing it for yourself.

NEVER use honorific verb forms to describe your own actions.

Lesson Eight / 129
Compare the question and the answer from the conversation of this lesson:

19. 미스 리 요즘 뭐 하세요?
   What are you doing lately?

20. 유니스 한국말을 공부해요.
   I'm studying Korean.

Ordinarily, a Polite Style verb in 형태 is made Honorable Polite by changing -어요 or -아요 to -으세요 when the verb base ends in a consonant, or just adding -세요 when the verb base ends in a vowel.

If the verb is an L-extending one, then the 는 is omitted, and the verb is treated as though it ended simply in a vowel (e.g., 사- 는 - lie, becomes 사세요):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>looks for</th>
<th>찾아요</th>
<th>Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>찾아서요</td>
<td>Honorific Polite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>meets</th>
<th>만나요</th>
<th>Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>만나서요</td>
<td>Honorific Polite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lives</th>
<th>살어요</th>
<th>Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>살서요</td>
<td>Honorific Polite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A few verbs come in pairs—a neutral and an honorific one; that is, the neutral verb and the honorific verb are completely different and unrelated forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>자요</th>
<th>sleeps</th>
<th>주무세요</th>
<th>[somebody esteemed] sleeps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Base: 주무시-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>있어요</th>
<th>stays</th>
<th>계세요</th>
<th>[somebody esteemed] stays</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Base: 계시-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>먹어요</th>
<th>eats</th>
<th>감수세요</th>
<th>[somebody esteemed] eats</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Base: 감수시-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ending -(으)세요 is sometimes written and sometimes pronounced -(으)서요, which is the contracted form of honorific -(으)시- plus -(으)요. However, it is considered more standard to use the forms in -(으)세요.

The ending -(으)세요 is the first two-shape verb ending you have seen. Here is a description of how it behaves with different verbs.

Lesson Eight / 130
Vowel-final bases attach to the vowel-less (i.e., ة-less) ending of two-shape endings:

가- 가세요?  Are you going?
보- 보세요!  Look at it!
파- 파세요!  Please sell it!

Consonant-final bases attach to the shape with initial ء-.

찾- 찾으세요?  Are you looking for it?
받- 받으세요!  Please take it!
입- 입으세요!  Put it on!
들- 들으세요?  Are you listening?
더- 더으세요?  Are you hot?

As the last example shows, the only tricky point to remember here concerns ء verbs, for which the following rule holds:

\[ \text{w-} + ء \rightarrow ء \]

In other words, the final ء of a ء verb base plus the initial ء of a two-shape verb ending combine to yield the vowel ء.

It is vital that you remember the following point: the honorific part of a verb has no connection whatever with the social style being used. All the verbs in this lesson are in the Polite Style; some of them are honorific, and some are not. Verb forms in any of the Korean social styles can either be made honorific or left as they are, without respect to the suffixes which show the social level on which the speakers are conversing. This means that the honorific marker can be put before the endings of any social style, not just the Polite Style, when the speaker uses the verb for the actions of an especially esteemed person.

On the next page is a list of some of the verbs you have learned, in the Polite (اخر) Style and the Honorific Polite (اخر) Style.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Polite</th>
<th>Honorific Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>does (IRREG.)</td>
<td>해요</td>
<td>하세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>closes it</td>
<td>닫아요</td>
<td>닫으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comes</td>
<td>와요</td>
<td>오세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drinks</td>
<td>마셔요</td>
<td>마시세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eats</td>
<td>먹어요</td>
<td>드세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finds; looks for</td>
<td>찾아요</td>
<td>찾으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gets up</td>
<td>일어나요</td>
<td>일어나세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gives</td>
<td>줍요</td>
<td>주세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes</td>
<td>가요</td>
<td>가세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>좋아요</td>
<td>좋으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has (got)</td>
<td>있어요</td>
<td>있으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has not (got)</td>
<td>없어요</td>
<td>없으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it is [copula]</td>
<td>-이예요</td>
<td>-이세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stays</td>
<td>있어요</td>
<td>계세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(there) is; is (there)</td>
<td>있어요</td>
<td>계세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(there) isn't; isn't (there)</td>
<td>없어요</td>
<td>안 계세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learns</td>
<td>배워요</td>
<td>배우세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is little (in size)</td>
<td>작아요</td>
<td>작으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are/has many</td>
<td>많아요</td>
<td>많으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sees, looks at, reads</td>
<td>보어요</td>
<td>보세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleeps</td>
<td>자요</td>
<td>주무세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smokes</td>
<td>피워요</td>
<td>피우세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teaches</td>
<td>가르쳐요</td>
<td>가르치세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waits for</td>
<td>기타리요</td>
<td>기타리세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writes</td>
<td>쓰요</td>
<td>쓰세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is bad</td>
<td>나빠요</td>
<td>나쁘세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is big</td>
<td>커요</td>
<td>크세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opens it</td>
<td>열어요</td>
<td>여세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lives</td>
<td>살아요</td>
<td>사세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plays</td>
<td>놀어요</td>
<td>노세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hears (ิน ~ 둘다)</td>
<td>들어요</td>
<td>들으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is hot (ิน ~ 움/痼다)</td>
<td>더워요</td>
<td>더우세요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.3. Verbal Nouns: Processive and Descriptive

The verb 해요, as you have observed in this lesson, is a versatile word. First of all, it means *does* or *performs an action*, as in the following sentence.

21. 요즘 무엇을 해요?
*What are you up to [doing] lately?*

Secondly, it means *says, speaks*.

22. 
A. 한국말 잘 하세요?
*Do you speak Korean well?*

B. 아직 잘 못 해요.
*I can't speak well yet.*

8.3.1. Separable Verbal Nouns (Processive)

There is a group of verbal nouns which form phrases with 해요. You have now learned at least five of these:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean (Past)</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>공부</td>
<td>study(ing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부(를) 해요</td>
<td>studies [Literally: performs studying]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>산보</td>
<td>a walk or stroll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>산보(를) 해요</td>
<td>takes [Literally: does a walk]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구경</td>
<td>(sight)seeing, viewing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구경(을) 해요</td>
<td>views, watches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일</td>
<td>work, job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일(을) 해요</td>
<td>works [Literally: performs work, does a job]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>청소</td>
<td>cleaning up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>청소(를) 해요</td>
<td>cleans up, tidies up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The verbal noun may be the direct object of the verb 해요. or it may precede it directly, with little difference in meaning.

- 구경해요.  
  watches, views  
- 구경(을) 해요.  
  does watching/viewing = watches, views

Even if the verbal noun itself is a direct object (i.e., has the particle 을~을 after it), there can be another direct object, as you have seen. Ordinarily, most Korean sentences have only one. When the verbal noun is not marked as the direct object of 해요 (e.g., 구경해요), the
whole expression as a unit may have a direct object. This means that any of the following combinations is possible.

**sees a movie**

영화를 (pause) 보 게요  
영화를 (pause) 구경해요  
영화를 (pause) 꾸며요  
영화 구경해요

does (pause) movie viewing  
watch (pause) a movie  
[no English equivalent]  
[no English equivalent]

**studies Korean**

한국말을 (pause) 공부해요  
한국말 공부하는 (pause) 해요  
한국말 공부할 (pause) 해요  
한국말 공부해요

studies (pause) Korean  
does (pause) Korean language studies  
[no English equivalent]  
[no English equivalent]

### 8.3.1.1 Using 안 and 못 with Separable Verbal Nouns (Processive)

As you have just learned, the negative words 안 and 못 are placed immediately before the verb they modify. The situation is no different for processive verbal noun plus 해요 structures. Since 하– is the verb, the negative word goes immediately before it.

**sees a movie**

영화를 (pause) 안 보 게요  
영화를 (pause) 안 구경해요  
영화를 (pause) 안 꾸며요

doesn’t do (pause) movie viewing  
doesn’t do (pause) movie viewing  
doesn’t watch (pause) a movie

**studies Korean**

한국말을 (pause) 안 공부해요  
한국말 공부하는 (pause) 안 해요  
한국말 공부할 (pause) 안 해요

doesn’t do (pause) Korean language studies  
doesn’t do (pause) Korean language studies  
doesn’t study (pause) Korean

Of the three possibilities illustrated here, the first and second (which is really the first with the object particle dropped) are most common. The third possibility does not sound elegant in Korean, but you will hear it from time to time. A fourth possibility is to place 안 in front of the verbal noun; you may hear this from time to time, especially from younger speakers, but this is not considered standard, good Korean.

*Lesson Eight / 134*
You will learn another way to negate verbs in Lesson Twelve.

8.3.2. Nonseparable Verbal Nouns (Descriptive)

There are also descriptive verbal nouns in which 해요 means is rather than does: 깨끗해요 is clean, neat, 안녕하세요 is at peace (well, equivalent to 잘 있어요), 미안해요 is uneasy; sorry.

Notice that descriptive verbs never take the direct object particle 을·를 because they cannot be separated from the verb 하-. So you can never have something like:

*미안을 해요.

In theory, then, if you wish to negate a nonseparable verbal noun plus 해요 structure, you should be able to put 안 before the entire composite verb (remember that you can't use 못 before descriptive verbs).

*안 미안해요 isn't sorry, doesn't feel sorry
*안 깨끗해요 isn't clean, isn't neat

Again, you may hear such forms spoken in Korean, but these forms are not considered elegant. You will have to wait until Lesson Twelve to learn another way to negate such structures.

8.4. More on Adverbs

Adverbs are words that modify verbs (fast in runs fast, 빨리 in 빨리 먹어요). Manner adverbs answer the question how? or in what manner? Time adverbs answer the question when? Place adverbs answer the question where? Degree adverbs are words like very, a little, etc. As you have seen, adverbs like these typically appear just before the verb they modify. They never serve as subjects or objects.

When different types of adverbs co-occur, they tend to follow the order: time, place, degree and manner.

*Lesson Eight/135
23. 만호 씨는 요즘 집에서 담배를 아주 많이 (안) 피워요.

*Lately Manho smokes a lot at home.*

Here are some useful adverbs in Korean.

**Manner Adverbs**
- 잘 (well; often, a lot)
- 함께 (together)
- 같이 (like, together)
- 계 같이 (neatly)
- 안녕히 (at peace, in good health)

- 혼자(서) (alone, by oneself)
- 많이 (lots)
- 빨리 (fast)
- 천천히 (slowly)
- 열심히 (diligently)

**Time Adverbs**
- 아직 (still, yet)
- 지금 (now)
- 늘 (always)
- 언제나 (always)
- 보통 (usually, normally)

- 일찍 (early)
- 먼저 (first of all)
- 항상 (always)
- 요즘 (nowadays, lately)
- 가끔 (sometimes)

**Place Adverbs**
- We have not learned any place adverbs yet.

**Degree Adverbs**
- 참 (very, truly)
- 주로 (mainly, for the most part)
- 아주 (very)

- 좀, 조금 (a little (bit))
- 너무 (too much so, very)

Notice that some of the adverbs listed above end in -이 or -히. It is not always predictable when you can create an adverb like this from a verb base, and you should not attempt to create such adverbs on your own.

Some of the adverbs overlap in meaning: 잘 and 많이 share the meaning many, much, a lot, but only 잘 means well and often (often is also expressed by the adverb 자주). The adverb 많이 and the descriptive verb 많아요 should not be confused with each other. The verb means there is much, there are many or (someone) has much/many; it is equivalent to 많이 있어요. The opposite of 많아요 is 적어요 there is little, there are few or (someone) has little/few.
24. 교환학생이 많아요. = 교환학생이 많이 있어요.
   There are a lot of exchange students.

25. 수진 씨는 많이 적어요. 그런데 동호 씨는 많이 많아요.
   Sujin doesn’t say much. But Tongho talks too much.

26. 교회에는 주로 일요일에 나가요.
   I go to church mostly on Sundays.

27. A. 한국 음식을 자주 드세요?
    Do you eat Korean food often?

B. 가끔 먹어요.
    Sometimes.

28. A. 아직도 수영을 매일 하세요?
    Do you still swim every day?

B. 아니요. 요즘 너무 바빠요.
    No. Lately I’m too busy.

A. 보통 혼자 하세요?
    Do you usually do it alone?

B. 아니요, 친구랑 같이 다녀요.
    No. I go with a friend.

8.5. More New Particles: Instrumental (으)로

When English uses with plus the name of an object, with is often meant in a special sense, namely by or by means of. For example, you could take the sentence I wrote this with a pencil. This with is put into Korean with the particle (으)로. You have also seen (으)로 with the names of languages, to mean in (by means of) that language—한국말로 in Korean, 영어로 in English. This is a two-shape particle which is pronounced 으로 after all consonants except 루, but 로 after 루 and vowels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>After most Consonants</th>
<th>After Vowels and 루</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>책으로</td>
<td>with a book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무엇으로</td>
<td>with what?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돈으로</td>
<td>with money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>성냥으로</td>
<td>with matches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>종이로</td>
<td>with paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기차로</td>
<td>by train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영어로</td>
<td>in English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연필로</td>
<td>with a pencil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The particle (으)로 has a variety of meanings which can be set out as follows (there are certain others in addition which you will learn later).

Lesson Eight / 137
8.6. More New Particles: (이) 랑 and

The dialogue of this lesson had the following sentence, which illustrates the use of the next particle.

35. 경제학이랑 정치학도 배워요.
    I'm learning Economics and Politics, too.

The two-shape particle (이) 랑 has the shape 이랑 after nouns ending in a consonant, and 랑 after nouns ending in a vowel. It has exactly the same function as 하고, i.e., to link two nouns with the meaning and. It is somewhat more colloquial than 하고. In Korean, it is also possible to repeat these particles after the last noun enumerated. Here are examples.

36. A. 런던이랑 뉴욕
B. 어제랑 오늘
C. 고기랑 밥이랑
D. 돈이랑 편지랑 비행기랑

London and New York
yesterday and today
meat and cooked rice
money, a letter, and an airplane
8.7. Particle Sequences

A topic in a Korean sentence, i.e., a phrase ending with the particle 은~는, is most often a noun or noun phrase. But it may also be another particle phrase, i.e., an expression of time, place, manner and so on, such as 아침에 in the morning, 학교에서 from (or at) school, 펜으로 with a pen, 연필로 with a pencil, etc. When such a phrase becomes a topic, the result is a sequence (or string) of particles, the last one being the topic particle 은~는.

37. 아침에는 커피를 마셔요.  
   (In the mornings, I drink coffee.)
   (compared to what I do the rest of the day)

38. 학교에서는 야구를 해요.  
   (At school, we play baseball.)
   (talking about what happens at school, we play baseball there)

39. 자전거로는 못 가요.  
   (You can’t go [there] by bike.)
   (talking about going by bike, you can’t go there that way)

40. A. 메일 어머니한테서는 편지를 받어요.  
     B. 어버지한테서는 안 받어요.  
     A. I get a letter every day from my mother.  
     B. Don’t you get one from your father?  
     (but not from other relatives, by contrast)

Particles that do not enter into sequences with 도 or with 은~는 are 이~가, the subject particle and 을~를, the direct-object particle.

41. A. 한국말을 가르쳐요?  
     (Do you teach Korean?)

     B. 아니요, 한국말은 김 선생님이 가르치세요.  
     (No, it’s Mr. Kim who teaches Korean.  
     (Do you teach Korean? No, if it’s Korean, Mr. Kim (is the one who) teaches it.)

42. A. 저녁에는 무엇을 해요?  
     (What do you do in the evenings?)

     B. 노래를 불리요.  
     (I sing songs.)

     A. 편지는 안 써요?  
     (How about letters: don’t you write (any)?)
Similarly, 도 appears instead of 이~가 or 은~를, not in combination with them.

43. A. 개가 있어요?
  Have you a dog?

B. 네, 있어요.
   Yes, I have.

A. 고양이도 있어요?
Have you a cat, too?

44. A. 야구를 좋아해요.
   I like baseball.

B. 수영도 좋아해요?
   Do you like swimming, too?

This means that some sentences with NOUN은~는 and NOUN도 are ambiguous, like sentences in which the subject particle 이~가 or direct object particle 은~를 is dropped. Ambiguity can usually be cleared up by marking either the subject or the object with what remains understood as the unmarked one, but it is not possible in Korean to specify the subject or object and at the same time mark it with 은~는 or 도.

Exercises

Exercise 1: Using 안 and 도

Here is a sentence with two blanks in it. Using one of the verb expressions from the list below, fill in the blanks. Use the same verb in both blanks.

선생님은 (____) 안 _____. 그리고 저도 (____) 안 _____.

1. waiting for a train 2. eating breakfast
3. giving books to the students 4. taking medicine
5. at home 6. open the door
7. living with (하고) his parents 8. taking a walk in the park
9. meeting a friend 10. teaching Russian
11. drinking alcohol 12. writing letters
13. watching television 14. cleaning the room
Exercise 2: Building Sentences from Phrases

Build a complete sentence around each of the following Korean expressions, translating the new sentences into English as you go.

| 1. 밥에            | 2. 부모님하고       |
| 3. 은행에서       | 4. 테이블 위에       |
| 5. 펜으로         | 6. 대학교에서       |
| 7. 문필로         | 8. 회사에           |
| 9. 공원에서       | 10. 비행기로         |
| 11. 장열적으로     | 12. 정치학이랑 러시아말 |
| 13. 개하고         | 14. 뉴욕 쪽으로       |
| 15. 다른 기차로     | 16. 무엇으로         |
| 17. 영어로         | 18. 진구하고         |
| 19. 오른 쪽으로     | 20. 오늘보고 내일   |
| 21. 그림 밑에       | 22. 항상            |

Exercise 3: Practice with 안, 못 and -(으)시-

Convert the following questions to honorific forms, then answer each one negatively in turn (with a full sentence: No, I don't ______.) Then say what you do do instead.

| 1. 빙 먹어요? | 2. 술 마셔요? |
| 3. 학교에 가요? | 4. 야구 좋아해요? |
| 5. 자요? | 6. 런던에서 살아요? |
| 7. 텔레비전을 볼어요? | 8. 연필로 펜지를 쓰요? |
| 9. 노래를 잘 불러요? | 10. 교회에 나가요? |
Exercise 4: Honorifics in Questions and Answers

For the following sets of information you are required to ask two questions and to give two replies (either positive or negative). Make sure you give full sentences each time. The questions should use the honorific verb forms, the answers should not. For the first set of information, then, you make up Korean sentences corresponding to: Do you eat rice? Yes, I do eat rice. Do you drink water? No, I don’t drink water.

1. 덥심 내 물 아니오
2. 고기 내 술 아니오
3. 닭배 내 슈스 아니오
4. 친구 내 편지 아니오
5. 평 내 우유 아니오
6. 한국말 내 일본말 아니오
7. 신문 내 잡지 아니오

Exercise 5: Honorific Questions

Each of the following sentences means I do something. Change the topic and the verb form so that the meaning is do you, sir, do something? Write out the changed sentence and then translate it. Make sure that you practice each one out loud as well. For example, if you are given 나는 학교에 가요 your answer should be 선생님은 학교에 가세요? Are you going to school?

1. 나는 은행에서 일해요.
2. 나는 책을 잘 사요.
3. 나는 한국에서 영어를 가르쳐요.
4. 나는 아침에는 평이랑 우유를 먹어요.
5. 나는 교회에 나가요.
6. 나는 미국 사람이에요.
7. 나는 수영을 안 좋아해요.
8. 나는 오늘 저녁에 바빠요.
9. 나는 중국말이 형들어요.
10. 나는 술을 잘 해요.
11. 나는 많이 못 먹어요.
12. 나는 친구를 기다려요.
13. 나는 담배를 안 피워요.
14. 나는 일찍 자요.

Lesson Eight / 142
Exercise 6: English to Korean Translation

Translate the following sentences into Korean. Where appropriate, put the verb into the honorific form. [Note: it will not always be appropriate.]

1. Are you going to bed now? No, I'm getting up.
2. At the weekends I sometimes take medicine.
3. Mr. Murphy often goes swimming with his wife.
4. Do you smoke? No, I don't.
5. I receive money from my mother. And then I see a movie with my friends.
6. My father studies economics. He studies politics, too.
7. On that student's desk there is a notebook. And he always cleans his room real clean.
8. What subjects are you learning? What's your major?
10. You can't go there by airplane. I know!
11. Come quickly!
12. Please head to the right at that church.
13. I don't have a lot of time.
14. What foreign languages do you know, Mr. Ch'oe [최]? Do you speak English? We learn English from [with] this textbook.
Exercise 7: Korean to English Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 의사 선생님은 테레비 안 보세요. 애기들도 안 봐요.
2. 우리집 캣는 공원에서 안 놀아요. 늘 집에 있어요. 잠자혀요.
3. A. 고양이 있으세요? 커요?
   B. 줄 작아요.
   A. 다른 고양이들이랑 같이 자주 놀아요?
   B. 네, 그런데 고기를 많이 먹어요. 그리고 우유도 많이 마셔요.
4. 보통 버스로 다녀요. 빨리는 못 가요.
5. 호텔은 미국 대사관 바로 맞은 편에 있어요. 우리 집 바로 옆에 있어요.
6. 우리 남편은 편지를 잘 안 씁니다.
7. 여자친구는 집에서 될 해요?
8. 오 선생님은 서울에 기차로 가세요. 저녁에는 항상 친구 집에 가요.
9. 저희 아버님은 매일 어머님보다 같이 산책하세요.
10. 요즘 우리 집에서는 호주 교환학생 한 명이 살아요. 늘 공부해요.
11. 경희 씨는 언제나 일찍 일어나요. 그리고 늦게 자요.
12. 내 방은 보통 깨끗해요. 거기에 가끔은 공부해요. 그렇지가만 도서관이 나오아요.
13. 박 교수님 사모님하고 배 선생님 부인은 매일 점심을 함께 드세요.
14. 야구는 혼자서 못 해요. 먼저 친구들을 기다려요. 이 근처에서들 살아요.
주말 재미 있게 보냈어요?

In this lesson you will learn how to exchange pleasantries and strike up a relationship with a stranger. You will also learn how to talk about something you did in the past (over the weekend). In addition, you will learn two different ways to say like, how to express wishes want to, a new particle for and, and the purposive ending - (을)려.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

While waiting at Kimp'o Airport on Sunday to meet a colleague flying in from Britain, Chris Murphy is approached by a Korean businessman waiting in the same area. The businessman obviously thinks Chris has just flown in and wants to practice his English.

아저씨  어허 - 하우 두 유 두?
머피  네? 아, 예. 안녕하세요?
아저씨  아이구! 한국말을 하시는군요. 한국에 처음 오셨어요?
머피  네, 그런데 사실은, 작년에 왔어요. 서울에서 살아요.
아저씨  그러세요? 무슨 일로 오셨어요?
머피  사업 때문에 왔어요. 영국회사에서 일해요.
아저씨  그럼에 얼마 동안 계세요?
머피  글쎄요. 아직 모르겠어요.
아저씨  미국본이세요?
머피  아니데요. 영국 사람이에요.
아저씨
아, 그리세요? 최송합니다. 저도 방금 린언에서 도착했어요.

머피
아, 예. 여기서 뭐 하셨어요?

아저씨
저도 사업 때문에 다녀왔어요. 무역 회사에서 일해요. 여기 제 명함 받으세요. 언제 한번 연락하세요.

They exchange namecards and go their separate ways.

Notes

네?
Excuse me? or I beg your pardon? [Literally: Yes? This is how you ask for a repeat in Korean.]

한국말 하시는군요
Oh, I see you speak Korean! Forms in -는군요 indicate a sudden, first realization. You will learn more about them in a later lesson.

그러세요?
Really? or Is that so? This is the polite honorific version of 그래요?

무슨 일로
on what sort of business? [Literally: on account of by way of what matter?
The whole sentence amounts to: What brings you to Seoul?]

 얼마나 동안?
[for] how long? (pronounced: 얼마나동안)

언제 한번
Some time or other. [Literally: some time 언제 one time 한번.]

Dialogue 2

Chris Murphy is talking to his secretary, Miss Lee, at the office.

머피
미스 리, 주말 재미있게 보냈어요?

미스 리
네, 어제 사모님하고 극장에 갔었어요.

머피
이야기 들었어요. 극장에 사람들이 많았어요?

미스 리
네, 굉장히요. 남대문시장처럼 사람들이 많았어요.

머피
무슨 영화를 봤어요?

미스 리
한국 영화였어요.

머피
나도 한국영화를 한번 보고 싶어요. 영화 팬창았어요?

미스 리
별로 재미 없었어요. 그래서 중간에 나왔어요. 그리고 나서 사모님과 같이 차 마시리 다방에 갔어요.

Lesson Nine / 146
Notes
이야기 들었어요. I heard [all] about it. [Literally: I heard the story.]
한국 영화였어요. It was a Korean film. The past tense of the copula -었어요 can abbreviate to -어요 after a noun ending in a vowel.
별로 NEGATIVE not particularly, doesn't particularly
한번 one time, once
그리고 나서 after that, having done that

Vocabulary

Places
술집 (-집) bar, tavern, drinking establishment
여관 small hotel; inn
우체국 post office
사무실 office
댁 house (honorific)
댁 어디에요? Where do you live? (not *댁 어디에 있어요?)
정원 garden
다방 tearoom, tabang

People
사모 (남) prominent man/superior’s wife (elegant/honorific)
[Literally: teacher’s wife]
목사 (남) reverend, minister
신부 (남) (Catholic) priest
동생 younger brother or sister
여자동생 younger sister
남자동생 younger brother
영화배우 movie actor
배우 actor or actress
여자배우 actress
남자배우 actor
딸 daughter
아들 son
가족 family
Things You Wear and How To Wear Them

신발  shoes, footwear in general
구두  (dress) shoes
여자구두  women’s shoes
구두 한 쌍  a pair of shoes
운동화  sneakers, tennis shoes
부츠  boots
양말  socks
반지 (finger) ring
장갑  gloves
모자  hat
안경  glasses
스카프  scarf
시계 (錶) 차  wear a watch; put on a watch
넥타이 (領) 베  wear a tie; put on a tie

Nouns you can use with 입 - wear
옷  clothes
자켓  jacket
양복  suit
셔츠, 왜이사쓰  shirt, dress shirt
바지  trousers
청바지  jeans
코트  coat
치마  skirt
스웨터  sweater, jumper

Examples of 신- wear (footwear)
구두를 신어요.  wears shoes, puts on shoes
신발을 신어요.  wears shoes, puts on shoes
양말을 신어요.  wears socks, puts on socks

Examples of 갈- wear (gloves, ring)
반지 꼭게요.  wears a finger ring, puts on a ring
장갑 꼭게요.  wears gloves, puts on gloves

Examples of 쓰- wear (hat, glasses)
모자를 써요.  wears a hat
안경을 써요.  wears glasses
스카프를 써요.  wears a scarf

Lesson Nine / 148
Other New Nouns and Related Expressions

차
뉴스
자동차, 차
연구
 연구(를) 하-
연구실
중간
 중간에
사업
무역
무역회사
새 NOUN
 새 양복 하나 샀어요.
값
 값이 얼마예요?
명함
위층
아래층
이
NOUN 때문에
 사업때문에 왔어요.
 얘기때문에 못 갔어요.
TIME PERIOD 동안(에)
 얼마동안? [동안]
한 시간 동안

Some Adverbial Expressions

더
 조금 더 주세요.
한번 더 하세요.
또
 사실
 사실은
 실은
 쉽게
 아주
 어제는 아주 더웠어요.

tea
the news (on radio, TV)
car, automobile
research
does research
(professor's) office
middle, midway
midway, in the middle
business
trade
trading company
new NOUN
I've bought a new suit.
price
How much is it [the price]?
namcard, business card
upstairs; the floor above
downstairs; the floor below
tooth, teeth
because of NOUN; on account of NOUN
I'm here [I've come] on business.
I couldn't sleep because of the baby.
for TIME PERIOD, during TIME PERIOD
for how long? for what duration?
for an hour

more
Please give me a little bit more.
Please do it one more time.
Moreover, What's more; (yet) again
fact; in fact
In fact; Actually
In fact; Actually
easily
very
Yesterday was very hot.
방금
별로 + NEGATIVE
작년
작년에는
글쎄요.

just a moment ago, just now
[not] particularly
last year
last year
I don't really know. Let me think.

More New Verbal Expressions
구- 
고기를 구워요.
제미없- 
제미있-
제미있게
영화를 제미있게 보셨어요?
아니오, 제미없게 봤어요.
울라가-
울라오-
오르-

 roast it, broil it
He cooks meat.
not interesting, boring; not fun
interesting; fun
interestingly; in a fun way
in such a way that it was interesting
Did you enjoy [watching] the movie?
No, I didn't find it very interesting.
go up
come up
ascend, go up
The price has gone up a lot.
go down
come down
descend; get off/out (bus, taxi)
The price has come down a lot.
Get off at Seoul Station.
come out
go out
be quite something, be impressive
arrive
get in touch, make contact
talk, chat
story
go (and come back)
Where have you been?
polish; brush (teeth)
He brushes his teeth.
be enjoyable, pleasant, fun
in an enjoyable way, enjoyably
Did you have a good ['enjoyable'] weekend?

Lesson Nine / 150
Lesson Notes

9.1. Verbs: Past Tense

9.1.1. Past Tense, Polite Style

As you know, Korean verb forms are made up of bases with endings on them. The present-tense forms you have learned are all in the Polite Style 해요 and have the particle 요 at the end to mark that style. As you learned in Lesson Seven, when you remove this 요, the part that remains is what we call the infinitive 해. The Korean infinitive is what the past tense is based on. The PAST BASE is made by adding -했- to the plain infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past base</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하-</td>
<td>해</td>
<td>했-</td>
<td>did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앗-</td>
<td>앗아</td>
<td>앗았-</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>자</td>
<td>잡-</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>써</td>
<td>썼-</td>
<td>wrote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빼르-</td>
<td>빼르라</td>
<td>빼르랬-</td>
<td>was fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>노-예-</td>
<td>노아</td>
<td>노았-</td>
<td>played</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들- (ㅅ ~ 음: 듣다)</td>
<td>들어</td>
<td>들었-</td>
<td>listened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더 w- (ㅂ ~ w: 들다)</td>
<td>더워</td>
<td>더웠-</td>
<td>was hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구 w- (ㅂ ~ w: 긁다)</td>
<td>구워</td>
<td>구웠-</td>
<td>broiled it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

withdraw money (from/out of the bank)  
want to; it is desired (see Grammar Note 9.6)  
make a phone call  
answer the phone  
spend (time); send  
Did you have a fun weekend?  
mail it, post it  
turn out a certain way  
Is handsome/good-looking. [usually said of males]  
Is ugly. [said of both males and females]
To the past base formed in this way you add the infinitive vowel 어 to give the past infinitive. Then you need to add a verb ending. If you are speaking in the Polite Style, which we have been learning up to now, you add the polite particle 요 in the normal way: 앉았어요 sat, 잔어요 went to bed, slept, 주었어요 gave, 왔어요 came, 썼어요 wrote, 빨았어요 was fast, 놀았어요 played. Here are some more examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Polite Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하-</td>
<td>do (irregular)</td>
<td>했어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>만나-</td>
<td>meet (somebody)</td>
<td>만났어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가르치-</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>가르쳤어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계시-</td>
<td>be; exist (honorific)</td>
<td>계셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>왔어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배우-</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>배웠어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉬-</td>
<td>rest</td>
<td>쉬었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>매-</td>
<td>ties it (pronounced 맘이요)</td>
<td>매었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>노-리-</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>놀았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주-</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>썼어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서-</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>썼어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>썼어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나쁘-</td>
<td>be bad</td>
<td>나빴어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모르-</td>
<td>not to know</td>
<td>몰랐어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부르-</td>
<td>call; sing (a song)</td>
<td>불렀어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있-</td>
<td>be; have; stay</td>
<td>있었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없-</td>
<td>not exist</td>
<td>없었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽-</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>읽었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>좋았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>먹었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닫-</td>
<td>close it</td>
<td>닫았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들- (t-t: 들다)</td>
<td>listen to; take a class</td>
<td>들었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물- (t-t: 물다)</td>
<td>ask</td>
<td>물었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더w- (p-w: 덤다)</td>
<td>is hot</td>
<td>더웠어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구w- (p-w: 굽다)</td>
<td>broils it</td>
<td>구웠어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-이-</td>
<td>it is (copula)</td>
<td>-이었어요/-였어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Nine / 152
9.1.2. Past and Past-Past

The past tense is usually translated by the English *did (was)* or *had done (had been)*, but for verbs of going and coming a result is implied: *갔어요* means *he went* (and is still gone); *he's gone/left* and *왔어요* means *he came* (and is still here); *he's here*. To say *he went* (but is back now) and *he came* (but left again so he isn't here any more), there is a special PAST-PAST form, like the one you saw in dialogue two of this lesson.

미스 리 네, 어제 사모님하고 극장에 갔어요.
Yes, yesterday I went to the cinema with your wife (and now I'm back).

You will learn more about Past-Past forms in a later lesson.

Notice that there are two ways to look at English expressions such as *he's here/there*.

a. simple location 여기/기기에 있어요.
b. the result of movement from another place 왔어요/갔어요.

When you can paraphrase *he's here* by *he's arrived, here he comes/here he is*, the second rendering is appropriate.

9.1.3. Past Tense, Honorific Polite Style

To make honorific forms past tense, you add the past-tense marker -😩- to the honorific infinitive and complete the form by adding a Polite Style ending.
Honorific Forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Honorific Base</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Base</th>
<th>Past Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>가시-</td>
<td>가서</td>
<td>가셨-</td>
<td>가셨어요</td>
<td>가셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>오시-</td>
<td>오서</td>
<td>오셨-</td>
<td>오셨어요</td>
<td>오셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없-</td>
<td>없으시-</td>
<td>없으서</td>
<td>없으셨-</td>
<td>없으셨어요</td>
<td>없으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>임-</td>
<td>임으시-</td>
<td>임으서</td>
<td>임으셨-</td>
<td>임으셨어요</td>
<td>임으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들-</td>
<td>들으시-</td>
<td>들으서</td>
<td>들으셨-</td>
<td>들으셨어요</td>
<td>들으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구-</td>
<td>구우시-</td>
<td>구우서</td>
<td>구우셨-</td>
<td>구우셨어요</td>
<td>구우셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>노-</td>
<td>노시-</td>
<td>노서</td>
<td>노셨-</td>
<td>노셨어요</td>
<td>노셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나(서)</td>
<td>나으시-</td>
<td>나으서</td>
<td>나으셨-</td>
<td>나으셨어요</td>
<td>나으셨어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are some of the verbs you have learned so far, in the polite past and the honorific polite past.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Polite Past</th>
<th>Honorific Polite Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하-</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>했어요</td>
<td>하셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계시-</td>
<td>exist; stay</td>
<td>[see 잇- , 잇- ]</td>
<td>계셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기타리-</td>
<td>wait for</td>
<td>기타렸어요</td>
<td>기타리셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-이-</td>
<td>it is</td>
<td>-이었어요</td>
<td>-이셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주-</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>쳤어요</td>
<td>주셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>갔어요</td>
<td>가셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>크-</td>
<td>be big</td>
<td>쳤어요</td>
<td>크셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>왔어요</td>
<td>옹셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배우-</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>배웠어요</td>
<td>배우셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보-</td>
<td>look at, see; read</td>
<td>보았어요</td>
<td>보셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사-</td>
<td>buy</td>
<td>샀어요</td>
<td>사셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죽-</td>
<td>rest</td>
<td>죽었어요</td>
<td>죽셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>노-</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>놀았어요</td>
<td>노셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사-</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>살았어요</td>
<td>사셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있-</td>
<td>be, exist; have; stay</td>
<td>있었어요</td>
<td>있었셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없-</td>
<td>not exist</td>
<td>없었어요</td>
<td>없으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base</td>
<td>Gloss</td>
<td>Polite Past</td>
<td>Honorific Polite Past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>좋았어요</td>
<td>좋으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>먹었어요</td>
<td>[잡으셨어요]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닫-</td>
<td>close it</td>
<td>닫았어요</td>
<td>닫으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들-</td>
<td>listen to; hear</td>
<td>들었어요</td>
<td>들으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구- w-</td>
<td>broil</td>
<td>구웠어요</td>
<td>구우셨어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.2. The Particle 과 ~ 와  

*and*

The two-shape particle 과 ~ 와 means *with or and*, just like the more colloquial particles 하 고 and (이) 란. 과 ~ 와 is a two-shape particle that is pronounced 과 after consonants and 와 after vowels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consonants</th>
<th>Vowels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>양말과</td>
<td>and socks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그 여관과</td>
<td>and that inn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>우체국과</td>
<td>and the post offic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신화와</td>
<td>전화와 and the telephone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내 코트와</td>
<td>내 코트와 and my overcoat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>청바지와</td>
<td>청바지와 and the jeans</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Like other particles, 과 ~ 와 is pronounced as though it were part of the word before it. This means that if you are going to pause between nouns linked by 과 ~ 와, you pause after the word for *and*, instead of before it as in English.

```
총이와(pause) 책과(pause) 연필
```

*paper (pause) and books (pause) and a pencil*

Once two or more nouns have been linked with this particle, the group as a whole is followed by whatever particle is necessary to show its relation to the rest of the sentence. For example:

```
연필과 종이는 pencil and paper (as topic)
아버지과 어머님이 father and mother (as subject)
상점과 여관을 the store and the inn (as object)
```

Sometimes 과 ~ 와 is added after the last noun before putting on the relational particle: 연필과 종이와는.
9.3. Ways To Say \textit{(together) with}

The adverb 함께 means \textit{together}, and, like \textit{같이}, it can follow noun plus 과~와, noun plus (이)랑, or noun plus 하고 to mean \textit{together with} [so-and-so] or simply \textit{with} [so-and-so]. The noun in these expressions usually denotes a person or other living being. The word 함께 is used in exactly the same way as \textit{같이}. [Also see Section 6.4.]

어버님과 같이
어버님하고 같이
어버님랑 같이
어버님과 함께
어버님하고 함께
어버님랑 함께

친구와 같이
친구하고 같이
친구랑 같이
친구와 함께
친구하고 함께
친구랑 함께

같이 갔어요
함께 갔어요

(\textit{together} with Father)
(\textit{together} with my friend)

9.4. Ways To Say like

9.4.1. The Particle \textit{처럼}

The particle \textit{처럼} means \textit{like} as in \textit{does something like NOUN}. Here are some examples.

1. 나처럼 정치학을 전공했어요.
   \textit{He majored in political science like me.}

2. 진호 씨는 어머니처럼 착해요.
   \textit{Chinho is good-hearted like his mother.}

3. 그 여자는 영화배우처럼 예뻐요.
   \textit{That woman is pretty, like a movie actor.}

\textit{Lesson Nine / 156}
4. 우리 선부님은 가수처럼 노래를 잘 부르세요.
   Our priest sings well, like a pop singer.

5. 저 외교관은 영국사람처럼 말하세요.
   That diplomat speaks like an Englishman.

The word 같이, in addition to meaning together, also means like.

나같이   same as   나처럼
선생같이 same as   선생처럼

9.4.2. The Verb 갈아요

In order to express be like NOUN, you have to use a different pattern: NOUN 갈아요. This is illustrated below:

6. A. 그게 뭐예요?
   What's that?

   B. 악 갈아요.
   It looks like medicine, or It seems to be medicine.

7. 우리 한국말 선생님은 영화배우 같으세요.
   Our Korean teacher is like a movie actor.

8. A. 저 사람은 누구예요?
   Who's that?

   B. 진영 씨 친구 같어요.
   It looks like Chinyong's friend, or It seems to be Chinyong's friend.

9.5. The Purposive Form - (으)러

The PURPOSEIVE form -(으)러 is used to express going or coming for the purpose of... This pattern is typically used with verbs of motion like 가- and 오-. The ending is attached straight on to the base of the verb. L-extending verbs attach the -(으)러 ending to the extended base; for example, 역-르- open becomes 열러.

9. 편지를 쓰러 위층으로 올라갔어요.
   He's gone upstairs to write a letter.

Lesson Nine / 157
10. 친구를 만나러 역으로 나갔어요.  
He's gone out to the station to meet a friend.

11. 점심을 먹으러 식당에 가요.  
I'm going to the cafeteria to eat lunch.

12. 술을 마시러 우리 집에 왔어요.  
They came to our place to drink (booze).

13. 놀러 오세요.  
Come over sometime (to play, have fun, relax).

주의!

Purposive forms are made only with PROCESSIVE verb bases; there is no -(으)려 form for descriptive verbs, nor for the copula.

9.6. Expressing Wishes with -고 싶어요

This pattern allows you to express that you wish to do or would like to do something (the action specified by -고). The pattern consists of a processive base plus the one-shape ending -고, followed by the descriptive auxiliary verb 싶어요 (base 싶-). Descriptive verbs cannot appear in this pattern.

The pattern in -고 싶어요 can be used in two meanings: (1) I (or we) want or would like and, (2) Do you want or Would you like? In other words, it is used for first-person statements and second-person questions. To make questions or statements about third persons (he, she, it, they), you use -고 싶어해야요 (base 싶어하다-), instead of -고 싶어요.

Note that the base of the auxiliary verb (싶- or 싶어하다-) does all the work with past tense and honorifics: 전화를 걸고 싶어요. wanted to make a phone call, and 세 양복을 입고 싶어요? Do you want to wear your new suit? Here are some more examples.

14. 새 구두를 신고 싶어요.  
I want to wear my new shoes.

15. 새 장갑을 쓰고 싶었어요.  
I wanted to wear my new gloves.

Lesson Nine / 158
16. 공부를 잘하고 싶어요?
   Do you want to study well (Do you want to do well in school?)

17. 이 책을 읽고 싶으세요?
   Would you like to read this book?

18. 새 집에서 살고 싶어요.
   I want to live in a new house.

19. 주말을 재미 있게 보내고 싶어요.
   I wanted to have fun over the weekend (I wanted to spend the weekend enjoyably).

20. 뉴스를 들고 싶어요.
   I want to listen to the news.

The 고- form is a one-shape ending: it is always -고, regardless of the kind of base it is attached to. I-extending vowel bases attach the 고- form (and all other one-shape endings that begin with 스, 떼, or 헤) to the extended shape (with the 르): 여르-르- open has the 고- form 열고. In contrast, the consonant bases that end in -르 (즉 ~ 르 verbs) change this to 르 and this is shown in the spelling as well as in the pronunciation, so the 고- form of 들- listens is 들고, pronounced (by automatic change) 들고. Consonant bases that end in -w (즉 ~ w verbs) change the -w to 르, so the 고- form of 구w- broils it is 꾸고, pronounced (by automatic change) 꾸고.

Statements in 고 싶어요 are ordinarily used only of one's own desires; to state other people's wishes, you use the expression 고 싶어요. But you can use the simpler form for you when asking a question:

21. 나는 가고 싶어요.
   I want to go.

22. 천수 씨, 같이 가고 싶어요?
   Ch'ilsu, do you want to go (with us)?

23. 천수 씨는 가고 싶어요.
   Ch'ilsu wants to go.

The particle that follows the object of a transitive verb with 고 싶어요 is usually marked as 였~을, but this can sometimes be changed to the particle 이~가, since 싶어요 is an auxiliary descriptive verb meaning it is desired. In this case, marking the object with 이~가 shows that you have a particularly strong feeling or affection for the object.

24. 나는 점심을 먹고 싶어요.
   I want to eat lunch.
25. 나는 아이스크림이 먹고 싶어요.
   *I want to eat ice-cream.*

Verbal nouns which act as the object of 하- do not normally take 이~가 here.

*공부가 잘 하고 싶어요.*
*I want to study well.*

Note that the pattern in -고 싶어요 (해) 요 is incompatible with the copula. For I want to be a doctor or the like, you have to use the verb 되- become (the thing you become takes the subject marker 이~가. This is a fact about the verb 되-, not a feature of the pattern -고 싶어요 (해) 요).

26. 나는 교수가 되고 싶어요.
   *I want to be a professor (when I grow up).*

Here are some more examples of this construction.

27. 영화를 보러 갈이 나가고 싶어요.
   *Would you like to go out with me to see a movie?*

28. 어머니가 보고 싶어요.
   *I want to see my mother.*

29. 물을 마시고 싶어요.
   *I want to drink (some) water.*

30. 여관에 있고 싶어요.
   *I want to stay in a Korean inn.*

31. 어제도 쉬고 싶었어요.
   *I wanted to rest yesterday too.*

32. 일본말도 배우고 싶어요.
   *I want to learn Japanese too.*

33. 김 선생님은 미국에 가고 싶어요요?
   *Does Mr. Kim want to go to the US?*

34. 김 선생님도 미국에 가고 싶으세요?
   *Mr. Kim, do you want to go to the US too?*

35. 친구 만나러 같이 가고 싶어요?
   *Do you want to go with me to meet my friend?*
Finally, notice that it is best to avoid negating this pattern in -고 싶어요 with 안 (negating it with 못 is out of the question, as 싶- is a descriptive verb). The negation pattern with 안 preceding the verb sounds best when 안 is followed by a short and succinct verb, but sounds progressively worse as the verb or verb expression being negated gets longer. You will learn another way to negate verbs by placing a negative element after the base in Lesson Twelve.

Exercises

Exercise 1: Past Tense

Each of the following sentences means someone does something. Change the verb form so that the meaning is someone did something. Write each one out and translate.

1. 친구를 만나세요?
2. 무슨 영화를 보요?
3. 어머니는 친구들한테 편지를 많이 쓰세요.
4. 개가 문을 열어요.
5. 아버지는 많이 적으세요.
6. 그러면 친구가 많으세요.
7. 설혼, 고기를 많이 먹어요.
8. 사모님도 그 책을 읽으세요?
9. 그 영화가 좋아요?
10. 사장님이 나한테 돈을 많이 주세요.
11. 나는 공원에서 아이와 같이 놀어요.
12. 사모님은 언제 도착하세요?
13. 나는 우체국에서 와요.
14. 누가 우리를 왜요?
15. 동생은 언제 호주로 떠나요?
16. 그 개는 잡여요.
17. 나는 런던 대학(학)생이에요.
18. 박 교수님이 런던에서 사세요.
19. 내 장갑이 여기 있어요.
20. 김선생 집에 잘 들어요.
21. 무슨 연구를 하세요?
22. 정원이 예뻐요.
Exercise 2: Using -고 싶어(해)요

Each of the following sentences mean *someone does or did something*. Change the verb expression in each so that the meaning is *someone wants or wanted to do something* using the -고 싶어(해)요 pattern.

1. 나는 새 자동차를 사요.
2. 나는 다른 넥타이를 메요.
3. 서울에 같이 올라가세요?
4. 택시를 불리요?
5. 선생님은 학교에 전화를 거세요.
6. 만호 씨는 지난 주일에 부산에 내려갔어요.
7. 나는 한국사람한테 편지를 써어요.
8. 나는 중국말도 배워요.
9. 수진 씨는 예기와 같이 돌아요.
10. 동호 씨는 친구들을 잡어요.
11. 옆집 아들은 영화배우가 됐어요.
12. 나는 명함 하나를 받았어요.
13. 예기는 신발은 안 빛었어요.

Exercise 3: English to Korean Translation

Translate the following sentences into Korean. Remember that the important thing is to get the idea across, not to translate literally.

1. Where did you go yesterday? I went to the market.
2. What did you do last night? I slept.
3. Did you come home late last night? No. I came home early.
4. What did you buy at the department store yesterday? I bought trousers and an overcoat.
5. What did you do with your brother? I played in the park.
7. Were there many people on the bus?
8. Did you find the post office easily?
10. Yesterday I didn’t polish my shoes. And I didn’t brush my teeth, either.
Exercise 4: Purposives

Translate the following sentences into Korean. Remember that the important thing is to get the idea across, not to translate literally.

1. He went out to make a phone call.
2. My daughter went to Korea to research the Korean language.
3. Mother went to the market on Tuesday to buy new shoes.
4. My younger brother went to the store on Friday to buy gloves.
5. I went to the bathroom to brush my teeth.
6. The student came out to open the door.
7. Father went to the bank on Monday to get money [use 갔다 오다].
8. Father went to meet a friend.
9. My friend has gone to Korea to teach English.
10. Last night I went out to drink.

Exercise 5: Do/Be Like

Translate the following sentences into Korean. Remember to distinguish between 처럼 / 같다 and 같다요.

1. That movie actor speaks English like an English person.
2. He sings well, like a singer.
3. Here there are always lots of people, like a market.
4. A. Who is that person over there?
   B. Gee, I'm, not really sure. It looks like Manho.
5. Are you busy tomorrow too, like today?
6. I want to study well like my friend.
7. She sometimes dresses like a movie actress.
8. My friends and I are like a family.
9. Their garden is really big. It's like a park!
10. Today is good. It's like the weekend.
11. In the evenings this room is like a bar.
12. I bought these shoes last year. But they look like new ones.
13. This hat is the same as (is like) that one.

Lesson Nine / 163
Exercise 6: Fill in and Translate

Copy the following passage and insert the correct particles in the blanks. If there is more than one possibility, then give alternatives too.

원요일에는 수미 씨가 나 ___ 편지를 썼어요.
그래서 나는 원요일에 수미 씨 ___ 전화를 걸었어요.
그리고 여제 만났어요.
수미는 제호 ___ 같이 왔어요.
우리는 공원 ___ 같이 산책했어요.
제호 씨 ___ 시간이 별로 없었어요. 그래서 빨리 갈아요.
나는 수미 ___ 같이 극장에 갔어요.
영화 ___ 잔 재미 있었어요.

Exercise 7: Korean to English Translation

1. 서울 구경하러 갔다왔어요.
2. 학생들은 다 담배를 피우러 나갔어요.
3. 오늘은 안 나가고 삐어요?
   네. 일찍 자고 싶어요.
4. 오늘 아침에는 아주 더웠어요. 그런데, 저녁에는 별로 안 더웠어요.
5. 영화는 별로 재미 없었어요.
6. 선생님은 좀 쉬리 나가셨어요.
7. 영화 끝났어요?
   아직 안 끝났어요.
8. 친구한테 전화 걸고 싶어요?
9. 아버지는 택시를 부르러 나가셨어요.
10. 공원에 산보하러 나가셨어요.
11. 개가 고양이를 물었어요.
12. 어제 그 새 식당에서 저녁을 먹었어요?
   네, 그런데, 음식은 별로 맛 없었어요.
13. 위층에 술집에 올라가고 싶어요.
14. 대학에서 동경제학 공부를 했어요. 그런데, 별로 재미 없었어요.
15. 어제 연 선생님댁에 놀러 갔어요.
16. 어디 갔다왔어요?
   방금 우체국에서 왔어요.
17. 영화가 방금 끝났어요.
18. 차를 마시러 다방에 가고 싶어요.
19. 주말에는 좀 쉬고 싶어요.
20. 친구는 무역회사에 다녀요.
21. 이 세 구두 때문에 돈이 많이 나갔어요.
22. 다 왔어요? 아니요, 아직 빌었어요.
23. 사실은 전화를 안 걸었어요.
24. 작년에는 교환학생으로 연대에서 공부했어요.
25. 편지를 부치려 우체국에 방금 갔다왔어요.
26. 아버지는 사업 때문에 유럽에 자주 가세요.
27. 여자친구한테 메일 전화를 걸어요.
28. 돈을 찾으러 은행에 갔다왔어요.

Lesson Nine / 165
## Lesson 10

### REVIEW 1

### 10.1. Vocabulary Review

Below is a list of most of the major verbs you have learned. Make sure you (1) know the meaning of each base, and (2) know how to make the Polite Style 해요-form for each base.

| 가- | 떠나- | 서- | 전화가-로- | 연락(을) 하- | 일(을) 하- |
| 가르치- | 마시- | 쉬- | 전화 받- | 전공(을) 하- |
| 갈다오- | 만나- | 신- | 좋- | 미안하- |
| 간- | 멀- | 쓰-(으) | 좋아하- | 깨끗하- |
| 걸리- | 말(을) 들- | 아-르- | 주- | 미안하- |
| 계시- | 맛 없- | 없- | 주무시- | 깨끗하- |
| 기다리- | 맛(이) 있- | 알아 들- | 줄거- | 찰하- |
| 쳐- | 매- | 어려워- | 착- | 찰하- |
| 굴나- | 머-라- | 잎- | 착- | 찰하- |
| 가- | 먹- | 여-르- | 치- | 찰하- |
| 나-(으)- | 모르- | 오- | 파-라- | 찰하- |
| 나가- | 무-라- | 올라가- | 피우- | 찰하- |
| 나와- | 물- | 이- | 하- | 찰하- |
| 나오- | 바빠- | 일어나- | 협(이) 드-라- | 찰하- |
| 내려가- | 난- | 임- | 공부(을) 하- | 찰하- |
| 노-라- | 배우- | 입- | 구경(을) 하- | 찰하- |
| 노래 부르- | 빗- | 있- | 도착(을) 하- | 찰하- |
| 다니- | 보- | 자- | 빗(을) 하- | 찰하- |
| 담- | 보내- | 자르- | 부탁(을) 하- | 찰하- |
| 달- | 부르- | 작- | 산보(을) 하- | 찰하- |
| 더- | 비싸- | 갑수시- | 수영(을) 하- | 찰하- |
| 되- | 벌- | 제미없- | 야구(을) 하- | 찰하- |
| 드시- | 사- | 제미있- | 연구(을) 하- | 찰하- |
| 들- | 사-로- | 직- | | | |
Exercise 1: Find the Misfit

In each of the following sets of six Korean words, five words have meanings which are related to each other, while there is one word which doesn't belong. Read aloud all the words in each group, then name the misfit.

1. 나
   누구
   당신
   아내
   우리
   그 사람
   재
   중
   공적
   지급
   신문

2. 3. 친구
    누구
    무슨 일
    무엇
    어디
    어느 것
    회사원
    교수
    은행원
    의사
    가수
    남편

5. 여기
    밑에
    오른편
    사이에
    자기
    문
    영어
    한국말
    미국 사람
    중국말
    일본말
    러시아말

7. 잠자리
    상점
    학생
    신문
    그림
    책상
    사모님
    부인
    아버지
    아이
    아버님
    다
Exercise 2: Related Words

Now, here are some sets of three Korean words each—all of similar meanings. Your task is to supply two or three additional Korean words for each set which match the meanings of the words in the original group.

1. 선생
   교수
   의사

2. 상점
   은행
   학교

3. 오후
   아침
   낮

4. 밥
   뒤
   다음

5. 영국
   러시아
   미국

6. 아내
   예기
   아버지

7. 자요
   일어나요
   밥어요
10.2. Particle Review

Here is a list of the particles you have learned so far in the course.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particle</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Particle</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이~가</td>
<td>subject</td>
<td>한테</td>
<td>to a person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>은~는</td>
<td>topic</td>
<td>한테서</td>
<td>from a person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도</td>
<td>too, also, even</td>
<td>에게</td>
<td>to a person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>의</td>
<td>possessive</td>
<td>에게서</td>
<td>from a person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>에</td>
<td>static location;</td>
<td>(으)로</td>
<td>with, by means of, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>direction (to)</td>
<td>(이)항</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하고</td>
<td>and; with</td>
<td>과~와</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>을~를</td>
<td>object</td>
<td>처럼</td>
<td>like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>에서</td>
<td>dynamic location;</td>
<td>도 도</td>
<td>both/land,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>from a place</td>
<td></td>
<td>neither/or</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 3: Fill in the Blanks

Here are some sentences with all the particles replaced by blank spaces. Say each sentence aloud, putting in the particles that are appropriate for each blank. (Remember that when you pause in your speech to think what particle to use, pause before you say the noun, not between noun and particle.) You will find that some sentences can be completed in more than one appropriate way.

1. 나 ___ 런던 대학 ___ 한국말 ___ 배워요.
2. 나 ___ 공원 ___ 삽보해요.
3. 누(구) ___ 선생님이세요? 저 텐 ___ 선생님이세요.
4. 일요일 ___ 선생님 ___ 일찍 일어나세요?
5. 저녁 ___ 집 ___ 무엇 ___ 해요? 보통 편지 ___ 써요.
6. 집 ___ 무엇 ___ 보세요? 신문 ___ 잡지 ___ 바요.
7. 대학 ___ 나 ___ 정치학 ___ 전공했어요.
8. 알아 들었어요? 아니오, ___ 알아 들었어요.
9. 교회 ___ 나가세요?
   네. 주로 어머니 ___ 함께 다녀요.
10. 남자친구 ___ 전화 ___ 왔어요.
11. 도서관 ___ 어디 ___ 있어요?
    저기, 저 건물 옆 ___ 있어요.
Exercise 4: Making Sentences from Phrases

Here is a list of noun-plus-particle phrases. Build a Korean sentence around each phrase, and practice saying your sentence aloud so it comes out smooth and fast. The exercise will do you more good if you write nothing down.

1. 친구와
2. 술집 아주머니가
3. 전화로
4. 러시아 사람들
5. 책상 위에
6. 나무 밑에서
7. 무역회사의
8. 아버지 한테서
9. 박 선생님의
10. 교환학생 한테서
11. 일요일날에는
12. 사모님과
13. 동생한테도
14. 무엇이
15. 어머니의
16. 발도 아들도
17. 치마가
18. 이름
19. 일본말로
20. 성냥하고
21. 이 교실에
22. 저 영화배우가
23. 이 종이의
24. 명함을
25. 돈에서
26. 회사에서
27. 그 분은
28. 점심도
29. 그림도 책도
30. 의사 선생님한테
31. 그 방에서
32. 우체국에서
33. 영국 사람들에게
34. 영화관에서
35. 약도
36. 시장에서도
### 10.3. Verb Review

Here is a chart of the major verb endings you have learned so far with some representative bases (“—” means the form is odd or does not exist).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>대형</th>
<th>-어요/-아요</th>
<th>-(으)네요</th>
<th>-(으)러</th>
<th>-(으)시어요</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하-</td>
<td>하세요</td>
<td>하러</td>
<td>하고 싶어요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>되-</td>
<td>되세요</td>
<td>되러</td>
<td>되고 싶어요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>만나-</td>
<td>만나세요</td>
<td>만나러</td>
<td>만나고 싶어요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서-</td>
<td>서세요</td>
<td>서러</td>
<td>서고 싶어요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보-</td>
<td>보세요</td>
<td>보러</td>
<td>보고 싶어요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉬-</td>
<td>쉬세요</td>
<td>쉬러</td>
<td>쉬고 싶어요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피우-</td>
<td>피우세요</td>
<td>피우러</td>
<td>피우고 싶어요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>쓰세요</td>
<td>쓰러</td>
<td>쓰고 싶어요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>바빠-</td>
<td>바빠세요</td>
<td>바빠러</td>
<td>바빠고 싶어요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다니-</td>
<td>다니세요</td>
<td>다니러</td>
<td>다니고 싶어요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모르-</td>
<td>모르세요</td>
<td>모르러</td>
<td>모르고 싶어요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부르-</td>
<td>부르세요</td>
<td>부르러</td>
<td>부르고 싶어요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>혼들-</td>
<td>혼들어요</td>
<td>혼들러</td>
<td>혼들고 싶어요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드시-</td>
<td>드세요</td>
<td>드시러</td>
<td>드시고 싶어요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>임-</td>
<td>임어요</td>
<td>임으세요</td>
<td>임으러</td>
<td>임고 싶어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갈-</td>
<td>갈어요</td>
<td>갈으세요</td>
<td>갈으러</td>
<td>갈고 싶어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신-</td>
<td>신어요</td>
<td>신으세요</td>
<td>신으러</td>
<td>신고 싶어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉬-</td>
<td>쉬어요</td>
<td>쉬으세요</td>
<td>쉬으러</td>
<td>쉬고 싶어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들-</td>
<td>들어요</td>
<td>들으세요</td>
<td>들으러</td>
<td>들고 싶어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나(서)-</td>
<td>나세요</td>
<td>나으세요</td>
<td>나으러</td>
<td>나고 싶어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson Ten / 171*
Exercise 5: Questions and Answers

Express each of the following brief questions aloud in Korean; then answer your own question negatively. The first one, for example, will be the Korean equivalent of: Is he studying political science? The answer? No, he's not studying political science. (Remember, sentences in Korean do not require you to specify a subject (i.e., he in these cases), though you can if you wish, to avoid ambiguity for example).

1. Is s/he studying Political Science?  2. Is s/he waiting for his friend?
3. Is s/he sleeping?  4. Is s/he living alone?
5. Is s/she learning Russian?  6. Are there many Koreans here?
7. Is s/he looking for his socks?  8. Did s/he come on [because of] business?
9. Is s/he at home?  10. Is s/he watching a movie?
11. Is s/he a doctor?  12. Does s/he work in a trading company?
15. Is s/she speaking Japanese?  16. Is s/he a teacher?
17. Is s/he staying here?  18. Has the price come down a bit?
19. Does s/he go to bars frequently?  20. Does s/he work at the bank now?
21. Does s/he watch TV too much?  22. Did s/he understand [catch] it?
23. Does s/he wear blue jeans often?  24. Does s/he know very much?
25. Is his room clean?  26. When does s/he arrive in Pusan?

Exercise 6: Questions and Answers (Honorific)

Now, ask and answer the following questions aloud in Korean, showing special respect for the person to whom you are referring.

1. 데레비전을 보세요?  2. 방금 나갔어요?
3. 아이들이랑 같이 자주 놀어요?  4. 부모님과 함께 살아요?
5. 아침 일찍 일어나요?  6. 영화구경을 많이 가요?
7. 지금 사무실에 있어요?  8. 주말에 제미 있게 놀어요?
9. 한국 사람이에요?  10. 대사관에 전화를 걸었어요?
11. 중국말을 배우세요?  12. 자동차를 쌓았어요?
13. 어디에 갔다왔어요?  14. 가수에요?
15. 보통 늘게 자요?  16. 사립대학교에서 가르쳤어요?
17. 영어를 배우세요?  18. 다른 외국어도 해요?
19. 명함을 봤어요?  20. 집에 일찍 들어왔어요?
21. 그 여자를 공원에서 만났어요?  22. 보통 회사에 늦게 가요?

Lesson Ten / 172
Exercise 7: Negative Honorifics

Repeat the answers to the questions in Exercises Five and Six above, making them mean *No, he doesn't* or *can't do something* whenever possible. Don't copy them. Simply practice asking the question and giving the answer as fluently as possible.

Exercise 8: Opposites

Express the following group of questions aloud in Korean and answer them by using a verb of different or opposite meaning, for example, *Is it large?* *No, it's small.* *Is he reading?* *No, he's writing.*

1. Is the building large?
2. Is s/he opening the door?
3. Are there many students?
4. Is s/he giving Mrs. Kim some money?
5. Are you teaching Korean?
6. Did s/he put on the sweater?
7. Is s/he getting up?
8. Did the food taste good?
9. Did s/he sell the car?
10. Does s/he obey the teacher(s) words?
11. Were the gloves expensive?
12. Does s/he usually stay home?
13. Is s/he working?
14. Did s/he just leave?

Exercise 9: Opposites (Honorific)

Now repeat the sentences of Exercise 8 above, both questions and answers, changing them so that they refer to someone highly esteemed.
10.4. Sentence Review

Exercise 10: Korean to English Translation

Here are fifty Korean practices using the vocabulary and constructions you have learned in the first nine lessons. Read each one aloud, then translate it into English. In English, convey the meaning of Korean, but without necessarily making a word-for-word translation.

1. 시간이 다 됐습니다. 시작합시다.
   A. 그 사람은 선생이에요?
   B. 아니요, 학생이에요.
2. A. 지금 무엇을 하세요?
   B. 뉴스를 봅니다.
3. A. 이 반지는 누구의 반지네요?
   B. 내 반지네요. 주세요.
4. A. 어디서 한국말 공부를 하세요?
   B. 고려대학교에서 해요.
5. A. 식당에 가세요?
   B. 친구집에 놀러 가요.
6. A. 저녁에는 공부를 하세요?
   B. 네, 가끔 해요.
7. A. 못 알아 들었어요. 영어로 하세요.
8. A. 나는 요즘 많이 일어나요. 그리고 늦게 자요.
9. A. 집을 쉽게 찾으셨어요?
   B. 아니요 – 좀 어려웠어요.
10. A. 전부 다 한국 사람이었어요?
    B. 아니요, 외국 사람이었어요.
11. A. 보통 일찍 주무세요?
    B. 네, 보통 일찍 자요.
12. A. 저는 교환학생으로 왔어요.

Lesson Ten / 174
B. 그래요? 어느 나라에서 오셨어요?
15. 오호에 안 바쁘세요? 부탁 하나 있어요.
16. A. 여기서 먹어요?
B. 아니오, 별로 안 먹어요. 같이 가요.
17. A. 저 분이 미국 분이 아니세요?
B. 네, 영국 사람이에요.
18. A. 한국말이 어려워요?
B. 네, 혼히 들어요.
19. 저 사람이 만호 씨의 여자친구가 아니에요?
20. A. 한국말 가르쳐요?
B. 아니오, 영어를 가르쳐요.
21. A. 어디서 가르치요?
B. 상당에서 가르치요.
22. 우리집 밖에는 나무가 많아요. 정말로 예쁘에요.
23. 앞방에서 누가 주무세요?
24. A. 옆 건물은 식당이에요?
B. 아니오, 술집 같아요.
25. A. 보통 공부를 학교에서 해요, 집에서 해요?
B. 집에서 해요. 학교에서는 잘 안 돼요.
26. A. 개 있어요?
B. 네, 있어요. 아주 착해요. 고양이도 있어요.
27. A. 지금 아버님이 택에 계세요?
B. 네, 계세요. 조금 기다리세요.
28. A. 아이들은 어디에 있어요?
B. 집 앞에서 놀아요.
29. 오늘은 영화구경을 못 가요. 미안해요.
30. A. 점심은 보통 학교식당에서 먹어요?
B. 아니오, 거기는 맛 없어요.

Lesson Ten / 175
31. A. 차표 샀어요?
   B. 아니오, 아직 못 샀어요. 테이크는 어디에 있어요?
32. 진주행 기차는 언제 떠나요? 그리고 몇 시간 걸려요?
33. A. 어디에 갔다왔어요?
   B. 세 구두를 사려 갔다왔어요.
34. A. 몇 시간 걸려요?
   B. 두 시간 걸려요.
35. A. 러시아말은 어디서 배우셨어요?
   B. 러시아에서 배웠어요.
   A. 그래요? 러시아에는 얼마나 동안 계셨어요?
36. A. 외국어를 배우세요?
   B. 네, 외국어를 많이 배우고 싶어요.
37. 이따, 연대와 서강대는 다 신촌에 있어요. 서울대에서는 좀 멀어요.
   고대에서도 좀 멀어요.
38. A. 일요일은 보통 일찍 일어나세요?
   B. 아니오, 일요일은 늦게 일어나요.
39. A. 이 근처에 구두가게 있어요?
   B. 네, 저기 대학 정문 맞은편에 있어요.
40. 우리 집 카는 언제나 깨끗해요. 그래서 세 칫 갖어요.
41. A. 누구를 기다리세요?
   B. 아버님하고 어머님을 기다려요.
42. 보통 학교에서 바로 집에 가요.
43. 오후에는 우체국 앞에서 친구를 만나요.
44. A. 실패지만, 부탁 하나 있어요.
   B. 네, 말씀하세요.
45. A. 밥 먹었어요?
   B. 아니오, 아직 안 먹었어요.
46. 천천히 가세요. 시간이 아직 많아요.
47. 시장과 우체국 사이에는 여관이 많이 있어요.
Exercise 11: English to Korean Translation

Here are forty-five English practices for you to put into Korean. Write them out and then practice them aloud until you can say each one smoothly. Make sure you use some honorifics.

1. A. Where's the Korean teacher?
   B. She's in the classroom.

2. A. Are you American?
   B. I'm afraid not. I'm English.

3. A. What are you doing here?
   B. I work at an English trading company.

4. A. Are there Korean newspapers in the library?
   B. Yes, there are.

5. A. Isn't your wife going to Korea with you?
   B. Yes, she is.

6. A. Are you learning Japanese?
   B. Yes. I go to Japan often on business.

7. A. Have you any cigarettes?
   B. Yes, there are both cigarettes and matches on my desk.

8. A. Do you read magazines and books in the evening?
   B. I usually read the newspaper first.

9. A. Who did you hear it from?
   B. It's true. I heard it from my brother.

10. A. Do you live with your parents?
    B. No, I live with a friend near city hall.

11. A. Have you got a pen?
    B. I'm sorry. I haven't either a pen or a pencil.

12. A. What are you doing?
    B. I'm looking for my namecards.

13. A. Mr. Kim doesn't smoke. He doesn't drink either.

Lesson Ten / 177
15. I can't go to the movies with you this evening. I'm too busy.
16. I usually stay at home in the evenings. And I go to bed early.
17. A. Are there many gardens and parks in Korea?
   B. Yes, a few. But there are more in England.
19. A. Are you learning Japanese at school?
   B. No, I'm learning Chinese. But I can't speak it well yet.
20. A. Have you got any paper in your briefcase?
   B. Yes, here's some.
21. I haven't got either matches or cigarettes. Have you got (any)?
22. A. Is your house large?
   B. No, it's not particularly large. But it's nice.
23. Yesterday was really enjoyable. I want to go again.
24. A. Have you got a cat?
   B. No, we haven't got either a dog or a cat.
25. I work at a bank daytimes. And at night I work in a hotel. Because of my work I'm always busy.
26. I meet my friend in front of this store in the evenings. Then we go to the movies.
27. A. Do you usually go for walks in the park by yourself?
   B. No, I usually go with a friend of mine. [Literally: my friend]
28. I eat very early (in the morning). Then I go to school.
29. I drink a lot of water. But I don't eat much meat.
30. I'm going to the restaurant to eat lunch.
31. Have you taken your medicine?
32. A. Which one is better?
   B. This one is.
33. I have a little bit of time this evening.
34. I wanted to phone my friend.
35. But he has gone out.
36. Sometimes he works in the garden.
37. Then he can't answer the phone.
38. I want to go straight home now.
39. It was really hot in the theater. So I took off my sweater.
40. I wanted to brush my teeth. However, I didn't have the time.
41. A. Where did you go this morning?
   B. I went to the market to buy some new jeans.
42. A. I want to go by bicycle.
   B. You can't go by bicycle. It's too far.

Lesson Ten / 178
10.5. Korean Conversations

Conversation 1

Practice the following conversation aloud, taking turns with the roles. Speak them as naturally and easily as you can. Try to sound as much like a native Korean speaker as you can. Make sure you know what each sentence means.

선생 안녕하세요?
학생 네, 안녕하세요.
선생 시간이 다 됐습니다. 시작할까요?
학생 그러면, 시작하세요.
선생 오늘은 한국말로 하세요.
학생 죄송합니다. 다시 말해 주세요.
선생 오늘은 한국말로 하세요. 알아 들었어요?
학생 네, 알아 들었어요.
성생 이 책이 누구의 책이에요? 대답하세요.
학생 김 선생님의 책이에요.
선생 좋아요. 저 공책도 내 공책이에요?
학생 아니요, 그 공책은 저 학생의 공책이에요.
선생 이 학교 선생들이 어느 나라 사람인지요? 영국 사람들인가요?
학생 아니요, 다 한국 사람이에요.
선생 좋아요. 시간이 다 됐습니다. 십분만 식시다.
Conversation 2

만호  유니스 씨, 어디 가세요?
유니스  학교에 가요.
만호  학교에서 무엇을 해요?
유니스  한국말이랑 다른 과목도 공부해요.
만호  아침에 일찍 일어나세요?
유니스  네, 아침에 아주 일찍 일어나요.
만호  한국말 공부는 오전에도 해요?
유니스  아니오, 오전에는 수업이 없어요. 그래서 친구들이랑 같이 놀아요.

Conversation 3

수진  지금 어디에 가요?
진희  우체국에 가요.
수진  우체국에서 일을 해요?
진희  네, 어제 시작했어요. 오전에는 또 다른 일을 해요.
수진  그래요? 오후에는 무슨 일을 해요?
진희  다방에서 일해요.
수진  그러면, 집에 늦게 가요?
진희  아니오, 보통 일찍 가요. 집에서 쉬어요.
스물한 나이에요. 칠십육년생이에요.

In this lesson, you will learn how to establish age-based hierarchies with your peers and others, and describe the gory details of a party and the food and drink consumed there. In other words, you learn how to manipulate numbers, times, and dates, also how to count and name hours, days, months, years, etc. You also learn how to manipulate telephone numbers and some particles useful for time, numbers and dates. Finally, you learn a new speech style, the FORMAL Style.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Chris and Eunice’s college age son Eric has struck up a new friendship with a Korean student at Korea University.

영철  에릭 씨, 지금 어디에요?
에릭  평창동이에요.
영철  그래요? 부자 동네에서 사는군요! 집에서 학교까지 멀어요?
에릭  한 시간쯤 걸려요.
영철  에릭 씨 나이가 몇 살이에요?
에릭  스물한 살이에요. 칠십육년생이에요.
영철  그래요? 그러면 적하고 동갑이네요! 생일이 언제예요?
에릭  괴월이십사일이에요. 왜요?
영철  허! 그러니 에릭 씨가 형이네요! (jokingly) 형님!
잘 부탁드립니다. 잠, 집 전화번호가 몇번이에요?
에릭  삼오이국의 일종철삼이에요. 잠, 영철 씨, 이번 주말에
우리 한국어 반에서 파티를 해요. 꽤 와요.

Lesson Eleven / 181
Notes

사랑의 작은 군요! Oh, I see you are living (in a rich neighborhood)! Forms in -는군요 indicate a sudden, first realization. You will learn more about them in a later lesson.

동갑이네요! Why, we’re the same age! You learn more about mild surprise forms in -네요. later. For now, memorize this as part of the dialogue.

형이네요! Why, that makes you my 형! You learn more about mild surprise forms in -네요. later. For now, memorize this as part of the dialogue.

잘 부탁드립니다. Please look out for me. Please take good care of me. This idiomatic expression is often used by subordinates to those higher ups upon meeting for the first time.

Dialogue 2

Eric meets up again with 영철 again the day after Eric’s party.

영철 어제 파티에 몇 사람 왔습니까?
에릭 한 열두셋 사람 왔어요.
영철 그렇습니까? 술을 많이 마셨습니까?
에릭 맥주를 철철 빚품 마셨어요.
영철 안주도 많이 먹었습니까?
에릭 오징어 열 마리하고 감자깡 스무 통지하고 사과 한 상자 먹었습니다.
영철 몇시에 끝났습니까?
에릭 세벽 두시에 끝났습니다. 그런데 왜 안 왔어요?
영철 미안해요, 에릭 씨. 잊어버렸어요. (jokingly) 용서하십시오, 형님!
에릭 알았어요. 편찮아요. 그런데 지금 몇시에요?
영철 열두시 삼십분입니다. 별세 점심 시간이네요.
밥 먹으러 갑니다.

Notes

알았어요. (Literally: I’ve understood. This idiomatic expression has the effect of Got it; I see; OK, I get your point.)

Lesson Eleven / 182
Really? This is the Formal Style version of 그래요? The Formal Style version of the statement is 그래습니다.

Why, it's lunchtime! You learn more about mild surprise forms in -네요 later. For now, memorize this as part of the dialogue.

Reading Passage

일곱 사람이 음식점에 있습니다.
남자 세 명과 여자 네명이 있습니다.
식탁 위에 맥주가 일곱 병 있습니다. 사람마다 맥주를 한 병씩 시켰습니다.
파일과 안주도 많이 있습니다.
사람들이 맥주를 마십니다. 안주도 먹습니다.
사람들이 반 늦게까지 재미 있게 이야기합니다.

Vocabulary

Counting and Time Expressions

몇
몇칠
몇칠 게십니까?
얼마나
번호
전화번호
전화번호가 어떻게 됨니까?
여러 NOUN
여러가지 음식
여러분
한 NUMERAL
한 두 시간 걸립니다.
전에
후에
두 시간 후에 만남시다.

how many? (some/several)
how many days? (a few days)
How many days are you staying?
about how much? approximately how much?
number
telephone number
What's your telephone number?
several, various NOUN
all kinds of food
all of you, everybody
about, approximately (NUMERAL)
It takes about two hours.
earlier, before
afterwards, later, later on
Let's meet in two hours.
나중에 (in the future, some time later, later)
내년(에) (next year)
금년(에) (this year)
추중에 (during the week, on week days)
지난 NOUN (past, last NOUN)
지난 번에 (last time)
-번 (a time)
한번 (once, one time)
한번 더 (one more time, once more)
이번 NOUN (this NOUN)
이번 주말 (this weekend)
생일 (birthday)
생신 (birthday (honorable))
나이
나이(가) 많아요. (She is old.)
연세 (age (of s.b. esteemed))
연세(가) 많으세요. (She is old. (honorable))
-년생 (Sino-Korean numbers)
몇년생이십니까? (What year were you born in?)
칠십구년생입니다. (I was born in '79.)
-학년 (at school)
일학년 (first-year, Freshman)
이학년 (second-year, Sophomore)
삼학년 (third-year, Junior)
사학년 (fourth-year, Senior)
몇학년입니까? (What year are you (in school)?)
반 (half (as in half hour))
반 시간 (half hour)
오전 (A.M.)
오전 아홉시 반 (9:30 A.M.)
오후 (afternoon; P.M.)
오후 두시 (2 P.M.)
새벽 (dawn, early morning (1:00 A.M. to 6:00 A.M.))
새벽 두시 (2:00 A.M.)
Other New Nouns
부자  a rich person
동네 neighborhood, part of town
식탁 dining table, kitchen table
반 a class
파티 party
맥주 beer
안주 food to go with alcoholic beverages
감자 감자깡 potato(es)
오징어 squid
오징어깡 squid chips
새우 shrimp
새우깡 shrimp chips
사과 apple
과일 fruit
동감 a person of the same age
영터리 something or someone fake or bogus; rubbish, piece of junk, hogwash

I did a half-baked job of cleaning up.

물건 goods
길 road, way, street
끝 the end
처음 the beginning
처음에는 at first, in the beginning
처음부터 끝까지 from beginning to end
방학 school vacation

New Verbs
고생(을) 하- suffer, endure hardship
용서(를) 하- forgive
용서하십시오. Forgive me; I beg your pardon.

여어나- be born
어디서 태어나셨습니까? Where were you born?

젊- be young
고마워- be grateful, thankful
고맙습니다. Thank you.

Lesson Eleven / 185
Lesson Notes

11.1. Numbers and Counting

Korean has two sets of numerals. One of these (일, 이, 삐, etc.) was borrowed from Chinese; the other set is native (하나, 둘, 셋, etc.). Up to 99, both sets are used. For units of 100 and above, only the Chinese set is used; but in compound numbers (like 121) you will hear both (백 이십일 and 백 스물 하나).

In general, the numerals above 10 are combinations of the first ten: 11 is 10 + 1 (열 하나; 십일), 12 is 10 + 2 (열둘; 십이), and so on. The pure Korean (i.e., native Korean as opposed to Chinese) numerals 20, 30, 40, etc., are special words, but in the Chinese system, 20 is 2 x 10 (이십), 30 is 3 x 10 (삼십), etc.

Lesson Eleven / 186
Below are all the numerals you will need to know in Korean. In cases where the actual pronunciation of a numeral differs from the 한글 spelling, we have noted this in square brackets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pure Korean Numerals</th>
<th>Sino-Korean Numerals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ordinary</td>
<td>Pronunciation before Nouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 하나</td>
<td>헿</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 둘</td>
<td>두</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 셋</td>
<td>세 ~ 섯¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 넷</td>
<td>네 ~ 네¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 다섯</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 여섯</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 일곱</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 여덟 [여덟]</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 아홉</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 열</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 열하나</td>
<td>열한</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 열둘 [열둘]</td>
<td>열두 [열두]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 열셋</td>
<td>열세 ~ 섯¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 열넷</td>
<td>열네 ~ 네¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 열다섯 [열다섯]</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 열여섯 [열여섯]</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 열일곱</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 열여덟 [열여덟]</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 열아홉</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 스물</td>
<td>스무</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 스물하나</td>
<td>스물한</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 스물둘 [스물둘]</td>
<td>스물두 [스물두]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 스물셋</td>
<td>스물세 ~ 섯¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 스물넷</td>
<td>스물네 ~ 네¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 서른</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33 서른셋</td>
<td>서른세 ~ 섯¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 마흔</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44 마흔넷</td>
<td>마흔넷 ~ 네¹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson Eleven / 187*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pure Korean Numerals</th>
<th>Sino-Korean Numerals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ordinary</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pronunciation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>전</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>선탄세</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>예순</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>예순여섯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>일흔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>일흔일곱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>여든</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>여덟여덟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>아흔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99</td>
<td>아흔아홉</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>이백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>삼백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>사백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>오백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>육백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>청백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>팔백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>구백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>천</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>육만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>십만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td>백만</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

주의
When the pure Korean numerals for 3 and 4 are used before counters which begin with the sounds ㄷ, ㅈ, they can be pronounced 肅 and 듯, respectively.

Lesson Eleven / 188
주의

Note that the Sino-Korean word for **six** has two shapes: 육 in word-initial position or after a pause and 륵 elsewhere.

육실 60 but 육실록 [육십육] 66

The surname Lee behaves in a similar way: it is pronounced as 이 in word-initial position or after a pause, and 리 elsewhere.

이 선생님 Mr. Lee but 리 미스 리 Miss Lee

These cases of ㄹ showing up in one position but disappearing again in another are originally from Chinese: at one stage in its history Korean underwent a sound change whereby word-initial ㄹ and ㄴ dropped before i and y, and the alternation here is the legacy of this earlier sound change.

Each of the Korean numerals from one to four (하나, 둘, 셋, 넷) and twenty (스물) is peculiar in this respect: when used right before the word it is counting, the numeral drops its last sound. Here are some common examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>하나</th>
<th>one</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>한 사람</td>
<td>one person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한 개</td>
<td>one object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한 시</td>
<td>one o'clock</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>둘</th>
<th>two</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>두 달</td>
<td>two months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두 분</td>
<td>two esteemed people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두 명</td>
<td>people</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>셋</th>
<th>three</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>세 병</td>
<td>three bottles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세 가지</td>
<td>three kinds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(종이) 세 장</td>
<td>three pieces (of paper)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>넷</th>
<th>four</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>네 마리</td>
<td>four (animals)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>네 살</td>
<td>four years (of age)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>네 시간</td>
<td>four hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>스물</th>
<th>twenty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>스무 번</td>
<td>twenty times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스무 대</td>
<td>twenty vehicles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Eleven / 189
English allows one to say either two cows or two head of cattle, but when counting dogs, there is but one choice: two dogs. Korean uses both types of construction, but often the latter: 개 두 마리 two dogs. The word 마리 is a special kind of COUNTER (also called a CLASSIFIER). It classifies nouns for counting purposes according to some common characteristic. Things counted with 마리 are animals and fishes, things counted with 양 are thin, flat, sheet-like things, and so on.

Other kinds of counters are MEASURES, used to say how much there is of something that can be measured out—by the cupful, the kilogram, pound, the mile (of distance), the dollar or 원 (of money). English has measures, like Korean, and also a few counters (such as head for cattle), but Korean has more of these than English has. That is why there is no ready English equivalent for the counters in 척 세 권 three (volumes of) books, 집 세 채 three (buildings of) houses.

As the lists to follow show, there are some counters which go with the pure Korean numerals and others which require the Sino-Korean numerals. The distinction is sometimes crucial, as in the case of 분.

| 한 분 | 1 esteemed person | 일본 | 1 minute |
| 두 분 | 2 esteemed people | 이분 | 2 minutes |
| 세 분 | 3 esteemed people | 삼분 | 3 minutes |

A NUMERAL EXPRESSION is either a numeral by itself or a numeral plus a counter. When you are using particles with numeral expressions, you enjoy a certain amount of freedom as to where you can put the particle in the sentence. Numeral expressions have the following four usages.

1. Numeral Expressions can modify counters:

두 사람이 있어요. There are two people.

2. Numeral Expressions can have particles after them:

가게 들이 있어요. There are two shops.
책 두 권이 있어요. There are two (volumes of) books.
책이 두 권 있어요. There are two (volumes of) books.
책을 두 권 삽어요. There are two (volumes of) books.
책 두 권을 삽어요. There are two (volumes of) books.
들이 있어요. There are two.
두 권이 있어요. There are two (volumes).

Lesson Eleven / 190
3. Numeral expressions can be used as adverbs.

There are two books.

There are two (volumes of) books.

4. Numeral expressions can be used before the copula.

It is 2:00 o'clock.

Here are some examples of numerical expressions in sentences.

1. 이 방 안에는 창문이 일곱 개 있어요.
   There are seven windows in this room.

2. 부산행 기차표 두 장 주세요.
   Please give me two train tickets to Pusan.

3. 나는 우체국 앞에서 자동차 여섯 대를 봤어요.
   I saw six cars in front of the post office.

4. 신문을 세 부 삽아요.
   I bought three newspapers.

5. 그 집에 방이 몇 개 있어요?
   How many rooms are there in that house?

6. 석 달 후에 영국에 가요.
   I'm going to England in [after] three months.

7. 그 서점이 몇 층이에요?
   How many floors is the bookshop? or Which floor is the bookshop?

8. 백화점에는 여러 가지 물건을 팔아요.
   They sell many/several/all kinds of goods in department stores.

The following counters are used with pure Korean numerals up to the number twenty, after which Sino-Korean numerals may also be used. Note that some counters can also function as independent nouns. Those counters which cannot function as independent nouns, and are therefore bound, are preceded by a dash: -. Those counters which can function as either a counter or an independent noun are preceded by a dash in parentheses: (-):
Counters used with Pure Korean Numerals

- 시
  o'clock
  (-)시
  hours

(-) 날
  months
  (-)해
  years

(-) 사람
  persons, people
  - 군데
  places, institutions

- 복
  persons, people
  - 갑
  pack (of cigarettes)

- 문
  esteemed people
  (-) 상자
  box, case, chest

- 마리
  animals, fish, birds
  - 부
  newspapers; books (if bought in multiple copies)

- 살
  years of age (but not for esteemed individuals)
  - 장
  flat objects; pieces of paper

(-) 잔
  cups, glasses
  - 통
  buildings

- 대
  vehicles, machines
  - 개
  items, units, objects

- 가지
  kinds, varieties
  (-) 병지
  paper bag

(-) 병
  bottle
  - 권
  bound volumes; books or magazines

 주의!

The counters above can usually be used with either pure Korean or Sino-Korean numbers above the number twenty. Thus, one can say either 이른 병 or 청십 병 for seventy bottles.

Counters used with Sino-Korean Numerals

- 분
  minutes
  초
  seconds

- 일
  days
  도
  degrees (temperature)

- 년
  years
  개월
  months (time or duration)

- 층
  floors (of a building)
  원
  money unit: dollar, won, yen

- 볼
  dollars
  - 리
  Korean mile (리) = 1/3 U.S. mile

- 달러
  dollars
  - 월 (달)
  month names

- 파운드
  pounds (sterling)

 E.g., 이월달 (이월달) February

 주의!

In the case of the counters above, note that for the numbers 101-119, one is more likely to hear 백 + pure Korean number than all Sino-Korean numbers. For example, 백십 병 is more common than 백사 병 for 104 bottles.

Lesson Eleven / 192
Counting Days

Counting days in Korean is somewhat awkward since there are two options, at least when counting up to twenty: pure Korean expressions or Sino-Korean expressions. After twenty, only Sino-Korean expressions are used. Furthermore, the pure Korean words used do not follow any immediately obvious pattern and have to be learned separately. Unfortunately there is no substitute for this.

**Pure Korean**

The following expressions are widely used by Koreans of all generations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>머칠</td>
<td>how many days?</td>
<td>하루</td>
<td>one day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이틀</td>
<td>two days</td>
<td>사흘</td>
<td>three days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나흘</td>
<td>four days</td>
<td>낭세</td>
<td>five days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following expressions are used rather less by Koreans of younger generations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>엇새</td>
<td>six days</td>
<td>이레</td>
<td>seven days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여덟레</td>
<td>eight days</td>
<td>아홉레</td>
<td>nine days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열흘</td>
<td>ten days</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following expressions are used primarily by Koreans of older generations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>열하루</td>
<td>eleven days</td>
<td>열이틀</td>
<td>twelve days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열사흘</td>
<td>thirteen days</td>
<td>열나흘</td>
<td>fourteen days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열닷새</td>
<td>fifteen days</td>
<td>열엇새</td>
<td>sixteen days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열이레</td>
<td>seventeen days</td>
<td>열여덟레</td>
<td>eighteen days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열아홉레</td>
<td>nineteen days</td>
<td>스무날</td>
<td>twenty days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sino-Korean**

Besides the pure Korean expressions above, one can also use Sino-Korean expressions for counting days up to twenty.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>일일</td>
<td>one day</td>
<td>이일</td>
<td>two days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>삐일</td>
<td>three days</td>
<td>사일</td>
<td>four days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오일</td>
<td>five days</td>
<td>육일</td>
<td>six days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Above twenty, the Sino-Korean numerals are used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이십일</td>
<td>twenty days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이십일일</td>
<td>twenty-one days, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Less than twenty, the Sino-Korean numerals can also be used for dates, in which case it is common in colloquial Korean to add the word 날 day (somewhat redundantly).

오일 (날)  
*the fifth day of the month*

The 날 here is optional, like the 날 in 이월달 *February*, but is frequent in colloquial usage.

**Counting Weeks**

Korean has the following words for week:

주일  
*week*

주간  
*week ['s time]*

Weeks are counted with either pure Korean or Sino-Korean numerals, but note in the following list that the Sino-Korean expressions on the right are more common.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pure Korean</th>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>한 주일</td>
<td>일 주일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두 주일</td>
<td>이 주일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세 주일</td>
<td>삼 주일</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

한 주간      | 일 주간      | *one week ['s time]* |
| 두 주간      | 이 주간      | *two weeks ['s time]* |
| 세 주간      | 삼 주간      | *three weeks ['s time]* |

With the Sino-Korean numerals, 주일 *week* can be shortened to 주.

일주  
*one week*

이주  
*two weeks*

**Counting Months**

Months are counted with either pure Korean or Sino-Korean numerals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>몇 달</td>
<td>몇 개월</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한 달</td>
<td>일 개월</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두 달</td>
<td>이 개월</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>석 달, 세 달</td>
<td>삼 개월</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>년 달, 네 달</td>
<td>사 개월</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson Eleven / 194*
Talking about Months

무슨 달 or 몇 월 [며 월]  what month?
일월 (달) [달] or 정월          January
이월 (달) [달]                    February
삼월 (달) [달]                    March
사월 (달) [달]                     April
오월 (달) [달]                      May
육월 (달) [달]                     June [irregular]
칠월 (달) [달]                      July
팔월 (달) [달]                     August
구월 (달) [달]                      September
시월 (달) [달]                      October [irregular]
십일월 (달) [달]                  November
십이월 (달) [달] or 십달          December
지난 달                            last month
이번 달                            this month
다음 달 [optionally pronounced 달] next month

Counting Years

As with counting days, Korean has two options for counting years: pure Korean and Sino-Korean. To count years in pure Korean up to 99, one uses a pure Korean numeral with 해 year.

몇 해                                how many years?
한 해                                one year
두 해                                two years
세 해                                three years
네 해                                four years
여덟 해 [여덟 해]                    eight years
스무 해                              twenty years
아흔 아홉 해                          nintety-nine years

Starting with 100, one uses Sino-Korean numerals with -년.
백 년                              100 years

However, it is most common to count and name all years (including 1-99) using Sino-Korean, and you will rarely hear Koreans using pure Korean beyond 두 해 two years.

Lesson Eleven / 195
몇 년
일 년
이 년
삼 년
사 년
팔 년
이십 년
구십구 년

what year? [e.g., 1970] or how many years?
one year; Year One
two years; Year Two
three years; Year Three
four years; Year Four
eight years; Year Eight
twenty years; Year Twenty
ninety-nine years; Year Ninety-Nine

11.2. Numerals in Time Expressions

11.2.1. Telling the Time

To tell the time in Korean, you use the pure Korean numerals followed by 시 which is equivalent to o'clock.

한 시
다섯 시
열두 시 [열두시]

one o'clock
five o'clock
twelve o'clock

To say half past, you put 반 and a half after this expression.

한 시 반
다섯 시 반
열두 시 반

1:30
5:30
12:30

A specific number of minutes after the hour is expressed by the Sino-Korean numerals with -분 minute after the expression.

한 시 십 분
다섯 시 십오 분
열두 시 이십삼 분

1:10 [Literally: one o'clock 10 minutes]
5:15 [Literally: five o'clock 15 minutes]
12:23 [Literally: twelve o'clock 23 minutes]

To express the number of minutes before the hour, you use the same expression but add 전 before at the end.

한 시 십 분 전

12:50

[Literally: one o'clock 10 minutes before]

Lesson Eleven / 196
다섯 시 십오 분 전 4:45

[Literally: five o’clock 15 minutes before]

For AM and PM, you use 아침 or 오전 morning, 오후 afternoon, or 밤 night at the beginning of the expression.

오전 세 시 (or 아침 세 시) 3:00 A.M.
오후 네 시 4:00 P.M.
밤 아홉 시 반 9:30 P.M.

To say exactly such-and-such a time, you put 정각 after the time expression.

한 시 반 정각(예) (at) exactly 1:30

The word 시 means hour only in the sense of a point in time, an o’clock. For length or duration of time, 시간 hour is used (as you know, 시간 also means time in general).

9. A. 몇 시간 일었어요?
How many hours did you work?

B. 여섯 시간 일었어요.
I worked (for) six hours.

10. 날마다 다섯 시간 반씩 공부해요.
I study for five and a half hours every day.

11.2.2. Dates

11. 오늘은 몇월 몇일이에요?
What is today’s date? [Literally: Today is which month, which day?]

Dates are given in Korean by proceeding from the longest to the shortest time element; English does the opposite. For example:

12. 친구백오십이년, 시월 십일, 금요일, 오후 세 시 십오 분
3:15 P.M., Friday, 10 October 1952

Lesson Eleven / 197
This breaks down to:

천 / 구백 / 오십 / 이년
[Literally: thousand—nine-hundred—fifty—two-year]

시월 / 십일
[Literally: October—ten—day]

금요일
[Friday]

오후 / 세 시 / 십오 분
[Literally: afternoon—three o’clock—fifteen minutes]

11.2.3. Telephone Numbers

When reading a telephone number in Korean, there is a choice between three closely related patterns. For example, here is how one could read the number 949-1806.

In the full pattern, you spell out everything and round it off with -번 number:

A. 949국의 1806
구백사십구국의 천팔백육번
[Literally: 949-exchange’s 1806-number]

However, just as in English one is unlikely to read this number as nine hundred forty-nine, one thousand eight hundred and six, in Korean this pattern can also be abbreviated. The first thing is to omit the 국, meaning (telephone) exchange, in which case the -번 number is optional.

B. 949의 1806
구백사십구의 천팔백육번
[Literally: 949’s 1806]

The most usual way to read a number is to omit the 국 and the 번, and just read each number separately:

C. 949의 1806
구사구의 일팔공육
[Literally: 9—4—9’s 1—8—0—6]
11.3. Four New Particles: 마다, 만, 씩, 셔

11.3.1. 마다 Each, Every

13. 아침마다 학교 수영장에서 수영을 합니다.
   *I swim in the school swimming pool every morning.*

14. 일요일마다 서점들이 문을 닫습니다.
   *Every Sunday the bookstores close.*

15. 날마다 여덟시부터 일시까지 아르바이트하러 갑니다.
   *Every day I go to do my part-time job from 8 o'clock till 10 o'clock.*

With time expressions, 마다 is more normally expressed in English by the indefinite article
*an*: 날마다 여덟 시간 [literally: every day eight hours] eight hours a day. (But to say
three days a week 한 주일에 사흘 is more natural than 주일마다 사흘.)

11.3.2. 만 Only, Just

The particle 만 restricts the noun expression it follows. It limits the meaning of the noun to
no more than what is specified.

16. 이것은 있습니다.
   *This is all there is.* [Literally: There is only this.]

17. 저는 갑니다.
   *I'm the only one who's going.* [Literally: Only I am going.]

When 만 follows a noun, the particles 이~가, 은~는, and 을~를 are not normally used
with the same expression.

18. 사과만 있습니다.
   *There are only apples.*

19. 유니스 셔만 알고있다.
   *Only Eunice knows.*

20. 요즘 공부만 합니다.
   *Lately all I do is study.*

*Lesson Eleven / 199*
Occasionally you will run across such combinations as 만이, 만을, and 만은. 만 may be used at the end of other noun-plus-particle expressions, as follows.

21. 우체국에 만 갑니다.
   *I'm going only to the post office.*

22. 한국말로 만 하십시오.
   *Speak only in Korean.*

23. 공원에서 만 산보를 합니다.
   *I only take walks in the park.*

24. 에릭 씨한테 만 이야기했습니다.
   *I only told Eric.*

When 만 is used in sentences with numerical expressions, its meaning is to limit the amount to what is specified.

25. 두 시간만 공부했습니다.
   *I studied for two hours.*
   (만 limits the time to two hours: Two hours is the length of time I studied. I studied for two hours but not longer.)

26. 책 열 권만 샀습니다.
   *I bought ten books.*
   (만 indicates that ten is exactly the number of books bought.)

In this latter sense, 만 represents a shade of meaning which usually goes unexpressed in English; it contrasts in meaning with the particle 조, discussed in section 11.3.4 below.

11.3.3. 씩 *Per, Apiece*

The particle 씩 is one which expresses an idea not often made explicit in English. It has a distributive function or expresses the idea of regularity. When English says *I study for three hours per night*, Korean says the equivalent of *Every night I study [three hours per]*. In other words, the distributive particle goes on the expression of time or quantity, not as in English. Take a look at the following sentence.

27. 하루에 여덟 시간씩 잤습니다.
   *I sleep 8 hours a day.* [Literally: In one day I sleep 8 hours each.]

씨 is used at the end of numerical expressions, but it refers to some other element in the sentence. This may be a subject or object or it may be a time expression generalized with 만

*Lesson Eleven / 200*
다. It would be on this item of the sentence that *per* would be added in English. You would not use this particle to say *Yesterday I studied for three hours*, since there is no regularity about that (you would use 세 시간 동안 for a duration of 3 hours). But it is used in the following examples in which there is the idea of regularity.

28. 여자친구랑 날마다 세 시간씩 전화로 이야기합니다.
   *I speak on the phone with my girlfriend three hours every day.*

29. 은행에서 날마다 몇 시간씩 일을 하십니까?
   *How many hours (apiece) a day do you work at the bank?*

It is also used in a sense more like the English, when the dominant idea is more literal distribution. The next sentence should illustrate this:

30. 학생들에게 책 한 권씩 줍니다.
   *I gave the students one book each (apiece).*

11.3.4. **About, Approximately, By**

The particle **about** is used with time expressions. When the time expression refers to a point in time, **about** means *at about* [that time].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>시각</th>
<th>(at) about time?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>몇시 (예)</td>
<td>(at) about 10:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열 시간 (예)</td>
<td>(at) about 10:30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With expressions referring to duration of time, **about** means *by* (that time) or for about *that length of time*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>시간</th>
<th>(for) about length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>네 시간</td>
<td>(for) about four hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

한 *about, approximately* used at the beginning of a numerical expression has the same meaning as **about** at the end of it, as in.

31. 한 열 명 있습니다 same as 열 명으로 있습니다.
   *There are about ten people.*

Be careful not to confuse this 한, which is always followed by a numerical expression, with 한 the short form of 하나 *one* which is always followed by a noun or a counter. Note also that 한, cannot be used with 언제: *한 언제 vs. the acceptable 언제*? *Approximately when?*

*Lesson Eleven / 201*
한 meaning *about, approximately* is often used in combination with a particle of the same meaning, reinforcing the imprecise character of the expression.

32. 어제 밤 한 이십 명쯤 앞았습니다.
*About twenty people were here (came) last night.*

33. 한 두 시쯤 저희 집에 오십시오.
*Please come to our house about two o'clock.*

주의!

Notice that 총 cannot combine with the copula in an expression like
두 시쯤이에요. *It is approximately two o'clock.*

Instead, an expression with 되- is preferred:
두 시쯤 됐어요. *It is [Literally: has become] approximately two o'clock.*

11.4. The Particles 부터 *from* and 까지 *to*

You have learned ways to say 부터 *from* and 까지 *to*, and this lesson also introduces the particles 부터 *from* and 까지 *to*.

부터 *from* is usually used with time expressions:

다섯 시부터
*from five o'clock*

오늘부터
*from today*

예시 from or (happening) at, on the other hand, is used only in place expressions: 집에서
from home or (happening) at home. 부터 is often used to translate at in time expressions with begin (though 예 may be used in these expressions, as well): 앞 시 부터 시작합니다.
*We begin at 10 o'clock.*

Used with both time and place expressions, 까지 means to in the sense of as far as, up to or until. 예 with time expressions, you recall, means at or in that time 저녁에 in the evening, 밤에 at night. With place expressions it means either (being) in, at or on that place—static location, as in 집에 있습니다 *He's at home;* 의자에 앉습니다 *sits on the chair,* 공원에 있습니다 *it's in the park—or to that place: 학교에 갑니다 *goes to school.*

*Lesson Eleven / 202*
Here are examples of 부터 and 까지 in sentences.

34. 학교는 내일부터 시작합니다.
   School starts tomorrow.

35. 대사관에서는 아침 아홉시부터 일일을 시작합니다.
   I start work at the embassy every morning at nine o'clock.

36. 두시부터 네시까지 사무실에서 앉습니다.
   I slept in the office from two o'clock till four o'clock.

37. 처음부터 끝까지 영터리었습니다.
   It was rubbish from beginning to end.

38. 아침부터 밤까지 고생을 합니다.
   I suffer from morning till night.

11.5. Formal Style

The Formal Style is used under conditions where formality is called for: in business situations where the relationship between the speakers is official and impersonal, in social situations where the speakers are newly acquainted and the ice is not yet broken, or in any case where reserve seems indicated or desirable. It is also often used in greetings and other conventional expressions (recall some of the basic expressions of Lessons One and Two). This style gives way gradually as the formality of the situation ebbs, i.e., when two speakers have progressed beyond the initial overtures of getting acquainted and feel more at ease, then Formal and Polite Style are often mixed together.

Male speakers are advised to use formal forms occasionally, even when speaking to people with whom one need not be formal: overuse of polite forms in 영어 strikes some Koreans as "talking like a woman."

Notice that the keynote to the style that speakers are employing (aside from certain vocabulary items like 저 for 나는 (I)), rests entirely in the verbs at the end of sentences. All other nonfinal verb forms are neutral in this respect.

Formal statements are made by attaching to the verb at the end of the sentence, an ending which has the shape -(으)ㅂ니다 (pronounced -(으)ㅂ니다) after consonants and -(으)ㅂ니다 (pronounced -(으)ㅂ니다) after vowels.

Lesson Eleven / 203
주의!

If the base is an L-extending vowel base, the ending is added to the unextended base (without the -ㄹ-): 사-ㄹ- → 삽니다 live. If the base ends in w, this w changes to ㅂ (remember that w counts as a consonant in our system): 더w- → 드습니다 hot. If the base ends in -ㄹ (i.e., in the case of -ㄹ-verbs), this changes (by our rules) to ㄷ: 들- → 들습니다 listen. Finally, -irregular verbs add the ending to the form with 사: 낳습니다 improve.

Formal questions are made by replacing the final 다 of the formal statement with 가. In other words add an ending that has the shape -습니까 (pronounced -순니까) after consonants and the shape -니까 (pronounced -니까) after vowels. Here are some examples with typical verb bases.

### Vowel Bases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Formal Statement</th>
<th>Pronounced</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>가-</td>
<td>갈다</td>
<td>갈다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tie, wear a tie</td>
<td>메-</td>
<td>면니다</td>
<td>면니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see, look at</td>
<td>보-</td>
<td>보니다</td>
<td>보니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>주-</td>
<td>주니다</td>
<td>주니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>쓰니다</td>
<td>쓰니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>되-</td>
<td>됩니다</td>
<td>됩니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait</td>
<td>기타리-</td>
<td>기타림니다</td>
<td>기타림니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(honorific)</td>
<td>-(으)시-</td>
<td>-(으)시닙니다</td>
<td>-(으)시닙니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>아-ㄹ-</td>
<td>아닙니다</td>
<td>아닙니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not know</td>
<td>모르-</td>
<td>모르닙니다</td>
<td>모르닙니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson Eleven/204*
### Consonant Bases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Formal Statement</th>
<th>Pronounced</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>입-</td>
<td>입습니까</td>
<td>입씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want to</td>
<td>싶-</td>
<td>싶습니까</td>
<td>싶씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receive</td>
<td>받-</td>
<td>받습니까</td>
<td>받씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off</td>
<td>벗-</td>
<td>벗습니까</td>
<td>벗씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seek/find</td>
<td>찾-</td>
<td>찾습니까</td>
<td>찾씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>먹습니까</td>
<td>먹씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polish</td>
<td>닦-</td>
<td>닦습니까</td>
<td>닦씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>읽-</td>
<td>읽습니까</td>
<td>읽씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be young</td>
<td>젊-</td>
<td>젊🖒나다</td>
<td>젊씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear shoes</td>
<td>신-</td>
<td>신⏺다다</td>
<td>신씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit down</td>
<td>앉-</td>
<td>앉습니까</td>
<td>앉씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>놓-</td>
<td>놓습니까</td>
<td>놓씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much/many</td>
<td>많-</td>
<td>많씀니다</td>
<td>많씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be disliked</td>
<td>싫-</td>
<td>싫씀니다</td>
<td>싫씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exist/have</td>
<td>있-</td>
<td>있씀니다</td>
<td>있씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(past)</td>
<td>있었-</td>
<td>있었씀니다</td>
<td>아니씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lack</td>
<td>없-</td>
<td>없습니다</td>
<td>없습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>improve</td>
<td>나-</td>
<td>낳씀니다</td>
<td>나씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot</td>
<td>더워-</td>
<td>더워씀니다</td>
<td>더씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listen, hear</td>
<td>들-</td>
<td>들씀니다</td>
<td>듨씀니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the inclusion of past bases in the list above. The Formal Style endings attach to the Past Base as they would to any other consonant base: -씀니다～씀니까. Thus, 했습니다 did it, 맛습니까 Did you see it?, 들었습니다 heard it, etc.

Formal (honorific) commands are made by adding -요(십시오) to bases that end in consonants and -요(십시오) to bases ending in vowels. -(십시오) is added to the unextended shape of ㄹ-ending vowel bases (that is, to the shape without the -ㄹ-, e.g., 여십시오 Open it!). This ending is often misspelled -(요)(십시오).

Note that the formal honorific command in -(요)십시오 is much more common than the simply formal command -(으)십시오. This latter ending is perceived now as belonging to the authoritative or 하오 style. It tends to be used in controlled fits of anger by indignant individuals displeased with service, etc. It should be used with care or else ironically. You are safe with formal (honorific) commands in -(으)십시오, and here are examples of them:

*Lesson Eleven / 205*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consonant Bases</th>
<th>Vowel Bases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>입으십시오</td>
<td>Wear it!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받으십시오</td>
<td>Receive it!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>벗으십시오</td>
<td>Take it off!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찾으십시오</td>
<td>Look for it!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닦으십시오</td>
<td>Polish it!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽으십시오</td>
<td>Read it!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신으십시오</td>
<td>Put on (shoes)!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉으십시오</td>
<td>Sit down!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>눕으십시오</td>
<td>Put it (there)!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들으십시오</td>
<td>Listen!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구우십시오</td>
<td>Broil it!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The greetings from Lesson One can also be expressed in the formal honorific style.

안녕히 계십시오! and 안녕히 가십시오!

Inherently honorific verbs which already include -시- in their base add -ㅂ시오 to the honorific base.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Formal Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>계시-</td>
<td>계십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주무시-</td>
<td>주무십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡수시-</td>
<td>잡수십시오</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The last verb also appears without -시- (but remains honorific): 잡수- from which is derived 잡수시오 Eat!

Formal suggestions (Let's do it.) are made by adding the ending -웁시다 to consonant bases and -ㅂ시다 to vowel bases (including the unextended shape of -ㅂ시다 extending vowel bases).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Formal Suggestion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>입-</td>
<td>입웁시다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>갑시다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받-</td>
<td>받웁시다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보-</td>
<td>붙시다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Eleven/206
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Formal Suggestion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>앉-</td>
<td>앉으시다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>놀- 놀-</td>
<td>놓시다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구- (으~을)</td>
<td>구으시다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들- (으~을)</td>
<td>들으시다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Let's sit down!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Let's play!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Let's broil it!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Let's listen!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

주의!
Note that many Korean speakers consider it inappropriate, even rude, for a person of lower status to use a suggestion form in -(으)시다 to them. When making a suggestion to somebody with whom you might otherwise use honorifics, you are advised to include the honorific in your suggestion: 가십시다! Let's go! or else use a different strategy entirely.

Since the endings -ㅂ니다, -ㅂ니까, -(십)시오 and -시다 are added to the unextended shape of 떡-extending vowel bases, the resulting forms look as if they might be ordinary vowel bases: thus, from the spelling you can't tell whether 살아요 (from 사- 떡-) lives or 사요. (from 사-) buys. The context will help you tell.

Exercises

Exercise 1: Numerals and Counters

Count quickly in Korean from one to twelve, putting the following words after each number, in order: one table, two years old, three minutes, and so on. Repeat, from fifteen to twenty-nine; from thirty to forty-four; from forty-five to fifty-nine; from sixty to seventy-four; and so on up to ninety-eight.

1. 양말 ______ 천레
2. -살
3. -분 (minutes)
4. -분
5. -평
6. -주
7. -년
8. -잔
9. 고양이 ______ 마리
10. (-) 병
11. -일
12. -권
13. -개월
14. (-) 상자

Lesson Eleven / 207
Exercise 2: Numerals and Counters

Say the following expressions in Korean:

1. 오늘 아침에 ___에 일어났습니다.
   7:00
   8:15 exactly
   7:05
   6:55
   about 6:30

2. 나는 ___ 냈습니다.
   six people
   nine magazines
   three dogs
   eleven buildings
   four cars

3. 나는 보통 ___층에 쓴다.
   11:00
   10:45
   11:15
   9:30
   12:00

4. 나는 ___ 있습니다.
   two dollars
   three newspapers
   ten books
   two dogs
   fifteen pieces of paper

5. 나는 사무실에서 ___ 일쳤습니다.
   two hours
   five days
   fourteen days
   eight and a half hours
   ten minutes

6. 기기서 ___ 있었습니다.
   two days
   ten days
   two weeks
   three months
   six years

7. 나는 ___에 아침을 먹었습니다.
   8:17
   8:47
   7:53
   7:25
   exactly 7:00

Exercise 3: Answer the Questions

Answer these questions in Korean (short answers only and be sure to write out the numbers in 한글).

1. 어떻게 무슨 요일이었습니까?
2. 오늘은 몇 일이에요?
3. 몇 학년이십니까?
4. 크리스마스는 어느 달에 있어요?
5. 생일이 언제예요?
6. 나는 아침 영식시 반에 일을 시작했습니다. 저녁 식사 시까지

Lesson Eleven / 208
Exercise 4: Fill in the Missing Particles and Counters

Here are Korean sentences with some of the particles and/or counters missing. Read each sentence aloud and fill in the blanks with appropriate particles you have learned in this lesson.

1. 해____ [every] 머칠 ____ 늘니까? [i.e., have the day off]
2. 학교는 매일 ____ 시작해요.
3. 수요일 ____ [every] 집에서 쉴어요?
4. 그 상 위에는 과일 ____ [only] 있어요.
5. 오늘 새벽 두시 ____ 세시 반 ____ 이야기 때문에 고생을 많이 했어요.
6. 보통 몇 시간 ____ 주무세요?
7. 사무실에서 아홉 시 반 ____ 네 시 반 ____ 일을 해요.
8. 아침 ____ 몇 시 ____ 일어나요?
9. 아침 뉴스는 아홉 시 ____ 시작해요.
10. 시장에서 오징어 열 ____ 하고 사과 두 ____ 하고 밥주스 ____ 왔습니다.

Exercise 5: Formal Style

Each of the following sentences is a simple statement in the Polite Style. Change each one so that it is four different expressions in the Formal Style: (I) a simple statement; (2) a question; (3) an honorific command; and, (4) a suggestion. Watch out for trick questions!

Lesson Eleven / 209
Part One: Easier Verbs
1. 여기 왔어요.
2. 늦게 떠나요.
3. 가기 있어요.
4. 친구를 기다리요.
5. 여기한테 음식을 줍요.
6. 빨리 시작해요.
7. 술집에 가요.
8. 편지를 씁요.
9. 교회에 나가요.
10. 전화를 받아요.
11. 성분만 줘어요.

Part Two: Trickier Verbs
1. 라디오를 들어요.
2. 택시를 불러요.
3. 사장님한테 전화를 걸어요.
4. 고기를 구워요.
5. 즐겨먹어요.
6. 오늘은 참 더워요.
7. 나는 이 사람을 잘 알아요.
8. 한국 음식은 아주 매워요.
9. 밥이 좀 추워요.
10. 내 동생은 서울에서 살아요.

Exercise 6: English to Korean Translation

Translate each of the following sentences into Korean, using the Formal Style.

1. I brush my teeth three times a day.
2. I am very busy from today.
3. Until when will you stay?
4. Let’s go out for a walk.
5. Everybody is different [every person].
6. When do you wish to meet?
7. I’ve come to look for part-time work.
8. Every student likes that teacher.
9. I stayed in that inn until Saturday.

Lesson Eleven / 210
10. Why are you late?
   Please forgive me.
11. About what time are you going?
12. This year I forgot my wife's birthday.
13. Please give them 10,000 won each.
14. Let's start from nine o'clock.
15. About when are you leaving for Seoul?

Exercise 7: Vocabulary Drill

This is a rapid-fire drill. Call off the Korean for each group below. Use numeral and counter, and, if appropriate, a noun.

1. One person, one building, one o'clock.
2. Two months, two years, two days.
3. Three honored people, three o'clock, three years old.
4. Four dollars, four dogs, four newspapers.
5. Five li, five days, five houses.
6. Six pounds, six floors, six years old.
7. Seven months, seven books, seven years.
8. Eight hours, eight cars, eight minutes.
9. Nine times, nine days, nine cats.
10. Ten cents, ten people, ten o'clock.
11. One o'clock, two o'clock, three o'clock.
12. Two years old, three years old, four years old.
13. Three years, four years, five years.
14. Four people, five people, six people.
15. Five days, six days, seven days.
16. Six sheets of paper, seven sheets of paper, eight sheets of paper.
17. Seven magazines, eight magazines, nine magazines.
18. Eight days, nine days, ten days.
20. Ten times, eleven times, twelve times.
21. Eleven pounds, twelve pounds, thirteen pounds.
22. Twelve cats, thirteen cats, fourteen cats.
23. Thirteen days, fourteen days, fifteen days.
24. Fourteen years old, fifteen years old, sixteen years old.
25. Fifteen months, sixteen months, seventeen months.

*Lesson Eleven / 211*
This lesson introduces how to make suggestions to go and do things. It also covers how to suggest not to do things. Further points covered are how to express likes and dislikes, how to say one feels like doing something or not, and how to ask someone for a date. Finally, we introduce a new way to link two sentences with but, a new way to make sentences negative, and the new particle (이)나.

**Korean Dialogues**

**Dialogue 1**

Chris and Eunice's college-age daughter, Sandy, has recently struck up a relationship with a Korean boy, 석만. They have met at a 커피숍 near campus.

석만  뭐 마실래요?
샌디  아무거나 좋아요. 커피나 한 잔 할까요?
석만  (to 아가씨) 아가씨! 여기 커피 두 잔 만주세요.
        (to Sandy) 그런데 실심하지 않아요? 오늘 우리 뭐 할까요?
샌디  그럼요. 음악회에 갈까요? 아니면 연극 보러 갈까요?
석만  음악회에는 가지 않습니다. 나는 연극은 좋아하지만, 음악은 별로 좋아하지 않아요.
샌디  그래요. 연극은 보러 갈것마다. 나도 연극을 좋아해요.
석만  그런데 나는 한국 연극이 보고 싶어요. 샌디 씨는 어떻게?
샌디  글쎄요. 아직 한번도 못 왔어요. 한번 보시다!
Dialogue 2

Eric is hitting the 커피숍 scene, too. While waiting for 영철 at their favorite hangout, Eric tries his luck with one of the 아가씨 working there.

에릭    아가씨, 저하고 같이 차나 한 잔 하실까요?
아가씨  지금은 좀 바쁜네요.
에릭    그럼, 저녁에는 시간 있으세요? 어디 좀 놀러 가실래요?
아가씨  저녁에도 바쁜네요.
에릭    아, 그래요? 알겠습니다. 실례했습니다. (Eric backs off)
아가씨  잠깐만요! 내일은 바쁘지 않아요.

Notes

비싼데요. I'm afraid I'm busy. The ending is treated in detail in a later lesson.

Reading Passage

우리는 여제 저녁에 한국식당에 갔습니다.
식당에 사람들이 아주 많았습니다.
저는 냉면을 주문했지만 재 천구는 비빔밥을 시켰습니다.
한국음식은 맛이 좋지만 별로 비싸지 않습니다. 그러고 건강에도 좋습니다.
저도 언젠가 한국요리를 배우고 싶습니다.

Lesson Twelve / 213
Vocabulary

New Nouns: Food and Drink

커피  
레드커피  
네트워크  
산수  
델리  
플라  
/datatables/3/index.html

요리  
중국요리  
이탈리요리  
아이스크림  
소주  
양주  
설탕  
설탕을 타는가요?  
설탕을 넣는가요?  
크림  
생크림  
프리마  
홍차  
생맥주  
피자  
사이다  
붕수  
샌드위치  
햄버거  
핫도그  
coffee  
ice coffee  
ice water  
cold noodle dish  
cola  
ice  
cooking, cuisine  
Chinese cuisine  
Italian cuisine  
ice cream  
Korean rice vodka, soju  
whiskey; western spirits  
sugar  
add/put in sugar  
Do you take sugar?  
add/put in sugar  
cream  
fresh cream  
nondairy creamer  
black tea, English tea  
draft beer  
pizza  
a Korean soft drink like Seven-up™  
shaved ice/ice slush, usually with fruit toppings  
sandwich  
hamburger  
hotdog  

Lesson Twelve / 214
Other New Nouns

카페
café (more upscale than a tabang)
양담배
western cigarettes; non-Korean cigarettes
미인
a beautiful woman
아주 미인입니다.
She's a real beauty.
미남
a handsome man
폴
starch; glue
폴(을) 먹이-
starch something [feed it starch]
때
Come any time.
아무때나 오세요.
At that time
그 때에는
a moment
잠깐
Please wait a moment.
잠깐만 기다리십시오.
만화
comics, cartoons (both the written variety and the
TV variety)
꽃
flower(s)
꽃이 터-
flowers bloom, blossom
꽃들이 다 터졌어요.
All the flowers have bloomed.
음악
music
음악회
concert
제즈
jazz
제즈음악
jazz music
영극
play, drama
산
mountain
시골
countryside, the country
바다
the ocean, the sea
비치
the beach
도시
city
교외
suburb(s)
복도
hallway, corridor
순님
customer; guest
마음
mind, heart

Lesson Twelve / 215
광하여 요 
지하철 
형제 
형제가 몇 명이에요?
오빠 
언니

has a good heart, is good natured
subway, underground, metro
brothers (for males); brothers and sisters
How many brothers and sisters do you have?
elder brother (for females)
elder sister (for females)

New Verbs and Related Expressions

특특하다-
결혼(을) 하-
결혼하셨어요?
약혼(을) 하-
약혼했어요.
약혼자
세탁(을) 하-
세탁소
은퇴(를) 하-
타-
자전거타-
택시타-
스키타-
스케이트타-
걸-(~로/가) 겪다
우리아기는 아직 걷지 못해요.
걸어가-
걸어갑니다.
심심하-
파곤하-
녕-
설량울 넣으세요?
테니스(를) 치-
피아노(를) 치-
be bright, intelligent
marry
Are you married?
get engaged
I'm engaged.
fiancé(e)
launder it, do laundry
a laundry, laundromat, cleaners
retire
ride in, ride on
ride a bike
take a taxi
ski, go skiing
skate, go skating
walk
Our baby can't walk yet.
walk, go on foot
Let's go on foot. Let's walk.
be/feel bored
be tired
put in, insert
Do you put sugar in [your coffee]?
play tennis
play the piano

Lesson Twelve / 216
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>영어</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>무거워요</td>
<td>be heavy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가벼워요</td>
<td>be light [in weight]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마치다</td>
<td>finish it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배 (가) 부르다</td>
<td>[stomach] be full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배 불리요</td>
<td>I'm full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아가다</td>
<td>goes back, returns there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아오다</td>
<td>comes back, returns here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>춤(을) 추다</td>
<td>dances (a dance)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어떻게요?</td>
<td>how is it? how about it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서울은 어떻게요?</td>
<td>How do you like Seoul?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서울은 어떻게니까?</td>
<td>[same as above, but Formal Style]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들어오다</td>
<td>come in, enter; return home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이제 늦게 들어왔어요.</td>
<td>I got in late last night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들어가다</td>
<td>go in, enters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋다</td>
<td>be good; be liked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나는 서울이 좋아요.</td>
<td>I like Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋아하다</td>
<td>like it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나는 서울을 좋아해요.</td>
<td>I like Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>싫다</td>
<td>be disliked, distasteful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>싫어하다</td>
<td>dislike it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주문(을) 하다</td>
<td>order [at a restaurant]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>건강하다</td>
<td>be healthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>건강</td>
<td>health</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**New Adverbs**

| 이领导班子?                              | how? in what way?                          |
| 별로 + NEGATIVE                           | (not) particularly                        |
| 감자기                                    | suddenly                                  |
| 별씨                                      | already                                   |
| 인재, 이제                               | now (finally)                             |
| 아니면                                     | Or (sentence-initially)                   |

NOUN A 아니면 NOUN B?

*Lesson Twelve / 217*
How to Get the Attention of Service Personnel

저기요! Hey there! [a bit brusque, or even rude]
저기! [same as above, but even less cultured]
여보세요! Hello! Excuse me!
여기 좀 쫓어요! Say there! Excuse me!
학생! [if the server looks to be a student]

If the Server is Female:

언니! older sister [usually used by young women to
other women, but also used, in jest, by some
cheeky men]
아가씨! Girl! Usually used by men to (presumably)
unmarried women, but some women take offense
now.
누나! older sister [usually used by young men to older
women, especially if it looks like they might be
offended by either 아가씨! or 아줌마!]
아주머니! Ma’am’ [used about or to any woman who looks
married]
아줌마! [same as above but more familiar]

If the Server is Male:

아저씨! Mister [used about or to any man who looks
married]
Lesson Notes

12.1. Verbs: Suspective Form -(滓)

Korean verbs with the suffix -(滓) attached to them are in the SUSPECTIVE form. L-extending vowel bases attach -(滓) to the extended shape: 여-고- open has the suspective form 열滓. The consonant bases that end in -(滓) (i.e., -(滓)-bases) change this to -(滓), so the suspective form of 들- listens is 들滓 pronounced (by automatic change) [ 들滓]. See the examples for -(滓) 실어요 in Lesson Nine.

The suffix -(滓) is a one-shape ending: it is always -(滓), regardless of the kind of base it is attached to. In pronouncing the resulting form you have to follow the usual rules of sound change, as is the case for the -(고) form.

Here is a list of the -(滓) forms for some representative verbs you have learned with the pronunciation (when different) shown between square brackets:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Suspective</th>
<th>Past Suspective</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하-</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>하滓</td>
<td>했滓</td>
<td>해滓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-이-</td>
<td>be...</td>
<td>이滓</td>
<td>이었滓</td>
<td>이어滓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>자滓</td>
<td>갔滓</td>
<td>자滓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주-</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>주滓</td>
<td>주었滓</td>
<td>젖滓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배우-</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>배우滓</td>
<td>배웠滓</td>
<td>배워滓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기다리-</td>
<td>wait</td>
<td>기다리滓</td>
<td>기다렸滓</td>
<td>기다리켜-paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>오滓</td>
<td>왔滓</td>
<td>왜滓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보-</td>
<td>look at</td>
<td>보滓</td>
<td>봤滓</td>
<td>봤滓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉴-</td>
<td>rest</td>
<td>쉴滓</td>
<td>쉰었滓</td>
<td>쉰어滓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>쓰滓</td>
<td>썼滓</td>
<td>써滓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>크-</td>
<td>big</td>
<td>크滓</td>
<td>쳤滓</td>
<td>컷滓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모르-</td>
<td>not know</td>
<td>모르滓</td>
<td>몰랐滓</td>
<td>몰라滓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사-고-</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>살滓</td>
<td>살았滓</td>
<td>사라滓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉-</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>앉滓</td>
<td>앉았滓</td>
<td>안자尕</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>먹滓</td>
<td>먹었滓</td>
<td>먹겨尕</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>좋滓</td>
<td>좋았滓</td>
<td>조아尕</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많-</td>
<td>many</td>
<td>많滓</td>
<td>많았滓</td>
<td>마나尕</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>싫-</td>
<td>be disliked</td>
<td>싫滓</td>
<td>싫었滓</td>
<td>시러尕</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Twelve /219
### 12.2. Uses of the Suspective  -지

#### 12.2.1: Any Base + -지만 **but**

1. **A.** 형제 있으세요?
   *Do you have brothers and sisters?*

   **B.** 언니는 있지만 동생은 없어요.
   *I have an older sister, but no younger siblings.*

2. **A.** 그 집 애들이 공부 잘 해요?
   *Are the children in that family good students?*

   **B.** 딸은 똑똑하지만, 아들은 공부 못 해요.
   *The daughter is bright, but the son isn’t much of a student.*

3. **The day is a hot, but shall we play some tennis or something?**

4. **A.** 아버님이 뭐 하세요?
   *What does your father do?*

   **B.** 대학 교수이셨지만, 이제는 은퇴하셨어요.
   *[He] used to be a college professor, but now he’s retired.*

5. **A.** 저분은 연세가 많으세요?
   *Is that person old?*

   **B.** 나이는 많지만, 마음은 젊어요.
   *He is old in years, but his heart is young.*
Phrases consisting of a verb base plus -지만 mean (such-and-such) but . . . English can retain the Korean phrasing by using though, although: Although I have an older sister . . ., Though the daughter is bright . . . The translation but, of course, is much more natural and conveys the Korean more realistically.

The special phrase 그럴지만 [Literally: It is so, but . . .] is used at the beginning of sentences in the same way English uses however or on the other hand, on the contrary. The expression -지만, then, is a device to put together two sentences that could be said separately, with the second introduced by 그럴지만.

12.2.2: Long Negatives in -지 않아요, -지 못해요

In addition to the short negative forms that you have learned to make by prefixing verbs and adjectives with 안 and 못, there is a more complex type of negative made with:

plain base plus -지 않아요 or plain base plus -지 못해요

6. A. 언니는 요즘 뭐 해요?
   What's your older sister up to these days?

   B. 인제는 우리하고 같이 살지 않아요.
   She doesn't live with us anymore.

7. A. 저집 딸이 똑똑합니까?
   Is the daughter in that family bright?

   B. 딸은 똑똑하지만, 아들은 똑똑하지 못합니다.
   The daughter is bright, but the son isn't bright at all.

8. A. 샌디 씨, 오빠가 결혼했습니까?
   Sandy, is your older brother married?

   B. 아니요, 오빠는 아직 결혼하지 않았습니다.
   No, he isn't (hasn't) married yet.

9. A. 피아노를 치세요?
   Do you play the piano?

   B. 아니요, 피아노를 치지 못 합니다.
   No, I don't know how.
The long negative is a phrase which consists of a plain base plus -(으)~라고 followed by a negative element. The -(으)~ 형태 of the verb. The element following it carries the other meanings for the phrase—negativeness and tense, as well as the meaning carried in its ending (e.g., Polite Style).

The element -(으)~ following the -(으)~ suspetive form in long negative phrases is, in origin, a negative form of the auxiliary base -(으)~ that is, a form of 안 -(으)~ shortened to -(으)~. It is, in effect, a new verb with the base form -(으)~, which behaves in the same way as the base -(으)~ (there are) many.

The past tense of a long negative is made by putting -(으)~ into the past tense. The -(으)~ suspetive form remains unchanged.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Short Negative</th>
<th>Long Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>않-</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>안 않아요</td>
<td>않지 않아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>안 자요</td>
<td>자지 않아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>be good</td>
<td>안 좋아요</td>
<td>좋지 않아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽-</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>안 읽어요</td>
<td>읽지 않아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많-</td>
<td>much/many</td>
<td>안 많아요</td>
<td>많지 않아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>안 먹어요</td>
<td>먹지 않아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>안 와요</td>
<td>오지 않아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>안 써요</td>
<td>쓰지 않아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사-</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>안 살아요</td>
<td>살지 않아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들-</td>
<td>listen</td>
<td>안 들어요</td>
<td>들지 않아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구-</td>
<td>broil</td>
<td>안 구워요</td>
<td>구워지 않아요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Twelve / 222
### Past Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Short Negative</th>
<th>Long Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>앉-</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>안 앉았어요</td>
<td>않지 않았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>안 자어요</td>
<td>자지 않았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>be good</td>
<td>안 좋았어요</td>
<td>좋지 않았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽-</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>안 읽었어요</td>
<td>읽지 않았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많-</td>
<td>much/many</td>
<td>안 많았어요</td>
<td>많지 않았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>안 먹었어요</td>
<td>먹지 않았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>안 왔어요</td>
<td>오지 않았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사-ㄴ-</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>안 살았어요</td>
<td>살지 않았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>안 썼어요</td>
<td>쓰지 않았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들-</td>
<td>listen</td>
<td>안 들었어요</td>
<td>들지 않았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구w-</td>
<td>broil</td>
<td>안 구워졌어요</td>
<td>굽지 않았어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Long negatives with the STRONG NEGATIVE 못 cannot, emphatically not rather than 안 not are made in the same way.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Short Strong Negative</th>
<th>Long Strong Negative</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>앉-</td>
<td>못 앉아요</td>
<td>못 앉았어요</td>
<td>can't sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>못 앉았어요</td>
<td></td>
<td>couldn't sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>[impossible]</td>
<td>[impossible]</td>
<td>is no good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>좋지 못해요</td>
<td>좋지 못했어요</td>
<td>was no good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>못 먹어요</td>
<td>못 먹었어요</td>
<td>can't eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>못 먹었어요</td>
<td></td>
<td>couldn't eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>못 써요</td>
<td>못 썼어요</td>
<td>can't write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>못 썼어요</td>
<td></td>
<td>couldn't write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들-</td>
<td>못 들어요</td>
<td>못 들었어요</td>
<td>can't hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>못 들었어요</td>
<td></td>
<td>couldn't hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구w-</td>
<td>못 구워요</td>
<td>못 구워졌어요</td>
<td>can't broil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>못 구워졌어요</td>
<td></td>
<td>couldn't broil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice with descriptive verbs, long strong negatives have the added nuance of dissatisfaction on the part of the speaker or a sense that the situation was not up to expectation.

*Lesson Twelve / 223*
The short negative with 안 occurs for processive verbs (안 가요 doesn't go), less commonly for adjectives (안 작아요 is not small), and in a slightly different form for the copula (책 [이] 아녀어요 it is not a book). The short negative with 못 occurs only for processive verbs (못 가요 can't go; definitely doesn't go). There is no corresponding form for descriptive verbs or the copula, so that you will never hear 못 좋아요 or 해이 못이에요.

There are long negatives with 못 for both processive verbs (가지 못해요 can't go; definitely doesn't go) and descriptive verbs (작지 못해요 definitely isn't small), though not for the copula. There are no long negatives for the copula at all.

In the examples above the long negatives have the Polite Style endings. Other endings are also possible, when you want to put the negative into some larger sentence, for example, you can put a negative sentence into the construction with -지만 but discussed above.

하지 않지만 [same as 안하지만] doesn't sit but
하지 않았지만 [same as 안았지만] didn't sit but
지지 못하지만 is no good but

Finally, note also that the long negatives are more appropriate for longer verbs (i.e., bases with three or more syllables) and complex verb expressions (e.g., -고 싶어요) that sound awkward or marginal (hence the ) preceded by 안:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Short Negative</th>
<th>Long Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>심심해-</td>
<td>feel bored</td>
<td>안 심심해요</td>
<td>심심하지 않아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹고 싶-</td>
<td>want to eat</td>
<td>안 먹고 싶어요</td>
<td>먹고 싶지 않아요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.2.3. Negative Commands and Suggestions in -지 마- 려-

You have noticed that the polite forms in -어 can be used as a statement (가요 I'm going), a question (가세요? Are you going?), a command (가세요! Please go!), and occasionally even a suggestion (가요! Let's go!).

Lesson Twelve / 224
The negative forms of these can be used as statements (안 가요 or 가지 않아요 I'm not going. 못가요 or 가지 못해요 I can't go) and as questions (안 가세요? or 가지 않으세요? Aren't you going? 못가세요? or 가지 못해요? Can't you go?), but not as commands or suggestions.

*않지 않아요! for Don't sit!
*보지 않아요! for Don't look!

Negative Commands

Instead, you make negative commands (prohibitions) and negative suggestions (dissuasions) with another auxiliary verb 마- 를 - avoid (an L-extending base) added to the suspective -지.

10. Base 들- listen 들지 마세요!
    들지 말어요!
    들지 마십시오!
    Don't listen!

11. Base 없- sit 않지 마세요!
    않지 말아요!
    않지 마십시오!
    Don't sit down!

12. Base 보- see; look 보지 마세요!
    보지 말아요!
    보지 마십시오!
    Don't look!

Negative Suggestions

You have learned the ending for suggestions in the Formal Style, with the shape -(으) 달시다 as in 시작합시다! Let's begin! To make negative suggestions you add this ending to the unextended base of 마- 를- and produce the form 달시다 to use after the suspective -지.

13. 책을 보지 말시다!
    Let's not look at our books!

14. 오늘은 걸어가지 말시다! 시간이 없어요.
    Let's not go on foot today; there's no time.

Lesson Twelve / 225
12.2.4. Negative Honorifics

In speaking about an esteemed person, you can add the honorific element to the long negative in any of several ways.

a. You can make the verb honorific (가요 → 가세요) and then build the negative on this: 가지지 않아요. This is the most common.

b. You can make the verb negative (가요 → 가지 않아요), then build the honorific on that: 가지 않으세요. This is also common.

c. You can make the verb honorific (가요 → 가세요), build a negative on this (가세요 → 가지지 않아요) and build a further honorific on that: 가지지 않으세요. Usually such double honorifics are overdoing things so you would do well to avoid them.

The '못' negative behaves in the same way: 가지지 못해야요, 가지 못하시어요, and 가지지 못하시어요 are all somebody (esteemed) can't/won't go.

12.3. The Particle 도: Noun Agreement

Observe the following sentences:

16. A. 샐리 씨, 다른 반 애들이랑 같이 비치에 안 가요?
Sandy, aren't you going to the beach with the kids in the other class?

B. 못 가요. 돈도 시간도 없으십니다.
I can't go; I have neither the time nor the money.

17. 오빠는 술집에도, 다방에도 안 다닙니다.
My brother doesn't frequent either bars or tabangs.

As you know, the particle 도 often occurs twice in a sentence, showing a kind of tandem agreement between noun phrases (both A and B do; neither A nor B does). In affirmative sentences, the 도 mean both... and. When the verb is negative, they mean neither... nor.
The literal wordings both . . . and and neither . . . nor are actually somewhat formal in English. In conversational style some other phraseology is more usual.

Notice that the phrases with 도 must agree with each other; that is, you are saying the same thing about both of them. To say different things about two noun expressions, you do not use 도.

18. 말은 똑똑하지만 아들은 똑똑하지 못 합니다.
    The daughter is bright, but the son isn’t bright at all.

12.4. Suggestions and Tentative Questions
    with -(으)로 갈까요(요)?

Observe the following sentences:

19. A. 백주를 한잔 할까요?
    How about a beer? [Literally: Shall we do a beer?]

    B. 네, 그립니다.
    Sure, let’s do it.

20. A. 걸어 갈까요?
    How about walking (there)?

    B. 아니오, 택시로 갑시다.
    No, let’s take a taxi.

21. A. 테니스를 칠까요?
    How about playing tennis?

    B. 네, 언제 칠래요?
    Sure. When would you like to play?

22. 설ラン을 넣을까요? 말까요?
    Shall I put sugar in or not?

The ending -(으)로 갈까요 is a two-shape verb ending, the third you have seen (the others were honorific polite -(으)세요 and purposive -(으)리). The -(으)로 preceding the 카 is the prospective modifier, about which you will learn more in Lesson Twenty-three. The little word 카 is a post-modifier—a noun that always has a modifier in front of it—with the meaning [it’s a] question [of] (it is related to the 카 of Formal Style questions in 합니까).

Lesson Twelve / 227
Let us review how verb bases attach to two-shape endings. Vowel-final bases attach to the vowel-less ending of two-shape endings.

가- 갈까요? Shall we go?
보- 봐까요? Shall we look at it?

With L-extending verbs, the ending attaches to the unextended base, but note that this is somewhat camouflaged.

사-르- 살까요? Shall we live?

That is, this form is 사- + -르까요, and not 사-르- + 까요. Contrast this with 뷰-르 verbs.

23. A. 음악이나 들을까요?
   Shall we listen to some music or something?

B. 네, 어떤 음악을 좋아해요?
   Sure. What kind of music do you like?

Consonant-final bases attach to the shape with initial -으-

찾- 찾을까요? Shall I look for it?
받- 받을까요? Shall I receive it?
입- 입을까요? Shall I put it on?
들- 들을까요? Shall I listen to it?
구- 구울까요? Shall I broil it?

The only tricky point to remember here concerns w- verbs, for which you learned the following rule (repeated from section 8.2.2).

In other words, the final w of a w- verb base plus the initial -으 of a two-shape verb ending combine to yield the vowel 우. Another example:

다 w- + -울까요? → 다울까요?
   Do you suppose it will be hot?

Lesson Twelve / 228
The 할까요? pattern makes future or tentative questions and has two distinct usages.

a. In the examples above, the questions are usually directed to the first person 희. Shall we do this-and-so? Shall I do such-and-such? or How about doing this-and-so? These mean about the same thing as suggesting let’s do this-and-so. Sometimes these questions are rhetorical (not expecting an answer). You can only use processive bases with this meaning.

b. The second usage refers to third-persons (he, she, it, they), and translates as Do you suppose? or I wonder: does/is? For this, you can use either a processive or a descriptive base.

24. 삼자가 너무 무거울까요?
   Do you suppose the box is too heavy?

25. 박 선생님이 지금 교실에 계실까요?
   Do you suppose Dr. Pak is in the classroom now?

In this second usage, the pattern can also be used on the past base, as follows.

26. A. 벌써 왔을까요?
    Do you suppose he’s already come?
   
   B. 네. 방금 복도에서 뵐어요.
   Yes. I saw him just a moment ago in the corridor.

Here are some more examples of how 할~을 verbs attach to this two-shape ending.

27. 그게 너무 어려울까요? (어려울-)
    Do you suppose that is too difficult?

28. 내일 더울까요? (더울-)
    Do you suppose tomorrow will be hot?

29. 어머니: 불고기를 좀 더 구울까요? (구울-)
    Shall I broil some more pulgogi?
   
   아버지: 됐어요. 배 불리요.
   It’s OK. I’m full.
12.5. Thinking of Doing... with -(으)르 까 해요.

Another construction involving 까 is -(으)르 까 해요, which means is thinking of [do]ing thus-and-so, as follows.

30. A. 내일 뭐 할니까?
   What are you doing tomorrow?

   B. 테니스를 친가 합니다.
   I'm thinking of playing tennis.

31. A. 음악회에는 어떻게 갈까요?
   How are you getting to the concert?

   B. 지하철로 갈까요 해요.
   I'm thinking of going by subway.

32. A. 요즘 피곤해요?
   Are you tired lately?

   B. 네, 시골에 좀 쉬러 갈까요 해요.
   Yes, I'm thinking of going to the countryside for a rest.

We see that the verb 해요 besides meaning does and sometimes (as an auxiliary) is, also means thinks. This construction can be regarded as the equivalent of I'm thinking, shall I VERB? Here are some more examples.

33. A. 점심은 언제 먹어요?
   When are you eating lunch?

   B. 두 시쯤에 먹을까 해요.
   I'm thinking of eating at around two o'clock.

34. A. 아이들 학교가 재밌습니까?
   Is the kids' school OK?

   B. 나쁘지는 않지만, 다른 학교에 보내드려 합니다.
   It's not bad, but I'm thinking of sending them to another school.
12.6. The Adverb 뜨, Particle 도, and Pseudo-particle (이)나

12.6.1. Adverb 뜨 Versus Particle 도

The adverb 뜨 has the same general type of meaning as the particle 도 and, again, too. However, since 뜨 is an adverb it is independent and does not have to be attached to a noun expression, unlike the particle 도. The adverb 뜨 at the beginning of a sentence means and also or and furthermore. You have also had 그리고 in this meaning, and you can start a sentence with both of them: 그리고 도 And moreover. Notice the similarity between 도 the particle and 뜨 the adverb in such sentences as the following.

35. 여기에 종이도 있습니다.
    There's some paper here, too.

저기에 종이(는)도 있습니다.
    There's still some more paper over there.

An occasional accident of sound change may even make 도 and 뜨 sound the same in some environments (책 도 here).

36. 여기에 책도 있습니다.
    There are books here, too.

책 (pause) 도 있어요.
    There are some yet more books over there.

12.6.2. The Particle (이)나

The particle (이)나, like the copula, has two shapes. After nouns ending in a consonant, it has the shape 이나. After nouns ending in a vowel, it loses the 이 and has the shape 나. The particle (이)나 has several meanings, grouped into three headings.

1. about/approximately
2. generalizer
3. or

Lesson Twelve / 231
1. -(이)나: about/approximately

Korean is often less precise about numbers than English is. Thus, such words as -(이)나 (usually written 나 after vowels) are often used with numerical expressions (especially in questions) to make them sound more vague and hence less abrupt.

37. A. 몇 시간이나 걸립니까?
   About how many hours does it take?

   B. 한 세 시간 반 걸립니다.
   It takes about three and a half hours.

38. A. 몇 개나 살까요?
   About how many should we buy?

   B. 스폰 개밥 샀습니다.
   Let's buy about twenty.

Note in (38 A) above that -(이)나 replaces the object particle; i.e., one cannot say *몇 개를 이나 or *몇 개나를. In this respect, -(이)나 behaves like 도.

2. Question word + -(이)나: Generalizer any/every

When used after certain question words, -(이)나 removes the interrogative meaning and generalizes the scope of the word.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(이)나</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>누구</td>
<td>who?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무엇</td>
<td>what?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>언제</td>
<td>when?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어디</td>
<td>where?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어디서</td>
<td>where?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어느 것</td>
<td>which...?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>누구나</td>
<td>anyone; everyone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무엇이나</td>
<td>anything; everything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>언제나</td>
<td>any time; all the time; always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어디나</td>
<td>anywhere; everywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어디서나</td>
<td>[happening] anywhere; everywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어느 것이나</td>
<td>anything; either [thing]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

39. A. 누구를 부릴까요?
   Whom shall we invite?

   B. 누구나 좋아요.
   Anybody is fine.

Lesson Twelve / 232
40. A. 주말에 어디에 갈까요?
   Where shall we go (this) weekend?

   B. 어디나 좋아요.
   Anywhere is fine.

41. 우리 오빠는 언제나 어디서나 노래를 불러요.
   My older brother is always singing wherever he goes.

42. A. 어느 것을 살까요?
   Which one shall we buy?

   B. 어느 것이나 좋아요.
   Either one is fine.

A similar meaning can be obtained with the word 아무, which by itself means anyone, anybody, but in front of another noun means any, any old.

아무나          anyone, anybody
아무 것이나      anything
아무 때나        any time
아무 데나         any place
아무 때서나       [happening at] any place; from any place
아무 책이나       any book (at all)

43. 저기는 아무나 못 가요.
   Not just anybody can go over there.

44. A. 월 드릴까요?
   What can I get for you?

   B. 아무거나 주세요.
   Give me any old thing (anything at all).

45. A. 언제 놀러 갈까요?
   When shall we come over? (When would you like us to come [to play]?)

   B. 아무 때나 오세요 - 별로 바빠지 않아요.
   Come any time. I'm not particularly busy.

46. 아무 데서나 담배 피우지 마세요!
   Don't just smoke anywhere you please!
47. A. 어떤 꽃을 살까요?
   What kind of flowers should we buy?

   B. 아무 꽃이나 좋아요! 빨리 사세요!
   Any old flowers are OK! Hurry up and buy some!

The only way to make a negative version of this type of expression is with the 아무 pattern
followed by 도 instead of (이)나. Note that the verb must be in the negative.

아무도  nobody; nobody at all
아무 것도  nothing; nothing at all
아무 데도  nowhere; not any place
아무 데서도  nowhere, not from anywhere;
not [happening at] any place

48. A. 파티에는 사람 많이 왔어요?
   Did a lot of people come to the party?

   B. 아무도 안 왔어요.
   Nobody came.

49. A. 주말에는 뭐 했어요?
   What did you do over the weekend?

   B. 아무 것도 안 했어요.
   Nothing at all.

50. 애기 때문에, 주말에는 아무 데도 못 갈니다.
   Because of the baby, we can’t go anywhere on weekends.

51. 그 책은 아무 데에서도 안 팔습니다.
   They don’t sell that book anywhere.

3. (이)나 meaning or: Two Related Patterns

Sub-pattern 1: Noun₁(이)나 Noun₂ meaning Noun, or Noun₂

The particles 도 and (이)나 are alike in some ways. You have just seen (이)나 in its
meaning about, approximately and as a generalizer of questions words (누구나 anybody at
all). Like 도, (이)나 can be used twice in a sentence to show tandem agreement, but (이)
나 shows freedom or indifference of choice.

52. 노트도, 연필도 안 돼요.
   Neither notebooks nor pencils will do.
53. 노트나, 연필이나 다 됩니다.
   Either notebooks or pencils will do.

Whereas 도 is definite, (이)나 is vague or unspecific.

54. 이것도 저것도 다 좋습니다.
   Both this one and that one are OK.

55. 이것이나 저것이나 다 좋습니다.
   Either this one or that one is OK.

The particle (이)나, then, when it is used after each of two (or more) comparable noun expressions, means (either) . . . or ( . . . or yet something else).

Sub-pattern 2: NOUN(이)나 meaning NOUN or something, NOUN or the like

When (이)나 follows just a single noun, it still retains the sense of indifference to choice (even slightly denigrating the choice), but is best translated in English as or something.

56. A. 영화나 봐요?
   Shall we see a movie or something?

   B. 네, 그릴시다.
   Yes, let's do that.

57. A. 술이나 마실까요?
   Shall we have something [alcoholic] to drink [or something]?

   B. 아니오, 아이스크림이나 먹을시다.
   No, let's eat some ice-cream or something.

12.7. More Ways To Say or

The phrase 또는 means or (else) between plain noun expressions.

58. 커피 또는 홍차
   coffee or (else) black tea

Another way to do the same thing is to link two words with the word 아니면 or.

59. 커피 아니면 홍차
   coffee or (else) black tea

At the beginning of a sentence, the phrase 또는 also has this contrastive idea, as in the following sentence.

Lesson Twelve / 235
60. 또는 음악회에도 가지 않았어요.
   Nor (on the other hand) have I been to any concerts either [and I do like concerts].
   [Background: I haven't been to a single movie this fall, hating them as I do.]

The word 아니라면 can also begin a sentence, but has the meaning of Or else.

61. 지하철로 갈까요? 아니면, 택시로 갈까요?
   Shall we take the subway? Or (else) shall we take a taxi?

또는, (이)나, and 아니라면 thus all translate as or. (이)나 and 아니라면 accept either choice
indifferently where 또는 excludes one of the choices, by contrasting it with the accepted
choice.

12.8. The wanna Form in -(으)ㄹ래(요)

Observe the following exchange:

62. A. 꼭 마실래요?
   What do you feel like drinking?

   B. 나는 커피를 마실래요.
   I think I'd like a coffee.

A plain processive base followed by -(으)ㄹ래요 means something like I feel like VERBing,
I wanna VERB, I've a mind to VERB, I'd prefer to VERB (if I had a choice), I'd like to
VERB. L-extending bases attach the full ending-ㄹ래요 onto the unextended form, so that
we get 안 알래요, I'd rather not know (about it) [base 아- plus -ㄹ래요]. The pattern
expresses a weak intention, inclination, and/or desire. It is used only in first person statements
and second person questions, as in the exchange above. This is a highly colloquial form,
though not quite as informal as English wanna (we have glossed the pattern this way
because, like English wanna, the Korean form is a contraction in origin.)

63. A. 소주로 할래요, 양주로 할래요?
   Would you prefer soju or whiskey?

   B. 맥주 마실래요.
   I think I'd prefer beer.
64. A. 좋아요?
   Would you like to dance?

B. 아니요, 좋아하지 못해요.
   No, I can’t dance.

In general, the form in -(으)래요 has the force of a gentle suggestion and implies a choice. You should use this form rather than -고 싶어요 in questions, since the latter forces the other person into a yes or no answer.

12.9. Meanings for 좋아요 and Related Words

The descriptive verb 좋아요 means (1) is good or fine or all right and, (2) is liked. In the first meaning, only one noun phrase is involved, but in the second meaning, it often has two subjects, or else a topic and a subject.

65. 이것이 좋아요.
   This is good.

66. 나는 이것이 좋아요.
   I like this. [Literally: As for me, this is liked.]

The processive verb phrase 좋아해요 means finds it good or likes it and takes direct objects.

67. 나는 이것을 좋아해요.
   I like this.

This phrase also has the emotional connotation [someone] is happy (glad) which is commonly used in speaking of someone else, but sometimes for special emphasis to mean I am happy/glad. Notice the negative forms of each of these.

68. 좋지 않아요
   [something] isn’t good or isn’t liked

69. 좋아하지 않아요
   [someone] doesn’t like [something]

The opposites are comparable expressions.

좋아요  is liked  싫어요  is disliked
좋아해요  likes it  싫어해요 dislikes it

Lesson Twelve / 237
Notice that in English the meanings of the negative phrase 좋아하지 않아요 doesn't like and the affirmative phrase 싫어해요 dislikes usually fall together as the phrase doesn't like. The Korean 좋아하지 않아요 implies simple absence of fondness, without actual aversion. 싫어해요, on the other hand, implies an active or positive dislike. You can, of course, make a negative out of the dislike phrases too: 싫지 않아요 I don't dislike it, 싫어하지 않아요 he doesn't dislike it.

Exercises

Exercise 1: Manipulating -지만

Here is a series of sentence pairs. The first sentence ends in -어요 and the second begins with 그렇지만. Put the sentences together into one so that the first clause ends with -지만 but... Then translate the new sentence. For example, the first will be 탭시를 불렀지만 아직 안 왔어요. I called a taxi, but it hasn't come yet.

1. 탭시를 불렀어요, 그렇지만 아직 안 왔어요.
2. 아기는 자요, 그렇지만 아미니는 안 주무세요.
3. 음악회는 가치 안 보아요, 그렇지만 연극은 가요.
4. 내 나이는 여든삼십이에요. 그렇지만 오십년 더 살고 싶어요.
5. 점심때까지 일을 마치고 싶었어요. 그렇지만 손님이 갑자기 오셨어요.
6. 맥주는 좋아요. 그렇지만 소주는 싫어요.
7. 지금 집지를 보고 싶지 않아요.

그렇지만 만화는 보고 싶어요.
양주는 비싸요. 그렇지만, 소주는 싸요.
9. 우리 오빠는 결혼했어요. 그렇지만 아직도 대학에 다니네요.
10. 선생님을 만나고 싶어요. 그렇지만 시간이 없어요.
11. 돈은 있어요. 그렇지만 사고 싶지 않아요.
12. 나는 영화구경을 가끔 가요.
그렇지만 동생은 잘 가지 않아요.
13. 나는 돈이 적어요. 그렇지만 친구는 많아요.
14. 길 사진은 아들이 없어요. 그렇지만 딸은 있어요.
15. 오빠는 일찍 왔어요. 그렇지만 동생은 늦게 왔어요.
16. 그 분의 아버님은 우체국에서 일을 하세요. 그렇지만 편지지를 많이 안 쓰세요.
17. 나는 전에는 학생이었어요. 그렇지만 지금은 선후생이에요.
18. 내 약혼자는 나한테 꽃을 샀어요. 그렇지만 나는 꽃을 좋아하지 않아요.
19. 어머니가 부산에 사세요. 그렇지만 가끔 서울에 한 번씩 오세요.
20. 우리집은 크지 않아요. 그렇지만 좋아요.
21. 아침마다 수영을 해요. 그렇지만, 건강하지 못합니다.
22. 학생들은 많아요. 그렇지만 학교는 작아요.

Exercise 2: Suggestions and Tentative Questions

Here are a series of sentences that end in -어요. Change each sentence to the suggestion/tentative question pattern in -(으)르가요 and then translate each resulting sentence. Some will translate as Shall we? and others as Do you suppose? For example, the first will be 집에 돌아가요? Shall we go home?

1. 집에 돌아가요?
2. 그 책을 읽어요?
3. 출을 켜요?
4. 같이 코트를 벗어요.
5. 걸어요.
6. 음악회에 갈까요?
7. 소주를 시켜요? 아니면 생맥주를 시켜요?
8. 언니가 그 남자와 결혼해요.
9. 그 이야기를 다시 한번 들어요?
10. 어머니가 백화점에서 어떤 옷을 사요?
11. 김 선생님은 여자 친구하고 같이 오세요?
12. 한국 옷을 입어요?

Lesson Twelve / 239
Exercise 3: The wanna Form

Here is a series of sentences that end in -어요. Change each sentence to the Do you wanna.
. .? question form with -(으)ㄹ래요? and then translate each resulting sentence. For example, the first will be Do you feel like drinking?

1. 술 마셔요.
2. 테니스 하세요.
3. 내일 극장에 가요.
4. 한국 식당을 잊어요.
5. 우리 집에 가요.
6. 한국 노래를 들어요.
7. 햄버거나 빵을 먹어요.
8. 한국 닭배를 피우세요? 양담배를 피워요?
9. 학교 식당에서 나를 기다려요.
10. 토요일에 은행 앞에서 만나요.
11. 이게 험이 들어요. 좀 도와줘요.
12. 내일 떠나요? 아니면 모레 떠나요?

Exercise 4: Long Negatives

Each of the following Korean sentences means (someone) does something. Change the verb expression so that the meaning is (someone) doesn't do something, using the longer way of saying does not do. Then translate the sentence. For example, the first will be Her sister did not study at school.

1. 그 여자의 언니는 학교에서 공부를 하지 않았어요.
2. 이 상자는 여자에게는 너무 무거워요?
3. 애들 때문에 피곤하셔요?
4. 저는 일본서 왔어요.
5. 저를 많이 기다렸어요?
6. 언니는 담배를 피워요.
7. 나는 한국말을 한국에서 배웠어요.

Lesson Twelve / 240
8. 저 아저씨는 부자 동네에서 살아요.
9. 아들도 힘들어요.
10. 아이들은 날마다 학교에 가요.
11. 그 여자는 그 남자와 약혼하고 싶어해요.
12. 수미 씨는 오파와 같이 라디오를 들어요.
13. 일요일에 나는 성당에 나가요.
14. 커피에 설탕이랑 크림을 타요?

Exercise 5: Negative Commands

Here are a series of honorific polite commands in -(으)세요. Convert them to negative commands and translate the resulting sentences.

1. 책을 보세요.
2. 여자 친구를 만나세요.
3. 술을 많이 마시세요.
4. 남비를 피우세요.
5. 그 의자에 앉으세요.
6. 얼음을 넣으세요.
7. 설탕을 탑세요.
8. 눈게 둘러오세요.
9. 남마다 술집에 다니세요.
10. 그 남자랑 춤을 추세요.
11. 모레 뜯나세요.
12. 걸어가세요.
13. 혼자 다니세요.
14. 내년에는 은퇴하세요.
15. 그 사람한테 전화번호를 주세요.
16. 이 샐쓰에 풀을 먹이세요.
17. 이 바지를 세탁하세요.

Exercise 6: English to Korean Translation

Translate the following sentences into Korean. Use long negatives wherever possible.

1. Don't go to either tabangs or pubs.
2. I didn't want to eat an ice cream, but my brother gave me one.
3. Is it already 7 o'clock (PM)? Then don't stay here; go home.
4. I went back to Korea last year, but I didn't like it.
5. Please put some sugar in this coffee.
6. Do you feel like a whisky or soju?
7. I don't drink alcohol. Don't you drink, either!
8. A. Let's play baseball.
   B. I don't feel like it (wanna). I feel like resting upstairs.

Lesson Twelve / 241
9. My older brother doesn’t come home early nowadays.
10. Neither my son nor my daughter are very bright.

**Exercise 7: Korean to English Translation**

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 난 선생님은 음악을 좋아하지 않으세요. 저희 집 사람들 안 좋아해요.
2. 저는 공원에서 산보내 활가 합니다.
3. 이 물건들은 아주 무거워요. 좀 도와주실래요?
4. 집에는 언제 들어왔어요?
5. 불고기를 맛이 있게 구웠지만, 아무도 먹지 않았어요.
6. 어제 우리집 개가 아버지를 갑자기 물었어요.
7. 이 크림은 비싸지만, 맛은 하나도 없어요. 먹지 말아요!
8. 김 선생님은 매우같이 예쁘세요.
9. A. 클래스 마실래요? 아니면 냉수 마실래요?
    B. 몸 다 쉬어요. 맥주 한병 주실래요?
10. 오늘 저녁에 부산에 갈래 해요. 같이 갈래요?
11. 전화를 여러번 걸었지만, 아무도 받지 않았어요.
12. A. 왜 살래요?
    B. 아무것도 사고 싶지 않아요.
13. 한국말 잘 하십니다. 몇 년이나 배우셨어요?
14. 심심해요. 다방에나 갈래요?
15. A. 양주나 소주는 건강에 나쁠까요?
    B. 금제요. 마시지 마다.
아까 전화하니까, 아무도 받지를 않아요.

This lesson centers on families and kinship relations. We introduce new patterns meaning *since/because* and *as soon as*, two new honorific particles, PROBABLE FUTURES in -으(으)로 가세요, the *is doing* pattern with -고 있어요 and RHETORICAL RETORTS in -지 않아요.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Eric and 미스 박, the waitress from the 커피 숍, have met at a tabang for their '데이트'.

에릭: 어디 다른 테이로 갈까요? 아니면 여기 그날 있ᐖ요?
미스 박: 밥이 추우니까 여기 그날 있어요.
에릭: 미스 박, 형제가 많으세요?
미스 박: 오빠 한 명하고 언니 한 명 있어요.
에릭: 돈 다 결혼하셨어요?
미스 박: 오빠만 결혼했어요. 아들도 하나 있어요. 언니는 아직 미혼이지만, 대학을 졸업하자 마자 결혼할 거예요. 에릭 씨는 가족이 어떻게 되어요?
에릭: 나는 어머니방 아버지방 여동생이 하나 있습니다. 동생 이름은 선탈어요.
미스 박: 설래지만, 아버지께서는 될 하세요?
에릭: 무역회사에 다니고 계세요.
미스 박: 아버지께서 연세가 많으신가요?
에릭: 네, 이번 구월에 선 삶이 되세요.
미스 박: 아이, 아직 좀으시겠어요?!
Dialogue 2

Back at Chris Murphy’s office, Chris has asked Miss Lee to get Mr. Nam, a colleague, on the phone.

크리스
南北포함 통화했어요?

미스 리
아, 전화하니까, 아무도 받지 않을 거야.

크리스
아, 맞아요. 오늘은 안 계실 거예요. 급요일이니까, 골프를 치고 계실 거예요.

Reading Passage

오늘은 일요일입니다.
그래서 가족들이 모두 집에 있습니다.
할아버지께서는 보통 공원에서 운동을 하시지만, 오늘은 비가 쏟아지고 있으니까 못 나가십니다.
아버지께서는 마루에서 무손 스포츠 프로를 보고 계십니다.

일요일에는 일어나시자 마자 텔레비를 보고 싶어 하십니다.
어머니께서는 부엌에서 설까이를 하십니다.
나는 네 방에서 친구 전화를 기다리고 있습니다. 전화가 오자 마자 친구를 만나러 나갈 겸니다.
Vocabulary

Family and Relatives

식구
식구가 몇 명이세요?

사촌
사촌누나(누님)
사촌형(형)
사촌언니
사촌동생

삼촌
외삼촌
큰아버지
작은아버지
이모
이모부
고모
고모부
아드님
따님
아저씨
 아주머니
 아주머

members of the family
How many people in your family?
cousin
cousin (boy's older female cousin)
cousin (boy's older male cousin)
cousin (girl's older female cousin)
cousin (boy or girl's younger cousin)
uncle (on father's side)
uncle (on mother's side)
uncle (father's elder brother)
uncle (father's younger brother)
aunt (mother's sister)
uncle (mother's sister's husband)
aunt (father's sister)
uncle (father's sister's husband)
son (honorific)
daughter (honorific)
uncle (generic); mister
aunt (generic); ma'am
auntie (casual for 아주머니)

Brothers and Sisters

형(형)
남매
저 두 사람은 남매예요.
자매
누나
남동생
여동생

elder brother (for males)
brother and sister
Those two are brother and sister.
sisters
elder sister (for males)
younger brother
younger sister

In-laws

장인
장인여론
장모

father-in-law (for males)
father-in-law (elegant)
mother-in-law (for males)
시아버지
시어머니
시부모
시댁
장인장모
사위
미느리
father-in-law (for females)
mother-in-law (for females)
parents-in-law (for females)
esteeemed house/home of the parents-in law (for females)
parents-in-law (for males)
son-in-law
daughter-in-law

Other
조부모
할아버지
외할아버지
grandparents
grandfather
grandfather (on mother's side, if you need to specify this)
grandmother
grandmother (on mother's side, if you need to specify this)
grandchild(ren)
grandson
granddaughter
(same)
nephew
niece
children (honorific)
Do you have children?
children (honorific, interchangeable with 자녀분) relative

손주
손자
손녀
손녀딸
조카
조카딸
자녀분
자녀분이 있으세요?
자녀분 통
자녀분 통
Verbal Expressions
드리-
성것이
생활이(를) 하-
격장
격장(을) 하-
데이트
데이트(를) 하-
give (to somebody esteemed)
dirty dishes
wash the dishes, do the dishes
a worry; worries
worry
a date
go on a date
날씨가 흐려요.
비가 쏟아지고 있어요.
눈이 오는 날에 운동을 하니 운동장에 있어요.
골프장에 가서 오늘 하시겠어요?
해방절에 맞았습니다.
이혼했어요.
卒業하고 런던대학교를 졸업했어요.
네타이에 메일 보내고 콘텐츠에 키쓰고 버리고 싶어요.

Nouns
숙제
-데
스포츠
프로
프로 야구

become/get cloudy
The weather has become cloudy/clouded over.
rain comes (it rains)
It is pouring down/It is raining buckets.
snow comes (it snows)
sports; exercise
do sports; exercise
sports stadium
golf
play golf
(is) unmarried
(somebody esteemed) says; humbly say
humbly say, say to somebody esteemed
Shall I tell the boss?
be late
be strange, odd
go through; (a language/message) is understood,
gets across
be cold
be close, nearby
(a child) be young; be childish
be right, correct; hit the mark
Yes, that’s right.
get divorced
is divorced
graduate
I graduated from the University of London.
(not with 에서)
put on/wear a tie
wear contact lenses
throw it away

homework
a place

sports (especially in the newspaper or on TV)
pro (sports); TV program
professional baseball

Lesson Thirteen / 247
痉挛 프로

남자

마루

진지

할아버지 - 진지 잡수세요.

장마

장마(가) 지 -

한국은 여름에 장마가 집니다.

봄

여름

가을

겨울

군인

선교사

돌다

부어

Adverbs

아까

모두

그냥

맛 없지만 그냥 먹으면서.

만호: (What should I bring to the potluck?)

수진: 그냥 오세요.

이렇게

그렇게

그렇게 어렵지는 않아요.

저렇게

멀리

멀리 가지 마세요.

멀리셔

그러니가

아마

아마도

a television comedy show
weather
the living area in a Korean-style apartment/house;
wooden floor
cooked rice (honorific equivalent of 밥)
Grandfather, the meal is served.
Korea’s rainy season, Korea’s seasonal rains
the rainy season sets in
The rainy season in Korea comes in the summer.
spring
summer
autumn, fall
winter
soldier, serviceman
missionary
both, both of them [Literally: all two]
kitchen

a short while ago; just a moment ago
all, everyone
just (as one/it is), without doing anything; just
It doesn’t taste like much, but let’s eat (it as it is).

Just come anyway (as you are, without anything).
in this way, like this
in that way, like that; so
It’s not so difficult.
in that way
far
Don’t go far.
from a distance
So, what I mean to say is; So, what you’re saying is
maybe, probably (often used with -(으)르게
and -(으) 갖고)
maybe, probably (but a bit more tentative than just
아마)
Lesson Notes

13.1. Verbs: the Sequential Form - (으)니(까)

Verbs have a sequential form, which is made by attaching the ending -(으)니(까) to them: -(으)니(까) after consonants, -(으)니(까) after vowels. The ending may also be attached to past bases to make past-tense forms (-(으)니(까)), and to the probable future in -(으)로 거예요: -(으)로 거니(까) (see section 13.4 in this lesson for more on the probable future). For example:

- 하니(까)  as/since [he] does
- 했으니(까) as/since [he] did
- 할 거니(까) as/since [he] will do
- 먹으니(까) as/since [he] eats
- 먹었으니(까) as/since [he] ate
- 먹을 거니(까) as/since [he] will eat

The sequential form in -(으)니(까) is called the extended sequential and is widely used in colloquial speech. It can also be heard as -(으)니간 or -(으)니까는 with the particle 온/은 or its abbreviation.

There is also a short sequential form, which is obtained by dropping the -(으)니(까) (-كني) or -(으)니(까), i.e., -(으)니. This short sequential form is bookish or literary/poetic, and does not occur much in colloquial Korean.

13.1.1. -(으)니(까) As, Since, Because

The sequential ending -(으)니(까) can mean as or since or because or in view of the fact that. In this usage, the second clause often contains a suggestion or a command. Here are some examples.

1. 시간이 늦었으니(가) 편리 갈시다.  
   *It has become late, so let's hurry.*

2. 너무 작으니(가) 버릴시다.  
   *It's too small; let's throw it away.*

3. 오늘은 좀 바쁘니(가) 그 일은 내일 합니다.  
   *I'm rather busy today, so let's take care of that matter tomorrow.*

4. 오늘 저녁은 박 선생님댁에서 먹을 거니(가) 많이 잡수시지 마세요.  
   *We're going to eat at Mr. Pak's house tonight, so don't eat much (now).*

Lesson Thirteen / 249
5. 버스에 사람이 많으니가, 걸어가시다.
   *There are too many people on the bus, so let's walk.*

6. 일이 끝났으니가, 밥주냐 한 잔 할까요?
   *Since the work is finished, shall we have a beer or something?*

7. 시간이 더 됐으니가, 빨리 끝낼시다.
   *Time is up, so let's finish quickly.*

8. 한국말을 잘 모르니가, 천천히 말씀하세요.
   *I don't know Korean very well, so please speak slowly.*

13.1.2. -(으)니-(가) When . . ., [I realized or discovered . . .]

Both sequential forms, but particularly the extended sequential, also have the meaning when in the past [something happened], then [I found/realized/discovered], indicating a close sequence of actions. In this usage, the sequential ending cannot appear on a past base. In addition, the subject of the -(으)니-(가) clause is usually the speaker (I), and the subject of the following clause is something or someone different. Here are some examples.

9. 전화를 하니까, 받지 않았어요.
   *When I telephoned, they didn't answer [literally: receive it].*

10. 내가 가니까 그 사람이 신문을 보고 있었어요.
    *When I went [to see him], he was reading the newspaper.*

11. 멀리서 보니간 학교 같습니다.
    *When I look at it from a distance, it looks like a school.*

12. 방에 들어 가니까, 장인어른이 신문을 보고 계셨어요.
    *When I entered the room, [I found that] my father-in-law was reading the newspaper.*

13. 한국말을 공부하니까, 너무 재미 있어요.
    *Now that I study Korean, I find it is incredibly fun.*

14. 한국사람을 사향하니까, 한국음식도 맛이 있어요.
    *Now that I [am in] love [with] a Korean, Korean food tastes good, too.*

15. 영국에 오니까, 날씨가 너무 안 좋아요.
    *Now that I'm here in England, I find that the weather is really not very good.*
13.2. Honorifics: Nouns and Particles

When you are talking in Korean about someone who has relatively high social status—a government official, a foreign guest, a minister, a teacher—you use some special forms called honorifics. Remember that when you are talking to someone of high status, you use either the Polite Style or the Formal Style, depending on which endings you put on the verbs at the end of sentences. Honorifics are also used frequently to refer to the second person. This is a way of honoring your listener, as well as showing that you mean you without actually using a pronoun. There are several kinds of honorifics.

13.2.1. Nouns

Some English nouns are translated by two different Korean nouns, one neutral and the other honorific:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>집</td>
<td>house, home</td>
<td>덕</td>
<td>esteemed house or home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나이</td>
<td>(years of) age</td>
<td>연세</td>
<td>age of someone esteemed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사랑</td>
<td>person</td>
<td>분</td>
<td>an esteemed person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밥</td>
<td>cooked rice</td>
<td>진지</td>
<td>same, for an esteemed person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아이</td>
<td>children</td>
<td>자녀분</td>
<td>same, for an esteemed person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>자제분</td>
<td>same, for an esteemed person</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some kinship terms also have separate honorific forms; see section 13.3 below.

13.2.2. Particles

The Particle 계: Honorific 에게/한테

The particle 계 is honorific; it means the same thing as 에게 and 한테, to [a person], but is used only after nouns denoting a specially honored person.

아버지 계, to [esteemed] father

The Particle 께서(는): Honorific 이/가

The combination 께서 marks as subject an esteemed person and is the honorific equivalent to the two-shape subject particle 이/가.
16. 선생님께서 오셨어요.
   *The [esteemed] teacher came.*

The honorific subject marker *께서* can be used either alone or followed by the topic particle *는*:

17. 아버님께서는 무엇을 하세요?
   *What does your father do?*

The honorific particle *께서* is used only for persons. Here are some examples of *께서* and *는*:

18. 할머님께서 편지를 써셨습니다.
   *I wrote Grandmother a letter.*

19. 교수님께서 저한테 부탁하셨어요.
   *My professor asked a favor of me.*

20. 할아버지께서 자동차가 없으세요?
    *Doesn't your grandfather have a car?*

21. 아버님께서댁에 안 계세요?
    *Isn't your father at home?*

22. 사장님께 연락했습니다가?
    *Did you get in touch with the company president?*

### 13.3. Kinship Terms

The Korean words for relatives can be divided into two types: those for which some of the words differ according to the gender of the person (that is, whether you are speaking about a man's brother or a woman's brother), and those for which the words are the same regardless of the gender of the person related. You will have noticed also that Korean does not allow its speakers to refer to brothers and sisters (or cousins, who are regarded as extended siblings) without specifying whether that person is older or younger than the person related.

The words for *grandfather* 할아버지 and *grandmother* 할머니 are also used to mean *old man* and *old woman*. Similarly, the words for *uncle* 아저씨 and *aunt* 아주머니, 아주머 are used to mean *(older) man* and *(older) lady*, particularly in expressions used by children, or in speaking to children, such as *Say hello to the man, dear or the lady who lives next door.*
The word 집 (택) house may also be used in the way English uses the word family. 우리 집이 커요. Our house [family] is large. 식구 [Literally: mouths to feed] means members of the family. To ask or tell how many people there are in someone’s family, you can use a form of either have (there) are or is (the copula).

23. 식구가 몇명이세요?
    Your family members are how many (people)?

24. 식구가 몇명이 있어요?
    Your family members, how many of them are there?

You may have noticed that Korean often prefers the plural we/us where English would require I/me. 우리 개 my dog. [This is extended even to cases where the explanation given earlier (belonging to our family) is not so convincing.] 우리 남편 is the usual way of saying my husband and 우리 아내 my wife.

Kinship Terms

In the following lists, honorific kinship terms are in AppleGothic Bold (고딕).

a. Relatives for which the terms differ according to the sex of the person related.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A male's</th>
<th>A female's</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>장인, 장인어른</td>
<td>시아버지, 시아버지</td>
<td>father-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장모, 장모님</td>
<td>시어머니, 시어머님</td>
<td>mother-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아내 (여인)</td>
<td>남편</td>
<td>spouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>형제</td>
<td>오빠</td>
<td>brothers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>형(남)</td>
<td>언니</td>
<td>older brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>누나, 누님</td>
<td>(오빠들과 남동생들)</td>
<td>older sister</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Relatives for which the terms do not differ according to the gender of the person related.

조부모, 조부모님  grandparents
할아버지, 할아버지  grandfather
할머니, 할머니  grandmother
부모, 부모님  parents
아버지, 아버님  father
13.4. Probable Futures with -(으)ㄹ 거예요

13.4.1. Probable Futures in -(으)ㄹ 거예요 on Plain Bases

Dialogue One from this lesson contained the following sentence.

25. 네, 이번 주말에 선 살이 되실 거예요.  
   Yes. He's going to be (become) fifty this September.

The usual way to make a future tense in Korean is to add -(으)ㄹ 거예요 to the plain or honorific base of any verb, processive or descriptive. It can also be added to the past base to mean probably VERBed, must have VERBed. We will look at this probable past usage of -(으)ㄹ 거예요 later on in the section. First, here is the construction on a plain base.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is going to eat, will probably eat</td>
<td>먹을 거예요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is going to have, probably will have</td>
<td>있올 거예요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is going to wear a tie, will probably wear a tie</td>
<td>넥타이를 써서 거예요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is going to be cold, will probably be cold</td>
<td>추울 거예요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is going to listen, will probably listen</td>
<td>들을 거예요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is going to live, will probably live</td>
<td>살 거예요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is going to be busy, will probably be busy</td>
<td>바쁠 거예요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is going to be quick, will probably be quick</td>
<td>빠를 거예요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Thirteen / 254
As can be seen from the examples above, verbs like `listen` retain the `modation` as the base-final consonant, as is always the case when the base is followed by a two-shape ending. The `w~w~` verb base `w~cold` also ends in a consonant (`w`), but the `w~` of the ending combine to give `hydration`, so `w~w~` verb bases when combined with two-shape endings always change to `hydration`. L-extending bases attach this ending in their unextended shape: `사~w~live → 사~w~거예요 → 삼 거예요`.

### 주의!

Note that all verb endings that attach to a plain base of a verb can also be attached to the plain base with the honorific ending `-(-으)시-` attached. From now on, therefore, when we refer to an ending being attached to a plain base, we mean one either with or without the honorific form included in it.

You will also see the spelling `-을 거예요` for this form, because the `예요` portion is actually the copula (-어예요, squished to -예요), but people pronounce `-을 거예요`.

### 주의!

Remember to tense up the `-료` of `-거예요`: `-을거예요` in pronunciation.

In origin, this ending is complex, built on the prospective modifier `-(-으)~` plus `것` `thing`; `fact` plus the copula. For now, you need not worry about the prospective modifier (wait until Lesson Twenty-three). Simply keep in mind that it is the `-(-으)~` here which lends the future or forward-looking meaning to the construction (and which tenses up the `-료` of `- 거 `). What you are really saying is it is a prospective case/matter of VERBing. Since the last element is just the copula, you can change this to other styles or put other endings on.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{먹을 건다} \quad \textbf{is going to eat, will probably eat (formal)}
  \end{itemize}

You can also undo the rather colloquial contraction of `것` to `-거`.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{먹을 것일마다} \quad \textbf{is going to eat, will probably eat (formal)}
  \item \textbf{먹을 것이예요} \quad \textbf{is going to eat, will probably eat (polite)}
  \end{itemize}

\textit{Lesson Thirteen / 255}
Note, however, that if you wish to use an honorific, this must appear on the verb base, not on the copula involved in the probable future ending.

네타이를 매실 거예요.  
is going to wear a tie, will probably wear a tie

[not *했거예요!]

Often, especially with the copula, forms in -(으)ㄹ 거예요. can mean a probable present.

26. 그 미국 사람이 군인일 거예요.  
That American must be a soldier.

27. 그것이 크리스 씨의 집이 아닐 거예요.  
That surely wouldn't be Chris' house.

Here are more examples of the probable future.

It will [probably] rain tomorrow.

29. 내년에 [아마] 졸업을 할 거예요.  
He will [probably] graduate next year.

30. 밤에 [아마] 추울 거예요.  
It will [probably] be cold at night.

Mr. Pak is [probably] living in Pusan.

13.4.2. Probable Futures in -(으)ㄹ 거예요 on Past Bases

The following examples show the way in which you can add the -(으)ㄹ 거예요 form to a past base to make a probable future perfect (likely will have done) or a probable past (must have done).

32. 영국으로 떠났을 거예요.  
He must have departed for England.

33. 아마 한국에서 영어를 좀 배우셨을 거예요.  
He probably studied some English in Korea.
13.5. Rhetorical Retorts in -잖아요

Recall the following exchange from this lesson's conversation.

34. B. 네, 이번 구월에 합 살이 되실 거예요.
   Yes. He'll be fifty years old this September.
   A. 아직 좀 오시잖아요?
      Oh, go on. He's still young [don't you think?].

In origin, this verb ending is a squished (contracted) long-form negative. Thus, the example above is obtained from the sentence below by adding a rhetorical twist to your intonation:

-.Fprintf[= bureaucracy]
   Is he not young? [stupid question—of course he is!]

The squish process went like this: -지 않아요 → -잖아요 → -잖아요. We regard this squished negative as a new and separate verb ending because it behaves differently from the negatives in -지. Like -지, this is a one-shape ending, and 껍.extending bases keep their 껍. But whereas negatives in -지 attach only to plain (and honorific) bases, the ending -并不意味 can attach to any base.

-并不意味 on Plain Bases

35. A. 빨리 와요!
   Hurry up!
   B. 그런데 이게 무겁잖아요!
      But this thing is (so) heavy! [isn't it/can't you see?]

36. A. 왜 이렇게 놀을까요?
   Why do you suppose he's so late?
   B. 비가 오잖어요!
      But it's raining! [isn't it/can't you see?]

37. A. 이 음식이 왜 이렇게 맛없을까요?
   Why do you suppose this food is so tasteless?
   B. 영국음식이잖아요!
      But it's English food! [isn't it/can't you see?]

38. 에릭 외국 사람이 처음이세요?
   Is this your first time with a foreigner?
   미스 브네, 그래서 좀 이상해요.
   Yes, so it's a bit strange.
-고 있어요 on Past Bases

39. A. 오늘 밥 선생님을 만날 거예요.
   I'll probably meet Mr. Pak today.

   B. 그런데, 벌써 떠나셨어요!
   But he's already left! [hasn't he/didn't you know?]

40. A. 오늘이 우리 한국말 시험이에요?
   Is today our Korean language exam?

   B. 어제였 Faker!
   It was yesterday! [wasn't it/didn't you know?]

13.6. *Is doing* with -고 있어요

A phrase consisting of a -고 form and a form of *is*; stays corresponds to English verb phrases like *is writing*, *is eating*, *is buying*, as opposed to simple forms like *writes*, *eats*, *buys*.

41. 어머니는 아침을 아직 잊으시고 계세요.
   *Mother is still eating breakfast.*

42. 고모가 밖에서 기다리고 있으니까, 빨리 해요.
   *Auntie (father's sister) is waiting [for you] outside, so hurry up.*

43. 동생이 아직 자고 있어요.
   *My little brother (or little sister) is still asleep.*

44. 시어머니께서 이제 옷을 입고 계셨어요.
   *The mother-in-law was wearing [or had on] a new dress.*

This correspondence is by no means 100 percent, however; English says *is going* while Korean uses the single verb *가요*. For most cases of -고 있어요 you can substitute a simple verb, so that *먹어요* *eats* covers about the same ground as *먹고 있어요* *is eating*. This does not work in the other direction, though. You may not automatically substitute a -고 있어요 phrase for every simple verb form.
The -고 of this pattern behaves in the same way as the -고 of -고 있어요. In other words, it keeps the -고 of -고-extending verbs: 살고 있어요 is living. Insofar as this pattern emphasizes that a particular action or process is in progress, it can only be used with processive bases.

Note that, with verbs of donning (verbs related to the putting on and wearing of clothes) this pattern creates an ambiguity.

45. 나는 넥타이를 매고 있어요.
   I am wearing a necktie. or I am putting on my tie.

46. 모자를 쓴다고 있습니다.
   I am wearing a hat. or He is putting on his hat.

To show tense, you change the verb 있어요: 쓴다고 있어요 is writing becomes 쓴다고 있었어요 was writing. For other sentence types you also make the change on the last verb, as you can see in 쓴다고 있지만 is writing, but.

For honorific expressions you substitute 계세요 for 있어요, so that 쓴다고 있어요 becomes 쓴다고 계세요 (or 쓴다고 계세요) to mean (someone esteemed) is writing.

The negative can be made either on the underlying verb or on the expression as a whole, with slightly different meanings. If you merely want to deny an assertion you can say 쓴다고 있지 않아요 is not writing, but if you want to imply that the subject goes along nicely without the activity, you say 쓴다고 있지 않아요 is not writing [for the time being, these days, etc.] or gets along (manages to get by) without writing or keeps away from one's typewriter. Both kinds of negative can be put into the various other sentence types, so that for the meaning isn't writing, but, you will hear both 쓴다고 있지 않지만 or 쓴다고 있지 않지만, usually as a denial of an assertion, and 쓴다고 있지 않지만 or 쓴다고 있지 않지만. Here are some more examples.

47. 큰아버지께서는 요즘도 술을 드시지 않고 계셨습니다.
   My uncle is keeping off the booze lately (still/too).

48. 이모는 아직 콘택트렌즈를 찾지 못하고 있어요.
   Auntie (mother's sister) still can't find her contact lens.
13.7. *As soon as* with -자 마자

The pattern for *as soon as* is made by attaching the one-shape ending -자 to verb bases. The pattern is usually intensified in spoken language with 마자: 오자 or 오자 마자 as soon as [someone] comes/came. Note that even if the event in the second clause is past, the verb with the -자 마자 ending still attaches to a plain base—the verb at the end of the whole sentence does all the work of showing the tense. Here are some more examples.

49. 내가 서울역에 도착하자마자, 가차가 멈춰不高어.
   *The train left as soon as I arrived at Seoul station.*

50. 수업이 끝나자 마자 점심을 먹으러 갔습니다.
   *We're going to go eat lunch as soon as class finishes.*

51. 숙제를 마치자마자, 집에 돌아갔어요.
   *He went home as soon as he finished his homework.*

52. 밥을 먹자 마자 손님이 왔어요.
   *I had no sooner eaten than someone came.*

53. 부산에서 내리자마자 사촌동생을 만났어요.
   *I saw (or met) my cousin as soon as I got off at Pusan.*

54. 방학이 되자 마자 시골에 쉬러 가고 싶습니다.
   *As soon as vacation comes, I want to go to the countryside to take a rest.*

55. 버스에서 내리자 마자 비가 쏟아졌어요.
   *As soon as I got off the bus, it poured.*
Exercises

Exercise 1: Sequentials in -(으)니까

Join each of the sentences below using the sequential pattern in the resulting sentence into English.

1. 밤에 눈이 왔습니다. 꽃포를 못 친 거예요.
2. 저희 어머니가 항상 집에 계십니다. 걱정 마세요.
3. 한국말이 너무 어렵습니다. 다른 외국어를 배울래요.
4. 오늘 좀 바쁘셨나요. 내일 만날까요?
5. 나는 중국 사람이 아닙니다. 중국말은 못 가르침니다.
6. 극장 앞으로 나갔습니다. 친구가 벌써 기다리고 있었어요.
7. 방 안으로 들어갔습니다. 아무도 없었어요.
8. 밤에 나갔습니다. 눈이 오고 있었어요.
9. 연구실에서 편지를 쓰고 있었습니다. 일본에서 전화.
10. 서울역에 도착했습니다. 벌써 밤이었습니다.

Exercise 2: - (으)ㄹ 거예요 as Probable

Each of the following sentences means someone does/is something will be. Translate the sentences into English. My brother is going to go to the cinema.

1. 동생은 영화에 가요.
2. 시아버지가 일주일 동안 계세요.
3. 선생님은 녹턴을 메세요.
4. 할아버지가 모자를 쓸 거예요.
5. 내일 숙제가 많아요.
6. 내일 비가 와요.
7. 오늘 밤에 조카가 와요.
8. 나는 한국에서 영어를 가르쳐요.
9. 아저씨는 이번 겨울에 가족을 만나요.

Lesson Thirteen/261
1. 형은 군인이 되어요.
2. 내일 아침부터 눈이 와요.
3. 나는 이번 가을에는 일본에 가요.
4. 조카한테 될 줄이요?
5. 김 선생님이 내년에 결혼해야.
6. 내 약혼자는 이번 가을에 졸업해야.

Exercise 3: -(으)ㄹ 거예요 as Probable Present

Each of the following sentences means someone does/is something. Make each one mean someone probably does/is something. Then translate the sentence. For example, the first will be: 외삼촌은 중국에 살고 계실 거예요. My uncle is probably living in China.

1. 외삼촌은 중국에 살고 계세요.
2. 장인여론은 지금 주무세요.
3. 박이 추워요.
4. 영국은 날씨가 별로 안 좋아요.
5. 우리 시어머니는 교회에 나가세요.
6. 그 아이가 아직 어려요.
7. 그 부모님들이 젊지 않으세요.
8. 그 상절이 가까워요.
9. 국장은 너무 멀어요.
10. 우리 시어머니는 돈이 많으세요.
11. 우리 머느리는 영어를 잘해요.
12. 선생님의 약혼자는 꽤 잘 좋아 하세요.
13. 내 사위가 미국 사람이지만 한국말을 좀 해요.
14. 아저씨는 남동생 집에서 사세요.
15. 선생님의 아들남이 졸업했어요.
16. 오빠가 운동하고 있어요.
17. 고모부가 그걸 모르세요.
18. 할아버지가 일찍 주무셨어요.
19. 영화가 인생 끝났어요.
20. 조카가 그 편지를 이틀 전에 받았어요.

Lesson Thirteen / 262
Exercise 4: Kinship terms and Honorifics

Here are some English sentences. Express each one in Korean twice: the first time insert my younger brother as the subject, and the second time use my father as the subject (and use honorifics).

1. In the spring he plays golf, but in the summer he plays tennis.
2. He went to bed early last night, but he didn't get up early this morning.
3. He doesn't eat much meat, and he doesn't drink much water, either.
4. He's old, but his heart is young.
5. He doesn't like his daughter-in-law, but he likes his son-in-law.
6. He wasn't home yesterday afternoon, but he's home now.
7. He works hard in the daytime. At night, he rests.
8. He taught English at the University last year, but he doesn't teach there now.
9. He waited at the hotel for an hour, but his friend didn't come.
10. He gave my little sister some money yesterday.
11. He listened to the radio for two hours last night.

Exercise 5: English to Korean Translation

Translate the following sentences into Korean.

1. A. My family [house] is big. There are many members [literally: members are many].
   B. How many siblings do you have, Ho-ch'ol? (호철, male)
   A. I have four younger brothers and one younger sister.
   B. You don't have any older brothers or sisters?
   A. That's right, I haven't. I have neither older brothers nor older sisters.
   B. Do you have children, Ho-ch'ol?
   A. Yes, we now have a son and a daughter.
2. A. What are you doing here?
   B. I'm waiting for my girlfriend.
3. A. What's the baby doing now?
   B. He's sleeping.
4. The teacher is wearing a tie.
5. My uncle is putting on his shoes.
6. As soon as I graduate, I want to go to Japan.
7. As soon as the film ended, we went to a tabang.
8. As soon as my uncle returned from Canada, it snowed.

Lesson Thirteen / 263
9. As soon as we arrived at Pusan, we called home.
10. As soon as I found the telephone number, I called.
11. As soon as the price went up a bit, I sold the car.


Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 그 아저씨는 근일이었을 거예요.
2. 내일은 서울에서 구경을 좀 할 거예요.
3. A. 오늘 저녁에 이 선생님 만나실 집니까?
   B. 그런데, 벌써 서울로 떠났잖아요?
4. 어제 밤에 눈이 왔을 거예요.
5. 저희 조부모들은 대구에서 살고 계십니다.
6. 저는 이번 봄에 출입할 겁니다.
7. A. 어드님은 몇살입니까?
   B. 스플래시입니다.
8. 그 아주머니는 이혼했을 겁니다.
9. A. 저는 경제학을 전공했습니다.
   B. 그러세요? 어렵getLastErrorOccurrence?!
10. A. 운동 좀 하려 운동장에 나갔까요?
    B. 그런데, 비가 오_dstLastErrorOccurrence?!
11. 우리 누나는 책을 쓰고 있어요.
12. 우리 손녀딸은 언제나 모자를 쓰고 있어요.
13. 우리 집은 식구가 많습니다. 남동생 다섯명이랑 언니 두명이 있습니다.
14. A. 수잔 씨는 인제 한국말을 잘해요.
    B. 언제나 공부를 열심히 하잖아요?!
15. A. 이 식당은 언제나 손님이 많아요.
    B. 움직이 맘이 있leckLastErrorOccurrence?!
16. 추우니까, 나가지 마다.
17. 이 프로는 제미 없으니까, 보지 마다.
18. 밤에 나가니까, 아주 추웠어요.
19. 아까 전화하니까, 아무도 받지 않았어요.
20. 영화가 지금 끝났을 거예요.

Lesson Thirteen / 264
Exercise 7: More Practice with Sequentials

Each of the items below contains two sentences. Reconstruct them as one sentence connected by the sequential ending -(으)나(가) and then translate into English. Note that the first ten sentences are of the discovery-when type (and thus have "T" as their subject). Be sure to delete the past tense ending before attaching -(으)나(가).

1. 집에 돌아갔어요, 아무도 없었어요.
2. 밖에 나갔어요, 아주 더웠어요.
3. 산에 올라갔어요, 참 추웠어요.
4. 다시 한번 왔어요, 의심촌이었어요.
5. 누님한테 전화 걸었어요, 받지 않았어요.
6. 약속을 잊었어요, 다른 사람 같아요.
7. 음식을 했어요, 아주 싫혀요.
8. 매주 한관 마셨어요, 노래를 부르고 싶이요.
9. 그 여자랑 데이트 했어요, 부모님이 싫어하셨어요.
10. 택시 타었어요, 아저씨가 [i.e. the driver] 영어를 잘 했어요.
11. 좀 피곤해요, 오늘은 나가지 맘시다.
12. 한국은 거울에 추워요, 봄에 갑니다.
13. 선교사예요, 한국말을 잘 할 거예요.
14. 나이가 많아요, 너무 빨리 걱정 말아요.
15. 내일 눈이 올 거예요, 다음 주말에 합시다.
16. 사장님께 말씀드렸습니다, 걱정하지 마십시오.
17. 장마가 쳤습니다, 비가 많이 올 것 같습니다.
18. 한국사람이예요, 김치를 좋아해야요.
19. 커피가 없어요, 홍차로 할까요?
20. 밥에 혼자 계세요, 심심하실 겪니다.
21. 무조건 내에 살아요, 돈이 많을 거예요.
Exercise 8: Practice with -고 있어요

Each of the following sentences or exchanges contains a phrase which means someone does something. Make each one mean someone is [in the process of] doing something using the -고 있어요 pattern. Then translate the sentence. For example, the first will be 동생은 넥타이를 벗고 있어요. My brother is putting on/wearing a tie.

1. 동생은 넥타이를 벗어요.
   A. 뭐 해요?
   B. 넥타이 마셔요.
2. 순회 씨는 체즈 음악을 들어요.
3. 사장님이 손님하고 이야기를 하세요.
4. 아까 그 학생이 펼쳤어요?
   B. 북도에서 기다렸어요.
5. A. 아침도 시청 근처에 사세요?
   B. 아니요, 인제는 친척 집에서 살아요.
6. 내용을 찾아요.
7. 언니하고 오빠는 지금 테니스를 쳐요.
8. [디스코에서]
   A. 언니는 밥 해요?
   B. 저기서 춤을 추겠어요?
9. 요즘 왜 안경을 안 써요?

Exercise 9: Vocabulary Drill

Say each of the following sentences in Korean five different times, each time inserting one of the expressions listed below in the blank space.

1. _____한테 편지를 받았습니다. 2. 우리 ____ (가/이/께서) 돈을 좀 주셨습니다.

spouse  father
older brother  aunt
nephew  older sister
grandmother  parents
mother-in-law  grandfather

Lesson Thirteen / 266
3. 제 친구가 _____ 옆에 앉았습니다. 4. 제 친구는 _____하고 같이 살니다.
   younger brother parents
   older brother father-in-law
   father-in-law grandchildren
   nephew aunt
   spouse older brother

5. 우리 여동생은 공원에서 _____과/와 산책을 하고 있습니다.
   her husband
   her father
   my daughter
   my daughter-in-law
   our mother's sister
아무래도 동대문 시장이 제일 좋겠지요?

In this lesson we follow Eunice Murphy and Mrs. Kim as they head out for a day’s shopping, then observe Chris Murphy at work being introduced to a new Korean business colleague and then greeting a caller at his office. The lesson shows how to introduce friends and order food at a restaurant. It provides a taste of verbal niceties in an office environment. We introduce two new types of future tense, the Korean equivalent of tag questions in English (Isn’t that right? Isn’t that so?), and more on also, going, and coming.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Mrs. Kim (진영이 엄마) has dropped in to see Eunice one morning in December.

유니스 오늘 시내에 가실거예요?
진영이 엄마 네, 오늘 쇼핑 좀 할까 해요.

같이 가시지 않겠어요?
유니스 네, 좋지요! 그런데, 몇 시시겠어요?
진영이 엄마 크리스마스까지 시간이 조금 밖에 안 남았으니까, 
크리스마스 선물 좀 사보고 싶어요. 어디가 제일 좋을까요?
아무래도 동대문 시장이 제일 좋겠지요?
유니스 그렇게요. 저도 거기 여러번 갔었어요.
물건 값이 아주 싸지요?
진영이 엄마 네, 아주 싸요. 자, 슬슬 가볼까요?
As they’re on the way out the door
유니스 잠시만요. 화장실에 갔다올게요.
진영이 엄마 빨리 갔다오세요. 엘리베이터 앞에서 기다리고 있음께요.

Downstairs on the street
유니스 자, 갈까요? 저희를 태고 갈까요? 택시를 태고 갈까요?
진영이 엄마 편히 가고 싶으니가, 택시를 타고 갈시다. 제가 돈을 내지요.

Notes
아무래도 most likely, I’d venture to say; probably
그렇겠지요. That is probably the case, That must be the case. This is the future
presumptive -겠- form of 그래요. it is so, followed by don’t you think
-지요.
슬슬 가볼까요? 슬슬 is an adverb meaning something like in a slow, leisurely fashion.
The entire expression is a useful way to say, It’s time we start moving.

Dialogue 2

Chris has arranged a dinner meeting with Mr. Kang, who will introduce a new friend.

감 제가 친구를 소개하겠습니까. 이 친구는 남주형입니다.
크리스 처음 뵐겠습니다. 크리스 마피입니다.
남 처음 뵐겠습니다. 남주형입니다.
강 자, 양으시지요.

They sit down
크리스 (to 남) 이 집에 처음 오신가요?
남 아닙니다. 전에도 몇번 왔었습니까.
여종업원 왜 하시겠어요?
감 (여종업원에게) 잠시만요. (남 씨에게) 뭐 시킬까요?
남 아무거나 좋지만, 저는 갈비로 하지요, 뭐.
크리스 그럼, 나도 갈비 하겠어요.

Lesson Fourteen / 269
여중업원 (to 강) 아저씨는요?
강 나는 불고기 하겠어요.
여중업원 네, 알겠습니다. 갈비 이분하하고 불고기 일인분요. 음료수는요?
크리스 (to others) 술 좀 하시겠어요?
강, 남 좋지요!
크리스 그럼, 우선 맥주 세병만 갓다 주세요.

Dialogue 3

Mr. Nam has come to see Chris at the office.

남 (to Miss Lee) 수고하십시오. 여씨 사장님 게실니까?
미스 리 네, 계신데요. 어떻게 오셨어요?
남 네?
미스 리 성함이 어떻게 되시지요?
남 남주형입니다.
미스 리 잠깐만 기다리세요.

Miss Lee ushers Mr. Nam into Chris Murphy’s office

크리스 아이구, 반갑습니다. 들어오십시오. 여기 앉으시지요. 미스 리, 여기 커피 두잔만 갓다 주세요.
남 그동안 어떻게 지내셨어요?
크리스 덕분에 별 일 없습니다. 자, 그런데 무슨 용무로 오셨어요?

Notes
어떻게 오셨어요? [Literally: How have you come?] What brings you here?
계신데요 He is in. The - 니요 here is softer and politer than just 계실니요 or 계세요, but you will learn the ending formally at a later stage.
그동안 in the meantime; during the interval [that we weren’t in touch]

Lesson Fourteen / 270
Thanks to [you]. You can also say so-and-so: Thanks to.

[Literal: There are no particular matters (to report)]. Also: 별 일 없으세요? Are you getting along well? or 별 일 없으셨어요? Have you been getting along well?

Vocabulary

Verbal Expressions

돈(이) 드-르-
이건 돈이 많이 들었어요.

Section-
머리를 빙어.

(돈을) 내-
제가 벌게요.

아프-
예쁘-
드-르-
이것 잡건 들고 있길래요?

주-
 돌아가시-
더치-
머리를 다쳐어요.

타고가-
타고오-
두-르-
초대(를) 하-
초대(를) 받-
소개(를) 하-
소개(를) 받-

Would you mind holding this for a moment?

die, pass away (honorific)
be wounded, get hurt, get injured
He injured his head.
go (riding something)
come (riding something)
solve it; undo it
invite someone
be/get invited
introduce someone/something
be/get introduced (to someone)

만호 셀리데서 수진 셔를 소개 받았어요. I was introduced to Su Jin by Manho.

 값다주-
누- wur-
취하-
취셨어요.

Lesson Fourteen / 271
지내-
요즘 어떻게 지내시나요?

물론 (물론이에요).

관히
그저께
모레
내일모레

우선
우선 선생님께 연락 드립시다.

편히
편히 않으세요.

잠시
잠시만 기다리세요.

제일
수영이 건강에 제일이에요.
지하철이 제일 빨라요.

가장
이 집 반찬이 가장 맛이 있어요.

get along (e.g., How are you getting along?)
How are you doing these days?
hang up (the telephone); quit (smoking/drinking)
Good-bye. (on the telephone) [Literally: 'I'm hanging up now.]
I've quit smoking.
start term/school
We started the new term yesterday.
When is the beginning of term?
be comfortable; be convenient
be uncomfortable; be inconvenient
change (clothes)
change; exchange
We changed our class time.
Please exchange these socks for a different pair.

Adverbs
of course
[It is a matter] of course.
very, very much
day before yesterday
day after tomorrow
day after tomorrow (same)
first of all, before everything, before anything else
Let's contact the teacher first.
comfortably, in comfort
Please make [seat] yourself comfortable.
a short while
[Please wait] Just a moment.
the most; the first, number one
Swimming is the best thing for your health.
The subway is fastest.
the most
This place [restaurant] has the tastiest side dishes.

Nouns
반찬
side dishes to go with rice
엘리베이터  
보약  
무슨 용무로 오셨어요?  
자료  
인분  
몇인분 드릴까요?  
삼인분  
음료수  
계산서  
계산서 좀 갔다 주세요.  
정류장  
다음 정류장에서 내리세요?  
정거장  
시험  
시험(을) 보-  
신문  
기존  
기본이 좋아요.  
기본이 나빠요.  
쇼핑  
학기  
문제  
졸업반  

**Some Body Parts**  
머리  
머리(가) 좋아요.  
머리(가) 예뻐요.  
발  
다리  
손  
손가락 [-가락]  
눈  
코  

- elevator, lift  
- downtown, city center  
- business, a matter to be taken care of  
- What business brings you here?  
- material(s) [of a written nature], data  
- [-many] portions, servings [used in ordering at restaurants]  
- How many portions would you like?  
- three portions [this word takes Sino-Korean numerals]  
- a beverage, something to drink  
- the bill, the check (in a restaurant)  
- Please bring me the check.  
- bus stop  
- Are you getting off at the next stop?  
- (train) station/stop  
- examination  
- take an exam  
- present, gift  
- feelings, mood  
- I’m in a good mood.  
- I’m in a bad mood.  
- shopping  
- term, semester  
- problem  
- graduating class  

- head; hair  
- She is bright/intelligent.  
- She has pretty hair.  
- arm  
- leg  
- hand  
- finger  
- eye  
- nose
Lesson Notes

14.1. Ways to Say only:
만 plus AFFIRMATIVE, 밖에 plus NEGATIVE

Observe the following sentences.

1. 돈 만원만 주세요.
   Let me have [just, exactly] 10,000 won, please.

2. 이천오백원 밖에 안 들어요.
   It will only cost 2,500 won.

The particle 만 plus an affirmative verb means only, just, to the extent of. The quasi-particle 밖에 (derived from the place noun 밖 outside plus the particle 에) plus a negative verb arrives at the same meaning by a more circuitous route. Here is another example.

3. 만원 밖에 없어요.
   I have only ten thousand won.
   [Literally: Except for or outside of ten thousand won, I haven't (anything) or I haven't (anything) but ten thousand won.]

The pattern in 밖에 plus negative implies that the amount in question is less than, or not quite up to, one's expectations. Thus, in (3) above, the implication is that the speaker had rather hoped or expected to have more than 10,000 won. Here are some more examples of the 밖에 plus negative pattern.

4. 나는 아이 한명 밖에 없습니다.
   I have only one child.

5. 연필 밖에 없습니다.
   I have nothing but a pencil. All I have is a pencil.

Lesson Fourteen / 274
6. 어제 밤 극장에 저 밖에 가지 않았어요.  
   *I was the only one who went to the movies last night.*

7. 고기 밖에 못 먹어요.  
   *I could only eat meat.*

8. 만원 밖에 들지 않았습니다.  
   *It only cost 10,000 won.*

Remember that with numerical expressions 만 only or just has no English equivalent. It means no more, no less or exactly [the number specified].

9. 만원만 주실래요?  
   *Would you mind giving me 10,000 won?*

### 14.2. Another Use of (이)나 as many as

Observe the following examples.

10. 일찍 떠났지만, 그래도 사십분이나 늦었습니다.  
    *He departed early, but nonetheless he was (as much as) 40 minutes late.*

11. 어제 파티에 백명이나 왔어요.  
    *(As many as) a hundred people came to the party yesterday.*

In sentences like the above, the particle (이)나 attached to a number or numeral expression implies that the speaker believes the amount to be a high one, or at least, he or she finds that amount higher than expected. Thus, in number (10) above, the speaker is implying that he or she thinks being late by 40 minutes is quite a lot. Likewise, in sentence (11), the speaker implies that, for her, three letters is a lot. Here are some more examples.

12. 어제는 열시간이나 잔어요.  
    *Yesterday I slept for (as much as) ten hours.*

13. 사장님은 하루에 커피를 열 잔이나 드세요.  
    *The boss drinks (as many as) ten cups of coffee a day.*

14. 맥주를 열병이나 먹었어요.  
    *I drank (as many as) ten bottles of beer.*

15. 두시간이나 늦게 도착했습니다.  
    *I arrived (as many as) two hours late.*

*Lesson Fourteen / 275*
14.3. Expressions for Going and Coming

Observe the following examples.

16. 지하철로 가요
goes by subway, goes on a subway

17. 기차로 왔어요
came by train, came on the train

18. 택시로 학교에 가요.
goes by taxi to school

The particle (으)로 with, by (means of) is used with vehicles when the verb is 가요, goes or 왔어요, comes. On the other hand, the verb 타요, gets on (a vehicle, a horse), rides, takes a direct object.

19. 기차를 타요.
rides [on] a train

20. 기차를 타고 오지 않아요.
doesn’t come (riding) [on] the train

주의!
The pattern for these constructions with 타- is:
[destination] plus vehicle-을~를 타고 plus [destination] plus go/come

That is, the destination can come either before or after the vehicle plus (을~를) plus 타고.
For example:

21. 택시를 타고 학교에 가요.
rides/takes a taxi to school

22. 쇼핑하러 지하철을 타고 갈습니다.
rode the subway to go shopping

The 타- verb 걸어요 ( 걷다) walks resembles 타요, rides in that it is not used alone in sentences implying purposeful direction. It, too, joins in phrases with 가요, goes or 왔어요, comes, but in its infinitive (걷어요) form.

Lesson Fourteen / 276
23. 걸어 갔어요  
    went walking, walked (there)

24. 걸어 오지 않아요  
    doesn't come walking, doesn't walk (here)

### 14.4. Verbs: Future-Presumptives in -겠-

#### 14.4.1. How to Attach -겠-

This lesson contains a number of verbs in the FUTURE-PRESUMPTIVE form (called future for short, but see the explanations below). The marker for the future is -겠-. It is a one-shape ending. Here are some examples showing how this form attaches to bases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Future Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>가겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기타리-</td>
<td>wait</td>
<td>기타리겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주-</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>주겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보-</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>보겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드- 르-</td>
<td>lift; cost</td>
<td>드翌- 르翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>write; use</td>
<td>쓰翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부르-</td>
<td>call</td>
<td>부르翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입-</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td>입翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받-</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>받翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찾-</td>
<td>look for; find</td>
<td>찾翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빛-</td>
<td>comb</td>
<td>빛翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있-</td>
<td>stay, have</td>
<td>있翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>먹翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닦-</td>
<td>polish</td>
<td>닦翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없-</td>
<td>be lacking</td>
<td>없翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽-</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>읽翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젊-</td>
<td>be young</td>
<td>젊翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신-</td>
<td>wear (shoes)</td>
<td>신翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉-</td>
<td>sit down</td>
<td>앉翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많-</td>
<td>be much/many</td>
<td>많翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>be good</td>
<td>좋翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>누워- (으) ~ w: 늘다)</td>
<td>lie down</td>
<td>누翌- (으) ~ w: 늘翌-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들- (으) ~ r: 들다)</td>
<td>hear</td>
<td>들翌-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To make honorific future forms, you simply add -겠- to the honorific base.

가-    go    → 가시-    → 가시겠-
받-    get    → 받으시-    → 받으시겠-

A future base, like any base, is not a complete word by itself: it needs an ending. To make it Polite Style, you add -이/어요.

가-    go    → 가시겠어요   will go
받-    get    → 받으시겠어요   will get

For long negatives in the future, you use a plain -지 form and make the auxiliary 억-future.

가-    go    → 가지 않겠어요   won't go
받-    get    → 받지 않겠어요   won't get

As usual, the -지 form merely says what action is performed, while the negative word 억-carries the other meanings of the phrase. Also, as usual, either word (or both) may be honorific if the phrase refers to someone esteemed.

가-    go    가지    않으시겠어요
가시지    않겠어요
가시지    않으시겠어요

14.4.2. Meaning and Usage of -겠-

Although most textbooks of Korean refer to the -겠- form as a future, when it comes to meaning, the -겠- form has a variety of corresponding English expressions, none of which really corresponds fully to an English future.

The meanings of -겠- can be grouped into two: Inferential I'll bet and Intentional I shall.
a. Inferential -겠-: I'll bet

Inferential -겠- usually occurs with verbs in the second- and third-person (you, he, she, it, they). The verb marked with -겠- carries the following sorts of connotations: I'll bet that, I would wager that, I have good reasons to infer that, Judging by my evidence, it is highly likely that.

25. 내일은 덥겠어요.  
Tomorrow will likely be hot. [I know, because I always get a funny twitch in my elbow the day before it turns hot.]

26. 오 후에 비가 오겠 습 니다.  
It is going to rain in the afternoon. [I've just seen the weather map.]

27. 그 영화는 재미 있겠어요.  
I'll bet that film is probably interesting. [I saw lots of people standing in line for it downtown the other day.]

28. 아프겠어요.  
Ooh, that must hurt. [you have just seen somebody trip and fall prostrate onto the pavement]

29. 어제 기분이 정말히 좋았겠어요.  
You must have been in a super mood yesterday. [since you just heard that your son was accepted at Seoul National University]

30. 부산에 벌써 도착했겠어요.  
She must already have arrived in Pusan. [I know, because her train was due to arrive there at 5:30 PM, and it is now past 6:00 P.M.]

b. Intentional -겠-: I have a firm intention to; Do you intend to?

Intentional -겠- usually occurs in first-person statements and second-person questions. In statements, it has the effect of a strong declaration of intent, and often has a somewhat ceremonial touch, as if one were making a solemn pronouncement. In questions, it is a polite way of getting somebody to do something.

31. 언제 시험을 시작하겠습니다.  
I'm going to start the exam now. [teacher standing in front of the examination hall]

32. 다방 앞에서 기다리겠습니다.  
I'll wait for you in front of the tabang.

33. 내일 모레 다시 오겠습니다.  
I'll come again the day after tomorrow.

Lesson Fourteen / 279
34. 그레면, 제가 하겠습니다.
   In that case, I shall do it.

35. A. 줄 드시겠습니까?
    Would you like something to drink?

    B. 네, 커피 한잔 주실시오.
    Yes, a cup of coffee, please.

36. A. 여기 안으시겠어요?
    Why don’t you sit here?

    B. 네, 감사합니다.
    Yes, thank you.

37. 내일 다시 찾아오겠습니다.
    I’ll come again tomorrow.

Here are some more examples with verbs in -겠-.

38. 편지는 쓰겠지만, 전화는 안 하겠어요.
    I’ll write a letter, but I won’t telephone.

39. 이 책이 서점에 아직도 있겠지요?
    This book is still probably at the bookshop, right?

40. 일을 하겠지만, 돈은 안 받겠어요.
    I’ll do the job, but I won’t accept [Literally: receive] any money (for it).

41. 이 자료를 김 선생님께 드리겠어요?
    Will you give (would you mind giving) these materials to Mr. Kim?

42. 사장님은 지금 좀 비행기를 타셨겠어요.
    The company president must be on the plane by now.

43. 어머니도 가끔 영화관을 가고 싶으시겠어요.
    I imagine Mother must sometimes want to go see movies too.

44. 밖이 춥겠어요.
    It must be cold outside.

45. 내일 동대문 시장에 같이 가지 않겠습니까?
    How about going to Tongdumun Market tomorrow?

46. 우리 집에 놀러 오지 않으시겠습니까?
    How about coming round to our place to visit?

As you have just seen, there is a PAST-FUTURE verb form which is made by attaching the future marker -겠- to the past base of any verb (either the plain past base or the honorific past base) like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Past Base</th>
<th>Past-Future Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>갔-</td>
<td>갔겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가시-</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>가셨-</td>
<td>가셨겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받-</td>
<td></td>
<td>받았-</td>
<td>받았겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받으시-</td>
<td></td>
<td>받으셨-</td>
<td>받으셨겠-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are some examples in full sentences.

47. 아마 벌써 했겠어요.
   They have probably (will have) already done it.

48. 돈이 많이 들었겠어요.
   It must have cost a lot.

49. 머리가 끔찍히 아팠겠어요.
   You must have had a really bad headache.

The past marker gives to the form the same meaning as the English auxiliary verb has or have, while the future marker gives it the meaning of probably.

When you are listening to Korean, your only clue to the difference between a future verb form and a past-future verb form is very small. Sometimes only the difference between - and �.

가겠어요 [가계계요] will go
갔겠어요 [간간계요 → 가계계요] will have gone, must have gone

Another problem in fine distinctions comes in past-past verb forms, which are made by attaching the past tense marker -었- to the past base of any verb, either honorific or plain, forming in effect a double past base.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plain Base</th>
<th>Past Base</th>
<th>Past-Past Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>하-</td>
<td>하였-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>하시-</td>
<td>하셨-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Fourteen / 281
The form is made complete by adding an appropriate ending. The past-past, then, is distinguished from the past by being longer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>했어요</th>
<th>did</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past-past</td>
<td>했었어요</td>
<td>did (earlier)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Before a one-shape ending, this is a little more difficult to detect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>했지만</th>
<th>did, but</th>
<th>[해석만]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past-past</td>
<td>했었지만</td>
<td>did (earlier), but</td>
<td>[해석만]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are some examples of the past-past.

50. 나는 경제학을 공부했어요. 그런데 정치학으로 바꿨어요.  
   I used to study Economics, but I changed to Political Science.

51. A. 어디 갔었어요?  
    Where have you been?

    B. 친구를 만나러 시내에 갔었어요.  
       I went downtown to meet a friend.

52. 나도 거기 한 번 갔었어요.  
    I've been there once, too.

53. 그 분이 우리 학교에 한 번 오셨어요.  
    He came to our school once.

These forms do not correspond to any single English word. In general, they mean about the same thing as regular past-tense forms, except that they have the feeling of a more definitely completed action or a comparatively remote past action.

There is one area of meaning where a real difference exists: if an action has come full circle, you use the past-past. For a similar action which has not yet come full circle, you use the plain past. This distinction is common in verbs meaning come and go and is illustrated by the sentences just above. Compare these sentences.

54. 만호 씨는 서울에 왔어요.  
    Manho came to Seoul [and is still here].

55. 만호 씨는 서울에 한 번 왔어요.  
    Manho came to Seoul once [but is no longer here].

Lesson Fourteen / 282
Come and go in the past-past may be literally translated as come and return and go and
come back, respectively. In the past they mean (came and) is here and (went and) is gone,
respectively.

14.6. Immediate Futures in -(으) 끼께요

The dialogue in this lesson illustrates the next pattern.

유니스  잠시만요. 화장실에 갔다올께요.
Do you mind waiting a minute? I'll just pop into the bathroom.

진영이 엄마  그래요. 에레베이터 앞에서 기다리고 있을께요.
Sure. I'll be waiting in front of the elevator.

The IMMEDIATE FUTURE in -(으) 끼께요 attaches to processive plain bases only, is
almost always first-person (I or we), and conveys to the hearer a reassuring, usually beneficial,
and promise-like future which is immediate in the sense that the action to be performed is
within the direct control of the speaker who has every intention of seeing that the action is
carried through.

The -(으) 끼 of this ending is the same prospective modifier which goes into suggestions in
-(으) 끼가요 and the probable future in -(으) 끼거예요. You will learn more about it in
the sequel volume to this course.

56. A: (Struggling with a heavy bag)
   B: 내가 들고 있을께요.
   *Let me hold it for you. or Here, I'll hold it for you.

57. A (on the phone): 오늘 올래요?
   Would you like to come over today?

   B: 내일 갈께요.
   *I'll come [go] tomorrow.

58. A: 이 숙제를 모레까지 마치세요.
   Please finish this homework by the day after tomorrow.

   B: 네, 할께요.
   *Sure, I will.
14.7. Synopsis: Types of Bases and Types of Future

14.7.1. Types of Base

Now you have learned all three verbal base forms in Korean: plain, past and future-presumptive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base Type</th>
<th>Processive</th>
<th>Descriptive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>찾-</td>
<td>놓-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>찾으시-</td>
<td>놓으시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>찾았-</td>
<td>놓았-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>찾으셨-</td>
<td>놓으셨-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>찾겠-</td>
<td>놓겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>찾으실겠-</td>
<td>놓으실겠-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes it is convenient to speak of honorific bases, but really the honorific marker -(으)시- is just an extension of the plain base, which can then be further converted to past or future. Whenever you learn a new ending or pattern, you need to learn which bases the ending is compatible with [see section 14.8 for a recap of how -(으) 시- works with the various endings you already know].

14.7.2. Types of Future

Now you have learned several different kinds of future verb form in Korean. None of them corresponds exactly to a future as we might conceive of it English, and each has different nuances.

**Probable Future**

- -(으) 결에 요
- -(으) 결니다

The probable future is the most common way to refer to future events in Korean. It can be used in all persons with both processive and descriptive verbs.

On a plain base, it means *(probably) will do / happen / be*. On past bases it means *must have done / been / happened*. For example:

*Lesson Fourteen / 284*
59. 철민 씨가 벌써 왔을 거예요.
   Chǒmnin must have arrived already.

This usage is equivalent to, but increasingly more common than, the past-future 왔겠어요.

**IMMEDIATE FUTURE**

- -(으) 큰데요

The immediate future is used only on plain processive bases. It is always first person (I, we), and the action referred to is usually beneficial to the hearer.

60. 점심은 내가 냅니다.
   Let me pay for lunch or Why don’t I pay for lunch.

**FUTURE-PRESUMPTIVE BASE**

- 겠-

Although is is often called a future in most textbooks, the future-presumptive is more of:

   a) a matter-of-fact statement of personal intention in first-person declaratives and second-person questions

   b) a supposition in third-person sentences.

Here are some example sentences.

61. 벌써 오시겠습니까?
    *Will you (do you intend to) come tomorrow?*

   A. 네, 네일 오시겠습니까.
   *Yes, I will (do).*

62. 그 책이 도서관에 있겠어요?
    *Do you suppose that book will be in the library?*

   A. 네, 그 책이 도서관에 있을 것 같아요.
   *Sure (I’ll bet it would be).*

63. (a little child falls on his face on the pavement)
   아, 아프겠다!
   *Ooh, that must hurt! (ignore the 다 for now; you will learn it in the sequel volume)*

On past bases, the future-presumptive 겠- has only the meaning of supposition (must have; I’ll bet that).

*Lesson Fourteen / 285*
64.  아마다 기차로 갔겠지요.
   I'll bet he must have gone by train.

In order to understand the various Korean futures fully, it may be helpful to have a careful look at the meanings of certain English words used for future-like purposes.

a.  **Will, is going to**

Simple future action is expressed in English by *will* and *is going to*. These have slightly different connotations, but both are covered by the Korean futures.

임겠어요  
*I will read, am going to read*  
(strong statement of intention)

임을거예요  
*will read, am/is going to read*  
(probably future; less certain than 임겠어요)

임을께요  
*I'll read it, I promise*  
(more immediate, with a hint of promise, assurance, or even reassurance)

b.  **Would**

Korean often prefers to construe verbs of knowing in the future-presumptive: one often hears 임겠어요, *I know or I understand* where one would expect 임겠어요, *I wouldn't know or I don't understand* where one would expect 임겠어요. The present forms are also used, but the -겠어요 form has a suggestion of tentativeness (English *I wouldn't know*) and perhaps for that reason it seems more polite, especially in second-person questions: 아시겠어요. *Do you know? or Do you understand?* (English *Would you happen to know?*)

c.  **Is willing to, wants to**

In both English and Korean, a future verb form may mean *will* in the sense *is willing to* or *wants to* [do so-and-so]. In this sense, one usually uses -겠어요.

65.  산보하시겠어요?
   Would you like to take a walk?
   or Are you willing to take a walk? or Will you take a walk? or Are you going to take a walk?

Sometimes a verb in this form is made negative, and the result is a polite suggestion. We had an example of this in Dialogue One of this lesson.

66.  같이 가지지 않겠어요?
   Wouldn't you like to go with me?

*Lesson Fourteen / 286*
You cannot make questions or suggestions like this with immediate futures in
-(으)ㄹ 거예요, or probable futures in -(으)ㄹ 거예요. Thus, the probable future form
of sentences (65) and (66) above is just a matter-of-fact question.

67. 산보하실 거예요?
Are you going to take a walk?

68. 같이 가지 않으실 거예요?
You're not going to go with us?

d. **Probably, must** (Conjecture)
The words *probably* and *must* are alike in adding the same flavor to English sentences
in a certain usage. In this connection, it is necessary first to distinguish between the
two kinds of English *must*. One *must* expresses obligation:

I simply must get my work finished.

This *obligational must* is expressed by the Korean construction -어야 해요, a
pattern introduced in the sequel volume to this course.

The other *must* expresses probability or likelihood.

That girl with Bill must be his fiancée.
It's raining—it must be getting cooler.

It is this probability kind of *must* which is sometimes conveyed by both the Korean
-겠- and -(으)ㄹ 거예요 forms. [In British English, the future is sometimes used
in this Korean way.] In sentences with a future form, there often appears the adverb
아마 or 아마도, which means *probably* or *likely* and strengthens the connotation of
the future verb form.

14.7.3. A Reminder about First-, Second- and Third-Person with -겠-

In first-person statements, the meaning will most frequently be on the lines of uses (a) *will*,
is going to and (b) *would* above. In second-person questions, the meaning will usually be
along the lines of (b) *would* or (c) *is willing, wants to*. However, when the sentence is in the
third-person, the meaning will more commonly correspond to usage (d) *probably, must*.
This is because Korean does not readily allow its speakers to express the intentions of
others with any certainty. When speakers want to refer to what others will do, they are more
likely to use the probable future with -(으)ㄹ 거예요. The difference is that -(으)ㄹ 거예요
expresses a definite future intention or a probable/likely present, while -(으)ㄹ 거예요
represents a greater degree of uncertainty.

*Lesson Fourteen* / 287
14.8. Suppositives in -지요

This lesson offers a number of sentences ending in -지요. The one-shape SUPPOSITIVE ending -지 carries the basic meaning supposedly and can attach to any base: plain 하지요, past 했지요, future-presumptive 하겠지요. Notice how it combines with probable futures in -(으)려고 하지요: 할거지요.

Suppositive verb forms in -지요 correspond to a number of English meanings, depending on whether they occur in statements, yes-no questions, question-word questions, or suggestions and imperatives.

In statements, the basic meaning of -지요 is I suppose. In this usage, the -지 is particularly compatible with -겠-. In a particularly emphatic or assertive intonation (e.g., in response to a dumb question), -지요 means something like Of course! or You bet!

69. 야마 언니가 하겠지요.
   I suppose my big sister will probably do it.

70. A. 그 사람이 한국 사람이에요?
    Is that person Korean?

   B. 물론이지요!
    Of course she is!

71. 교수님이 주무시겠지요.
    I suppose Professor is sleeping.

In yes-no questions (with the rising intonation of English yes-or-no questions, such as Is it raining? or Are you coming with me?), -지요 makes tag-questions with the effect of Isn't that right? Isn't that so? Right? N'est-ce pas? Nicht wahr? Eh?

72. 미국서 돌아왔지요?
    She came back from America, didn't she?

73. 값이 비싸지요?
    I suppose the price is expensive? or It's pricey, isn't it?

74. 꽃을 좋아하시지요?
    I imagine you like flowers, don't you?

Lesson Fourteen / 288
75. 김 선생님 부인이 시지요? (on the telephone)
   *It's Mrs. Kim, isn't it?*

76. 갓지요?
   *He's gone, hasn't he?*

In question-word questions, -지요 carries the nuance of I wonder or What, where, why—did you say it is/was?

77. 이것은 얼마지요?
   *How much is this (I wonder)? or How much did you say this was? or How much is this again?*

78. 내 안경 어디 갔지요?
   *Now where have my glasses gone (I wonder)?*

Korean suppositories in -지요 can also convey mild or casual suggestions or commands with the force of how about? or Why don't you? In the command usage, the -지요 is often accompanied by the honorific, giving -(으)시지요.

79. 언제 라디오를 좀 듣지요.
   *How about [us] listening to the radio now?*

80. 자, 드시지요.
   *Well then,[why don't you] drink up.*

81. 여기 앉으시지요.
   *Please sit here!*

82. 제가 (돈을) 내지요!
   *I'll pay! or Why don't I pay? or Let me pay!*

주의!
You usually do not answer questions about yourself with -지요; instead, use the regular Polite Style. In pronouncing the ending -지요, be careful not to pronounce it too slowly; these two short syllables are often run together as -조.
14.9. Synopsis: Compatibility of -겠- with Endings Previously Learned

The ending -겠- can combine with the following endings from previous lessons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ending</th>
<th>Ending with -겠-</th>
<th>Example with 하-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-(으)시-</td>
<td>-(으)시겠-</td>
<td>하시겠어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)니까</td>
<td>-(으)니까겠-</td>
<td>하니까요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)니까?</td>
<td>-(으)니까겠?</td>
<td>하니까요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-지만</td>
<td>-겠지만</td>
<td>하겠지만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)잖아</td>
<td>-(으)잖아겠-</td>
<td>하잖아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)니까</td>
<td>-(으)니까겠-</td>
<td>하니까요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-지요</td>
<td>-겠지요</td>
<td>하겠지요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercises

Exercise 1: Future-Presumptives in -겠-

Each of the following sentences means If you do something. Make each one mean I will do something or will you do something? Then translate the sentence. For example, the first will be 나는 우체국까지 가겠어요. I will go to the post office.

1. 나는 우체국까지 가요.
2. 나는 서울대학교에서 공부해요.
3. 선생님은 무엇을 하세요?
4. 내일까지 집에 돌아와요.
5. 지하철을 타고 시내에 가요.
6. 나는 한국에서 영어를 가르쳐요.
7. 점심 값을 내가 내요.
8. 김 선생님이 자동차를 파세요?
9. 다음 앞에서 기타려요.
10. 나는 이번 가을에 일본에 가요.

Lesson Fourteen / 290
Exercise 2: Suppositives in -지요

Each of the following sentences is in the polite style in -어요. Change each one to the suppositive -지요. Then translate the sentence. For example, the first will be 선생님이 메일 술값을 내지요. Our teacher pays for drinks every day, you know.

1. 선생님이 메일 술값을 내요.
2. 복동 씨의 할아버지님은 언제가 많으세요?
3. 할머님은 쌍에 삼년 전에 돌아가셨어요.
4. 언니는 우리와 같이 살지 않아요.
5. 일본에 돌아가고 싶어요?
6. 그 사람은 지금 취고 있겠어요.
7. 동생 옆이 예뻐요.
8. 조금 더 걸어가요.
9. 그 사람을 메일 만나요.
10. 화장실에 내 우산이 없었어요?
11. 머리가 아파요?

Exercise 3: English to Korean Translation

Put the following sentences into Korean (you need not translate literally).

1. A. You like concerts, don't you?
   B. Yes; I don't like films, but I like concerts.
2. A. Then how about going to a concert with me tonight?
   B. Fine.
3. A. I wonder what time it is.
   B. I don't know.
4. The weather is nice today, isn't it? Suppose we take a walk in the park.
5. A. How did you learn that song?
   B. I heard it on the radio.
6. It snowed a lot last night, didn't it?
7. A. Did you buy that CD at the bookshop?
   B. No! They don't sell CDs at the bookshop!
8. A. Will the train arrive by three o'clock, I wonder?
   B. Of course it will!
9. I guess he's probably watching TV, right?
10. I have [as many as] four brothers (two ways).

Lesson Fourteen / 291
11. Mr. Kim appeared [Literally: came out] on the TV, didn't he?
12. Didn't you live in Seoul last year?
13. I'll come by car [immediate future].
14. A. I'll bet it will cost about $15.
   B. It costs (as much as) $15?
15. He has probably already written the letter, don't you think?
16. He went to Korea (and is still there).
17. That old man (grandfather) must already have passed away, don't you think?
18. I'll wait here for you a moment [immediate future].
19. We came up in the elevator.
20. Shall we meet at Great East Gate?
21. A. Did you have any money in your bag?
   B. Yes, but all I have is 20,000 won.
22. The day before yesterday I did lots of work, but I wasn't paid [Literally: couldn't get any money].

Exercise 4: Practice with -겠어요

Each of the following sentences means someone does/is something. Make each one mean (I’ll bet) someone probably does/is something. Then translate the sentence. For example, the first will be 장 선생님은 공부하고 계시겠어요. Mr. Chang is probably/must be studying.

1. 장 선생님은 공부하고 계세요.
2. 밥이 추워요.
3. 오빠가 기분이 좋아요.
4. 학생들이 일찍 학교에 왔어요.
5. 그 아이가 어려요.
6. 부모님들이 잠이셔요.
7. 그 점심은 굉장히 비싸요.
8. 영화관은 너무 멀어요.
9. 시험이 어려워요.
10. 선생님의 약혼자는 꽤 잘 하아하세요.
11. 선생님의 딸님이 예쁘네요.
12. 내일 아침부터 눈이 와요.

Lesson Fourteen / 292
Exercise 5: only

Change the following Korean 만 sentences to the pattern with 밖에 plus negative.

1. 저희 학교에는 여자는 많지만, 남자는 한 명만 있어요.
2. 지금은 방학이에요. 학교에는 학생 및 명만 있어요.
3. 어제 두 사람만 왔습니다.
4. 맥주 몇 병 사셨어요?
   한 병만 샀어요.
5. 돈 얼마나 있워요?
   조금만 있어요.
6. 어제 밤에는 네 시간만 잡어요. 그래서 평창히 피곤하지요.
7. 지난 달에는 영화구경을 두 번만 잡어요.
8. 크리스마스에는 선물을 많이 받으셨어요?
   아니요, 몇 개만 받았어요.
9. 이건 빌리 합시다. 시간이 조금만 있어요.
10. 한국말을 잘 하세요?
    아니요, 한학기만 배웠어요.

Exercise 6: Korean-to-English Translation

Put the following sentences into English (you need not translate literally).

1. A. 진호 씨, 담배 안 피워요?
   B. 진호 씨는 피웠었지만, 네었어요.
2. A. 지난 파티에 누구 누구 왔었지요?
   B. 우리 가능사 친구들이랑 교회 친구들도 왔었어요.
3. A. 수진 씨는 요즘 수영을 배우러 수영장에 다녀요.
   B. 그래요? 난도 전에 거기에 다녔었어요.
4. A. 애릭 씨는 한국말 잘 하지요?
   B. 네. 잔인한 친구는 하나도 못 했었지만, 이제 아주 잘 해요.
5. A. 진호 씨 요즘도 그 여자와 테이트하세요?
   B. 아니요, 한 달 전까지는 자주 만났었지만, 이제는 다른 여자하고
      테이트를 하고 있어요.
6. A. 날씨가 덥지요?
   B. 네, 정말 더워요.
7. A. 불고기를 좋아하시지요?
   B. 네, 몇 입에 시킬까요?
8. A. 이 구두가 나한테 너무 커요.
   B. 그럼 나한테 주세요. 내가 신을게요.

9. A. 양복으로 갈아입을거지요?
   B. 네. 빨리 갈아입을게요.

10. A. 인제 술 끊을거지요?
    B. 네. 담배도 끊을게요.
Lesson 15

REVIEW 2

Review of Lesson Notes

15.1. Verb Forms: Summary.

Any Korean verb form used in a Korean sentence has two parts to it: a base and an ending. A base is not complete, ready for use, until it is finished off with an ending. Obviously, an ending must be attached to something before it can be put into a sentence (just as you don't use the English endings ing or ed in midair). In summarizing verb forms, then, it is convenient to split the discussion into the two large categories: bases and endings.

15.1.1. Verb Bases

Each verb has a simple base that is the source of all its changes. Some simple bases end with vowels, others with consonants. Some of the vowel-base verbs are L-extending: they add an - לנ before certain markers and endings. A few of the vowel-base verbs end in - ר which changes to - לנ ר before adding the infinitive ending -אר -אר. The infinitive of a verb is its base plus an infinitive ending. The infinitive ending has so many shapes, however, that it is perhaps harder to learn rules for adding the ending than it is to memorize the form for each verb.

Here is a comprehensive list of all the verb bases that have appeared so far in these lessons, classified according to type (vowel base, consonant base). Alternative, nonstandard, but nonetheless frequently heard pronunciations for certain infinitive forms are recorded in square brackets next to the standard infinitive. Subsequent lists in this section are representative of the following complete list in that they contain a base of each type to act as a pattern for all the others of that type.
## Vowel-base verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갔다오-</td>
<td>go [and come back]</td>
<td>갔다와</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갔다주-</td>
<td>bring</td>
<td>갔다주</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>결리-</td>
<td>take [time]; catch [cold]</td>
<td>결리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가르치-</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>가르치</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸어가-</td>
<td>go on foot</td>
<td>걸어가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸어오-</td>
<td>come on foot</td>
<td>걸어와</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가다라-</td>
<td>wait for</td>
<td>가다라</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>끝내-</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>끝내</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꼭내-</td>
<td>finish it</td>
<td>끼내</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꼭-</td>
<td>put on [gloves]; wear [lenses]</td>
<td>꼭</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나가-</td>
<td>go out; attend [church]</td>
<td>나가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나빠-</td>
<td>be bad</td>
<td>나빠 [나빠]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나와-</td>
<td>come out</td>
<td>나와</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내-</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>내</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내려가-</td>
<td>go down</td>
<td>내려가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내려오-</td>
<td>come down</td>
<td>내려와</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내리-</td>
<td>descend; get off</td>
<td>내리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다니-</td>
<td>attend, go on a regular basis</td>
<td>다니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다치-</td>
<td>get hurt, injure oneself</td>
<td>다치</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아가-</td>
<td>go back, return</td>
<td>돌아가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아가서-</td>
<td>die (honorific)</td>
<td>돌아가서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도와주-</td>
<td>help</td>
<td>도와줘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>되-</td>
<td>become; be OK</td>
<td>되어 ~ 되</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드리-</td>
<td>give [to someone esteemed]</td>
<td>드리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드시-</td>
<td>eat, drink (honorific)</td>
<td>드시</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아가-</td>
<td>go in, enter</td>
<td>돌아가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들어오-</td>
<td>come in, enter</td>
<td>들어와</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머나-</td>
<td>leave, depart</td>
<td>머나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마시-</td>
<td>drink</td>
<td>마시</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마치-</td>
<td>finish [it]</td>
<td>마치</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BASE</td>
<td>GLOSS</td>
<td>INFINITIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>만나-</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>만나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>메-</td>
<td>tie; wear a tie</td>
<td>메</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>바빠-</td>
<td>be busy</td>
<td>바빠</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배우-</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>배우</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>버리-</td>
<td>throw away</td>
<td>버리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보-</td>
<td>look at; see</td>
<td>보</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내-</td>
<td>spend (time); send</td>
<td>보내</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무척-</td>
<td>very</td>
<td>무척</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비싸-</td>
<td>be expensive</td>
<td>비싸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사-</td>
<td>buy</td>
<td>사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서-</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉬-</td>
<td>rest</td>
<td>쉬</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시키-</td>
<td>order</td>
<td>시켜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쌓-</td>
<td>be inexpensive</td>
<td>쌓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰아지-</td>
<td>pour [rain]</td>
<td>쓰아지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>write; wear [on head]; use</td>
<td>쓰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아프-</td>
<td>it hurts</td>
<td>아프 [아프]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어리-</td>
<td>be young</td>
<td>어리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예뻐-</td>
<td>be cute, lovable</td>
<td>예뻐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>와</td>
<td>오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>올라가-</td>
<td>go up</td>
<td>올라가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>올라오-</td>
<td>come up</td>
<td>올라오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-이-</td>
<td>be [copula]</td>
<td>-이어 ~ 여</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일어나-</td>
<td>get up</td>
<td>일어나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>go to bed; sleep</td>
<td>자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잠수시-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>잠수서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주-</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>주</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주무시-</td>
<td>sleep (honorific)</td>
<td>주무시</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>추-</td>
<td>dance</td>
<td>추</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>치-</td>
<td>beat, strike; play [golf]</td>
<td>치</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>크-</td>
<td>be large</td>
<td>크</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타-</td>
<td>ride; put in [e.g., sugar]</td>
<td>타</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타고가-</td>
<td>go [riding in]</td>
<td>타고가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타고오-</td>
<td>come [riding in]</td>
<td>타고오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태어나-</td>
<td>be born</td>
<td>태어나</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Fifteen / 297
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
<th>INFinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>피-</td>
<td>bloom, blossom</td>
<td>피</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피우-</td>
<td>smoke</td>
<td>피우</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하-</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>해</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**L-doubling vowel-base verbs**

| 다-르-   | be different | 달라 [달리] |
| 모-르-   | don't know or understand | 몰라 |
| 부-르-   | sing (a song); be full | 불러 |
| 빠-르-   | be fast | 빨라 [빨리] |
| 오-르-   | rise, ascend, go up | 올라 |

**L-extending vowel-base verbs**

| 거-르-   | make [a phonecall] | 걸어 |
| 노-르-   | have fun, play | 놀아 |
| 드-르-   | cost (money); lift, hold | 들여 |
| 머-르-   | be far, distant | 멀어 |
| 무-르-   | bite | 물어 |
| 사-르-   | live | 살아 [살어] |
| 아-르-   | know, understand | 알아 [알어] |
| 여-르-   | open it | 열어 |
| [-지] 마-르- | avoid; don't! | 말아 [말어] |
| 파-르-   | sell | 팔아 [팔어] |
| 푸-르-   | undo it; solve it | 줄어 |

**Consonant-base verbs**

| 갈-   | be the same/like | 갈아 [갈해] |
| 렌찰- | OK, all right | 렌찰아 [렌찰어] |
| 깊-   | cut, sharpen | 깊아 [깊어] |
| 꺼-    | hang up; quit [e.g., smoking] | 꺼여 |
| 넣-    | put in, insert | 넣어 |
| 놓-    | put, place | 놓아 |
| 빗-    | be late | 늦어 |
| 닦-    | shine, polish | 닦아 [닦어] |

*Lesson Fifteen/298*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>닫-</td>
<td>close it</td>
<td>닫아 [닫어]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많-</td>
<td>be much/many</td>
<td>많아 [많아]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맞-</td>
<td>be right, correct</td>
<td>맞아 [맞어]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>먹어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받-</td>
<td>receive, get</td>
<td>받아 [받아]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빼-</td>
<td>remove, take off</td>
<td>빼어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빼-</td>
<td>comb</td>
<td>빼어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신-</td>
<td>wear [on feet]</td>
<td>신어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>싫-</td>
<td>be disliked</td>
<td>싫어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>싫-</td>
<td>want to</td>
<td>싫어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉-</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>앉아 [앉아]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안-</td>
<td>doesn’t, isn’t</td>
<td>안아 [안아]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없-</td>
<td>be lacking</td>
<td>없어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽-</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>읽어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입-</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td>입어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있-</td>
<td>exist; stay; have</td>
<td>있어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잊어먹-</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>잊어먹어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작-</td>
<td>be small</td>
<td>작아 [작아]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적-</td>
<td>be little/few</td>
<td>적어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젊-</td>
<td>be young</td>
<td>젊어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>be good</td>
<td>좋아</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죽-</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>죽어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찾-</td>
<td>look for; find; get [money]</td>
<td>찾아 [찾아]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

나 ~ W Verbs

가까 w -  be near(by)  가까워
가벼 w -  be light  가벼워
고마 w -  be thankful  고마워
구 w -  broil  구워
누 w -  lie down  누워
더 w -  be hot, warm  더워
매 w -  be hot, spicy  매워
무거 w -  be heavy  무거워
쉬 w -  be easy  쉬워
여러 w -  be difficult  어려워
즐거 w -  be enjoyable, pleasant  즐거워
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>추 -</td>
<td>be cold</td>
<td>추위</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>뽕 ~ 뽕 Verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸 - (걸다)</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>걸어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들 - (듣다)</td>
<td>listen (to), hear</td>
<td>들어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물 - (묻다)</td>
<td>ask</td>
<td>물어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>알아듣 - (들다)</td>
<td>understand, catch</td>
<td>알아들어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^ ~ Ø Verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나 (나) -</td>
<td>get/be better</td>
<td>나타</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plain base of a verb, then, is the verb reduced to its minimum form: nothing can easily be taken away from the simple base, because it has only one part. But a variety of things can be added to it, still without making it a complete verb form—without putting on an ending. A simple base with further base-forming things attached to it is a complex base. One kind of complex base is an honorific base—the plain base plus the honorific marker.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
<th>HONORIFIC BASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>걸 -</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>걸으시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기타리 -</td>
<td>wait for</td>
<td>기타리시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>단 -</td>
<td>close</td>
<td>단으시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더 w -</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>더우시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>만나 -</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>만나시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모르 -</td>
<td>do not know</td>
<td>모르시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배우 -</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>배우시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>벗 -</td>
<td>remove</td>
<td>벗으시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보 -</td>
<td>look at</td>
<td>보시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>써 -</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>써시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신 -</td>
<td>wear [on feet]</td>
<td>신으시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아 - 르 -</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>아시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안 -</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>안으시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없 -</td>
<td>(there) isn't</td>
<td>없으시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입 -</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td>입으시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>설 -</td>
<td>be young</td>
<td>설으시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋 -</td>
<td>be good</td>
<td>좋으시 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하 -</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>하시 -</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Fifteen / 300
Nearly every Korean verb form is subject to the dichotomy of plain and honorific, so that when we speak of any form of a verb, we should keep in mind the fact that each form comes in two varieties: (1) the general variety; and (2) the variety that we must not use for ourselves or younger members of our family.

Here are the other kinds of complex bases you have learned, illustrated by 하- do, first shown with its infinitives.

**INFINITIVES** (base plus infinitive ending)

해

하셔

**PAST BASES** (infinitive plus the past marker -_TRI-)

했- 하셨-

**FUTURE BASES** (base plus the future-presumptive marker -겠-)

하겠- 하시겠-

**PAST-PAST BASES** (past base plus the past marker -겠-)

했었- 하셨었-

**PAST-FUTURE BASES** (past base plus future-presumptive marker -겠-)

했겠- 하셨겠-

However many ingredients may go into them, all complex bases share this feature with one another and with simple bases: none are complete until they are finished off with an ending.

### 15.1.2. Verb Endings

Endings added to bases make the verb form complete. In addition to this function, they often perform another job at the same time: they tell whether or not you have come to the end of a sentence.

Any form of a verb ends a clause in Korean. Some clauses are final: the verb at the end completes a sentence. Some are nonfinal: the verb form does not complete a sentence. In this category are the infinitive -이~아, the suspensive -지, the -고 form, the as-soon-as form in -자 마자, and the sequential -(으)니(까) ending. (In the Intimate Style, which you will learn in the sequel volume to this course, the infinitive and the suppositive can end a sentence.)

*Lesson Fifteen/301*
The most important final endings you have learned so far are these.

a. the Polite Style ending -어요, which consists of the infinitive -아/어요, etc.) plus the polite particle 요.

b. the Formal Style endings in -(으)니/아 (declaratives), -(으)니/아(가) (questions), -(으)니/아(서) (suggestions), and -(으)시키/아 (commands)

The Polite Style ending typically finishes a sentence, whether it is a present-tense form (attached to a base), a past-tense form (attached to a past base), or a future-presumptive form (attached to a future base).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>해요</td>
<td>하세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>했어요</td>
<td>하셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하겠어요</td>
<td>하시겠어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does</td>
<td>[someone esteemed] does</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>did</td>
<td>[someone esteemed] did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will do</td>
<td>[someone esteemed] will do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you use this ending at the end of your sentence, it implies that you are on informal, though dignified, terms with the person to whom you are talking.

One-shape Endings and Two-shape Endings

Endings are either one-shape endings or two-shape endings. One-shape endings are much the same, regardless whether they are attached to a vowel base or a consonant base. Two-shape endings have one shape which attaches to vowel bases and another which attaches to consonant bases. For purposes of attaching endings, the group of vowel bases includes not only simple bases (like 가-, 서-, 기다리-, 보-) but also all honorific bases since each ends in -(으)시- regardless of the plain base on which it is built.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Honorific base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>가지-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받-</td>
<td>받으시-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Similarly, all past bases and future bases are consonant bases, regardless of what sort of base you began with.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Past base</th>
<th>Future base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>가(서) 써-</td>
<td>가(서) 써-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받-</td>
<td>받(으시) 있-</td>
<td>받(으시) 있-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Fifteen / 302
Here are all the endings you have learned, grouped according to whether they are one-shape or two-shape.

### ONE-SHAPE ENDINGS

- **past marker**: 
- **susceptive**: -지
- **suppositive**: -지 요
- **but**: -지만
- **future-presumptive**: -겠-
- **rhetor. retort**: -잘아요
- **고-form**: -고 (еще, уже)
- **dictionary form**: -다
- **as soon as**: -마자

### TWO-SHAPE ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>After vowel</th>
<th>After consonant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>honorific</td>
<td>- 시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honorific polite</td>
<td>- 서요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequential</td>
<td>- 너 (가)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purposive</td>
<td>- 리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formal decl.</td>
<td>- 나타다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formal imper.</td>
<td>- 싫시요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formal propos.</td>
<td>- 시다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formal interrog.</td>
<td>- 나타가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suggestions</td>
<td>- 뒷가요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consider doing</td>
<td>- 뒷가 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wanna</td>
<td>- 뒷에요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prob. future</td>
<td>- 뒷에요머</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immed. future</td>
<td>- 뒷에요머</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

One special feature about two-shape endings is that some of them, like the purposive ending - (으) 라 (and other endings you will learn in the sequel volume), are attached to the extended base of L-extending bases.

노- 라-   play   놀리

Several peculiarities, however, must be mentioned about one-shape endings. The past marker - 만- is omitted here because it is attached to infinitives rather than directly to other bases and so does not follow the same rules.

1. The base 참수시- *eat* can abbreviate to 잡웃- before one-shape endings.

| 잡수시지만 | 잡웃지만      | [someone esteemed] eats, but |
| 잡수시겠어요 | 잡웃겠어요   | [someone esteemed] will eat |

Lesson Fifteen / 303
2. One-shape endings are attached to the extended bases of L-extending verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>아- 려-</th>
<th>know</th>
<th>알지만</th>
<th>knows, but</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>알겠어요</td>
<td>knows or will know</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. When a one-shape ending that begins with 뭐, 스, or 니 is attached to a consonant base that ends in 오, the strings 오디, 오스, and 오니 are pronounced 휘, 스, and 헤.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>좋-</th>
<th>be good</th>
<th>좋지</th>
<th>[조지]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>좋겠-</td>
<td></td>
<td>[조케 즈-]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is true also of 백 and 백:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>많-</th>
<th>be much/many</th>
<th>많지</th>
<th>[만지]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>많겠-</td>
<td></td>
<td>[만케 즈-]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>싫-</th>
<th>be disliked</th>
<th>싫지</th>
<th>[실지]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>싫겠-</td>
<td></td>
<td>[실케 즈-]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. When a one-shape ending is attached to a consonant base that ends in w, the w changes to 냠.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>더&amp;w-</th>
<th>hot</th>
<th>냠지</th>
<th>[립지]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>냠겠-</td>
<td></td>
<td>[립케 즈-]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Were it not for the other forms (더워, 더우시-) we would not know that such bases are different from the usual bases ending in 냠 like 입- wear: 입지, 입고, 입겠-; 입어, 입으시-. In traditional Korean grammar, the 냠 ~ w verbs are called "irregular 냠- verbs."

5. When a one-shape ending is attached to a consonant base that ends in 움 (ద ~ 움 verbs) the 움 changes to 푼.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>들-</th>
<th>hear</th>
<th>들지</th>
<th>[드지]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>들고</td>
<td></td>
<td>[드고]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들겠-</td>
<td></td>
<td>[드케 즈-]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Fifteen / 304
Notice the difference between the behavior of these bases and the L-extended vowel bases: 널 - 널 - *lift; cost has the forms 널지, 널고, 널게-. The infinitives are the same. Both 널- and 널- come out as 널어.

6. The usual automatic sound changes take place when a base ending in a consonant attaches an ending shape that begins with a consonant. First, if the base ends in a consonant or cluster other than 늘, 웃, 닫, 닫, 널, 월, 월, in pronouncing the resulting form you reduce the consonant or cluster to one of those: 네 and 월 are treated like 널; 웃 and usually 월 are treated like 웃; 웃 is treated like 웃; 웃 is treated like 웃; 웃, 월, 월, and 웃 are all treated like 웃.

Next, there are a number of automatic adjustments between the syllable-final consonant at the end of the base and the syllable-beginning consonant at the start of the ending.

A. Voiceless consonants are doubled (reinforced) after a voiceless consonant, so that

- 널- 널- is pronounced 널 널
- 널- 널- is pronounced 널 널
- 널- 널- is pronounced 널 널
- 널- 널- is pronounced 널 널
- 널- 널- is pronounced 널 널
- 널- 널- is pronounced 널 널

However, - 널- 널- comes out just 널 (since you don't get the same consonant repeated more than once).

Note that sequences like - 널- 널- and - 널- 널- can sound like 널 and 웃, e.g. 받고 싶어요 [바고 시켜요] wants to receive and 받지요 [바찌요] Of course I receive it!

B. After verb-base final 웃 or 웃 (or an 웃 that is reduced from a cluster—simple 웃 changes to 웃), you reinforce (double) a 웃, 웃, 웃, or 웃 that begins an ending. Since the Korean spelling does not show this doubling, you should be especially mindful of this.

선- wears [on feet] 선지 [선게]
선고 [선고]
선셋- [선게 웃-]

Below is a chart of the major verb endings you have learned so far with some representative bases (- - - means the form is odd or does not exist).

Lesson Fifteen / 305
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-(스)ㅂ니다</th>
<th>-지요</th>
<th>-(으)ㄹ례요</th>
<th>-(으)니까</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-이-</td>
<td>-입니다</td>
<td>-이지요</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-하-</td>
<td>-합니다</td>
<td>-하지요</td>
<td>하례요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-되-</td>
<td>-けれど다</td>
<td>-되지요</td>
<td>빌례요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-피-</td>
<td>-피니다</td>
<td>-피지요</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-절-</td>
<td>-절습니다</td>
<td>-절지요</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-단-</td>
<td>-단습니다</td>
<td>-단지요</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-막-</td>
<td>-막습니다</td>
<td>-막지요</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-물-</td>
<td>-물습니다</td>
<td>-물지요</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-결-</td>
<td>-결입니다</td>
<td>-결지요</td>
<td>결례요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-오-</td>
<td>-옵니다</td>
<td>-오지요</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-실-</td>
<td>-실입니다</td>
<td>-실지요</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-추-</td>
<td>-줍니다</td>
<td>-추지요</td>
<td>출례요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-맞-</td>
<td>-맞습니다</td>
<td>-맞지요</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-처리-</td>
<td>-처리합니다</td>
<td>-처리지요</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-빛-</td>
<td>-빛입니다</td>
<td>-빛지요</td>
<td>빛례요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-아프-</td>
<td>-아프니다</td>
<td>-아프지요</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-예뻐-</td>
<td>-예뻐니다</td>
<td>-예뻐지요</td>
<td>예뻐례요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-무거워-</td>
<td>-무겁습니다</td>
<td>-무겁지요</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-느워-</td>
<td>-느릅니다</td>
<td>-느릅지요</td>
<td>느릅례요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Fifteen / 306
Exercise 1: Matching Synonyms

Here are two columns of Korean expressions. For each expression in the first column, there appears in the second column an expression of similar meaning. Call out each word in the first column, then find its matching word in the second column. Now translate and explain any difference between the words (by example, if possible). You may want to say 겪어요. They are exactly alike or 좀 달라요. They are a little different. Your tutor may want to ask 어떻게 달라요? How are they different?

1. 좋은
2. 좋아요
3. 한 주간
4. 일년
5. 일어요
6. 교수
7. 거기
8. 세 명
9. 날마다
10. 백화점
11. 대한
12. 공부해요.

학교
일주일
 пенfindById
 매일
 일두 달
 배워요
 바요
 세 사람
 상점
 드리요
 그 곳
 선생

Lesson Fifteen / 307
Exercise 2: Matching Opposites

Now, here are two more columns of Korean expressions. This time, you are to pick from the first column the expression of opposite meaning to match each of the expressions in the second column. Use the two expressions in sentences; if possible, put them both into one sentence.

1. 전에
   - 받아요
2. 추워요
   - 아들
3. 여름
   - 어제
4. 일해요
   - 할머니
5. 밥
   - 쉬어요
6. 일어나요
   - 후에
7. 가을
   - 오후
8. 손자
   - 겨울
9. 이야기해요
   - 마치요
10. 내일
    - 낮
11. 할아버지
    - 남동생
12. 샀어요
    - 더워요
13. 오전
    - 누워요
14. 밤
    - 팔어요
15. 사요
    - 비싸요
16. 서요
    - 붙
17. 시작해요
    - 손녀
18. 여동생
    - 들어요
Exercise 3: Picking the Misfits

Here are six sets of Korean expressions—four to a set. Three expressions in each set have meanings that are grouped around the same subject matter; one does not. You are to pick the misfit. Then speaking Korean, try to show why it is a misfit.

1. 개가 나와요
   추위요
   높이 와요
   비가 와요
2. 장갑
   구두
   교회
   넥타이

3. 자동차로 가요
   걸어가요
   기차를 타요
   전화를 걸어요
4. 자매
   사내
   사위
   손주

5. 입어요
   싶어요
   신어요
   씨요
6. 모자 좀 써요
   머리가 아파요
   옷을 입어요
   머리를 빗어요

Particle Review

Exercise 4: Particle Manipulation

The new particles, and new uses for old particles, that you have learned about in Lessons Eleven through Fourteen are listed here, together with the sections where they were discussed.

품 (이)나 about, approximately (see 11.3.)
(이)나 about, approximately (12.6.)
either...or... (12.6.)
가지 to, up to, as far as; until (11.4.)
게 to or for [someone esteemed] (13.1.)
게서 subject [someone esteemed] (13.1.)
(honorific equivalent of 이/가)
만 only, just (11.3.)
마다 every (11.3.)

Lesson Fifteen /309
Express the English sentences in Korean. Make sure you use in each at least one of the particles in the list. Notice the multiple Korean translations for the English word get: 받-(receive), 가-(go), 사-(buy), 있-(have got).

1. I want to get married by next year.
2. Shall we go on the train?
3. Either the train or the subway is all right.
4. I haven't any clothes except these.
5. It'll be expensive, but I'll buy some new clothes.
6. I bought both hat and shoes.
7. Approximately ten people came to the party.
8. I read the paper every morning.
9. How long does it take to get [go] from Seoul to Pusan on the train?
10. I ride the subway about once a day.
11. Its raining today, but I'm going downtown in order to see a movie.
12. How much time have we got? Only about ten minutes.
13. I've eaten nothing but meat today.
14. I telephoned the teacher twice, but he wasn't home.
15. How many times a year do you go to concerts?
16. I worked from 8 A.M. till 10 P.M. today.
17. It didn't snow yesterday. And it didn't rain, either.

To reinforce your hold on these particles, repeat the list and make up a Korean sentence using each of them.
Honorifics

Exercise 5: Tell a Story

Here is the bare outline of a story in English. Elaborating on this outline and changing
details as you wish to, you must tell the story in Korean twice. The first time, use as the
central character (he) your younger brother or sister, or a close friend, or some other person
for whom it is not normal to use honorifics. In the second telling, construct your story
around a highly esteemed person, your parents, a teacher who is very old, some other
elderly relative. Practice your story aloud ahead of time so that you can tell it smoothly,
with a minimum of pausing for thought.

He's very old. He's ___ years old. He lives in Seoul. His house is not large, but it's
very nice. He usually eats his meals and sleeps at home, but sometimes he goes to
town and stays there for several days. He gets up early every day and works hard.
On Sundays, he rests. He goes to the cinema or the park, or he stays home and
reads. He owns a great many books. He smokes and reads the newspaper every
evening. He doesn't like radio music so he doesn't listen much, but he often goes to
concerts. I telephone him several times a week. I often get letters from him. Sometimes
he gives me books or clothes. He likes his family. There are six people in his family.
He lives with his wife and children, and he often takes walks with them and plays
with them.

Autobiographical Sketch

Exercise 6

You are now in a position to compose a fairly detailed autobiographical sketch. Include
some dates, your birthday, other significant events, and ages of close relatives and friends.
You can also tell about the sort of things you do all day on typical days, what you like and
why, and what you have done and will do.

Plan a five-minute talk in Korean along the lines of this scanty outline. Get firm enough
control of it so that your speech will be smooth talk, very little silence. Don't write out every
word you are going to say. Just jot down an outline and reminders of the expressions you
will need. At home, practice making up the right sort of sentences to express what you want
to say. Instead of memorizing the sentences, make them up again, with spontaneous variations,
when you deliver it orally.

Lesson Fifteen / 311
The Formal Style

Exercise 7: Change to Formal Style

Each of the following items is a statement or question in the Polite Style. Change them to Formal Style. (Remember that the formal equivalent of 나 I is 저는, and of 우리 we is 저희 or 저희들). Translate each sentence.

1. 영국분이세요?
2. 나는 영국 사람이 아니에요.
3. 그림, 어디서 오셨어요?
4. 미국서 왔어요.
5. 미국은 한국서 멀어요?
6. 가깝지 않아요. 대단히 멀어요.
7. 미국에서는 무슨 일을 하셨어요?
8. 학교에서 경제학을 가르쳤어요.
9. 지금 우리 학교를 좀 구경하시겠어요?
10. 네, 학생들을 만나고 싶어요.
11. 우리 학교는 작지만, 학생은 많아요.
12. 답방을 하나 피우시겠어요?
13. 고맙습니다. 나는 답방을 너무 좋아해요, 늘 피워요.
14. 학생들이 어디서 점심을 먹어요?
15. 학생들의 점이 다 가까워요. 그래서, 점에서 점심을 먹지요.
16. 선생들은 좋아요?
17. 여기가 우리 교실이에요.
18. 교실이 참 컷어요.
19. 교실이 크지만, 책이 많이 안에요.
20. 우리 학교는 돈이 없어요. 그래서, 책을 많이 못 사요.
Review of Numbers

Exercise 8: Numerals and Counters

Here are eight brief sentences, each with something missing. Say each sentence aloud in Korean five times, inserting one after another of the number expressions listed below it. (Watch out for changes in meaning that might call for a shift in one of the basic words of the sentence.)

1. 나는 여제 ______ 일했습니다.  2. 지난 주에 서울에서 ______ 밟습니다.
   for six hours
   from ten A.M. until four P.M.
   for only forty minutes
   from quarter to seven until quarter
   after one
   for three hours
   three friends
   four movie theaters [use 개]
   ten American doctors
   five pop singers
   about 10,000 people
   eighteen buildings

3. 교실 안에 ______ 있습니다.  4. 나는 중국말을 ______ 배웠습니다.
   three newspapers
   about fifty books
   forty students
   three teachers
   six windows and two doors
   for three years
   for only five weeks
   for several months
   in 1987
   from February till June

5. 우리 동생은 ______입니다.  6. 우체국 앞에는 ______ 있습니다.
   two years old
   one year old
   four years old
   forty years old
   twenty years old
   two bicycles
   twelve cars
   four dogs
   five doctors

7. 나는 ______ 태어났습니다.  8. 기차는 ______ 떠납니다.
   twenty-one years ago
   on April 1, 1940
   on September 30, 1966
   on May 27, 1928
   on January 14, 1945
   at 6:18 P.M.
   at 4:42 A.M.
   at 7:37 P.M.
   at 5:05 P.M.
   at 1:19 A.M.
Korean to English Translation

Exercise 9: Translate into English

1. 그 영화가 너무 재미 없었어요. 중간에 나오고 싶었어요.
2. 육년 전에는 안경을 썼지만, 요즘은 콘택트렌즈를 끼고 다니지요.
3. 그 책을 어제 학생 위에 놓았어요. 누가 잃고 있을거예요.
4. 어제까지는 일본에 가고 싶었지만, 오늘은 한국에 가고 싶어요.
5. A. 이를 닦으셨어요?
   B. 지금 닦고 있잖아요?!
6. 문제를 세 개씩 줄게요. 그런데, 풀겠어요?
7. 저는 대학교에서 정치학만 공부하고 있어요. 가끔 하루에 여섯 시간씩 숙제를 하지요. 그리고 그 다음에는 쉬어요.
8. 오늘 아침에 누구를 안 만났어요? 아니오. 아직 나가지 않았잖아요?
9. 내일은 개학입니다. 금년에는 열심히 공부할거야.
10. 나는 열심히 하겠지만 혼은 아마 주로 놀 거야.
11. 나는 나가지 않음래요. 집에서 커피를 마실래요.
12. 이 음식은 별로 맛이 없어요. 다른 거 먹으러가요?
14. 어제 내가 우리 고양이를 찾으려 나갔지만 못 찾았어.
15. 사장님 탁발에 잘 지내고 있습니다.
16. A. 이 문제를 몇 풀겠어요.
   B. 그럼 제가 할게요.
17. 빨리 가요! 늦었잖아요!
18. 내일 추울까요? 모르겠어요.
19. 학교에 갈까요? 오늘은 일요일이잖아요!
20. 그 사쓰가 내 거지요? 빨리 주세요!
21. 목요일날은 커피 마시리 다방에 갈래.
22. 오전에 FAC는 구두정 장갑을 빌아요.
23. 테니스 칠래요?
24. 나는 한 달에 두 번씩 교회에 나가요.
25. 커피를 다 마셨지만, 맞은 없었어요.
27. 어느 나라에서 오셨어요? 러시아에서 왔지만, 심년 전이있지요.
28. 이 책들은 다 달라요, 그리고 또 제미 있어요.
   어느 시점에서 사셨어요?
29. 우리 밤은 폭발하지만, 공부를 열심히 안 해요.
30. 그 이야기는 싫어요. 다른 거 하자요.

Lesson Fifteen / 314
31. 오늘은 날짜가 나쁘지만, 기본이 좋아요.
32. 그 행을 먹지 말아요!
33. 이 일을 다음 주일까지 마칠까 해요.
34. 우리하고 같이 살지 않지만, 같이 살고 싶어하지요.
35. 진짜 밥에 앉을까요?
36. 여자 친구를 찾고 있지만, 아직 결혼하고 싶지 않아요.
37. 준다면에서는 지하철도 버스도 문제가 많아요.
38. 이번 학기에는 정치학이랑, 경제학이랑, 한국말을 공부하고 있어요.
39. 식구가 몇 명이에요?
40. 저희 아버지는 교회에 다니시지만, 동생은 안 다녀요.
41. 요즘 책을 읽지 못 하고 있어요.
42. 교수님이 지난 여름에 우리 집에 오셨어요.
43. 우리 조카는 아직 미혼이지만, 언젠가 결혼하겠지요.
44. 할아버지가 돈을 많이 주세요?
45. 오늘 저녁은 시내에서 연극을 볼까 해요.
46. 저녁에서 음료수를 팔아요? 물론 안 팔지요.
47. 우리 사촌 동생은 미국에서 군인이에요.
48. 형제가 몇 명이시지요?
49. 커피 드실거예요? 아니오, 일찍 자고 싶어요.
50. 미국에서 러시아말 좀 배웠을 거예요.

English to Korean Translation

Exercise 10: Translate into Korean

1. He's probably already come (three ways).
2. That student is waiting for Mr. Brown.
3. I've only 3000 won. So I can't buy all these goods.
4. Do you often ride that bike?
5. I'm going to study for just fifteen minutes.
6. He won't get the money from his father this week, I bet.
7. Is Mr. Pak's nephew going to graduate next year?
8. Would you happen to know the time?
9. Would you like to take a walk in the park together?
10. That girl must be my brother's fiancée.
11. Excuse me, but I'll just pop upstairs a moment.
12. The day after tomorrow I'll meet Mr. Chang's sister.

Lesson Fifteen / 315
13. Would you like to (do you wanna) try these clothes on now?
14. Are you in a good mood?
15. My head aches terribly.
16. In the summer I'll have lots of exams.
17. Where is the bus stop?
18. I saw it yesterday, but I don't know.
19. Comb your hair!
20. Do you suppose he is at home? Of course he must be!
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가게</td>
<td>a shop; store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가까워</td>
<td>be close, near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가끔</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가르치</td>
<td>teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가방</td>
<td>bag, briefcase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가벼운</td>
<td>be light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가수</td>
<td>pop singer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가을</td>
<td>autumn, fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가족</td>
<td>family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가장</td>
<td>the most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가장자리</td>
<td>kinds, varieties (counter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갈아입다</td>
<td>change (clothes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>감자</td>
<td>potato(e)s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>감자깡</td>
<td>crispy fried potatoes, potato chips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갑자기</td>
<td>suddenly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간</td>
<td>go (and come back)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갈라오다</td>
<td>bring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갈라짐</td>
<td>be similar; be the same together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개별</td>
<td>months (time or duration)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개학(음)</td>
<td>(counter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기기</td>
<td>start term/school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걱정</td>
<td>there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걱정(음)</td>
<td>a worry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>건강</td>
<td>worry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>건강하다</td>
<td>be healthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>건너편</td>
<td>across/opposite from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>건물</td>
<td>building</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸다</td>
<td>walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸리다</td>
<td>take (time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸어가다</td>
<td>walk, go on foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸어오다</td>
<td>walk, come on foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>겨울</td>
<td>winter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>결혼(음)</td>
<td>marry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경제</td>
<td>economy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경제학</td>
<td>economics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계산서</td>
<td>bill, check</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계시다</td>
<td>be, exist, stay (honorific)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고기</td>
<td>meat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고대</td>
<td>Korea University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고마워</td>
<td>be/feel thankful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고모</td>
<td>aunt (father’s sister)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고모부</td>
<td>uncle (father’s sister’s husband)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고양이</td>
<td>cat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한국어</td>
<td>영어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골프</td>
<td>golf (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골프 (골프) 치기</td>
<td>play golf (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>곳</td>
<td>place (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부 (학문) 하기</td>
<td>study (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공원</td>
<td>park (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공책</td>
<td>notebook (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과목</td>
<td>school subject (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과일</td>
<td>fruit (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>광화문</td>
<td>Kwanghwamun, Kwanghwasa Gate (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>판찰</td>
<td>be OK, be alright (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>평창하</td>
<td>be quite something, be impressive (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>평창하 하</td>
<td>very, very much (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교수</td>
<td>professor (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교실</td>
<td>classroom (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교외</td>
<td>suburb(s) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교재</td>
<td>teaching materials; textbook (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교환</td>
<td>exchange (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교환원</td>
<td>switchboard, telephone, exchange operator (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교환학생</td>
<td>exchange student (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교회</td>
<td>church (Protestant) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구경 (운) 하기</td>
<td>do viewing or sightsee (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구경 (운) 가기</td>
<td>go viewing/sightseeing (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구두</td>
<td>shoes (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>국립</td>
<td>national (-ly) established (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>국립대학교</td>
<td>a national university (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>군대</td>
<td>places, institutions (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>군인</td>
<td>soldier, serviceman (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>권</td>
<td>bound volumes (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>귀</td>
<td>ear (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그 NOUN</td>
<td>that NOUN (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그날</td>
<td>just, just (as one is), without doing anything (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그레도</td>
<td>Even so; Nevertheless (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그레서</td>
<td>And so; And then; Therefore (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그리니까</td>
<td>So, what I mean to say is; So, what you’re saying is (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그러면</td>
<td>Then, In that case, If so (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그런데</td>
<td>But. And then; By the way (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그럼</td>
<td>In that case; Then (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그렇게</td>
<td>in that way, like that; in that manner (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그렇지만</td>
<td>But (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그리고</td>
<td>And also; And then (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그림</td>
<td>picture (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그저께</td>
<td>day before yesterday (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>극장</td>
<td>theatre; cinema (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>근처</td>
<td>the area near, the vicinity (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>글쎄요</td>
<td>I don’t really know. Let me think. (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>길년</td>
<td>this year (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>금요일</td>
<td>Friday (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기타러</td>
<td>wait (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기본</td>
<td>feelings, mood (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기본 (이) 나쁘다</td>
<td>be in a bad mood (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기본 (이) 좋다</td>
<td>be in a good mood (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기숙사</td>
<td>dormitory (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기타</td>
<td>train (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>길</td>
<td>road, way, street (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>커피</td>
<td>café (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깔끔하다</td>
<td>cut (hair), sharpen (pencil), mow (grass) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깔끔하다</td>
<td>neatly, cleanly (8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
without fail; be sure to (11)
flower(s) (12)
quit (smoking, drinking) (14)
the end; the tip (11)
it stops, ends, finishes (7)
finishes it (11)
wear (gloves, ring) (9)
wear (lenses) (13)

I (5)
get/be better (7)
attend (church) (8); go out (9)
country, nation (5)
tree (6)
be bad (8)
come out (9)
age (11)
in the future, some time later, later (11)
day (7)
weather (13)
Great South Gate (6)
younger brother (13)
brother and sister (13)
man (6)
boyfriend (6)
husband (5)
daytime; noon (7)
pay (14)
next year (11)
going down (9)
come down (9)
descend (9)

K-E Vocabulary/319
leg (14)
tea room, tabang (9)
after; adjacent, next to (6)
get hurt, injure oneself (14)
polish; brush (teeth) (9)
close it (7)
months (counter) (11)
dollar (counter) (11)
cigarette(s) (5)
vehicles, machines (counter) (11)
embassy (6)
four-year college (8)
university (6)
house (honorific) (9)
more (9)
Thanks to NOUN; Thanks to you (14)
be hot (7)
place (13)
a date (13)
have a date (13)
degree of temperature (11)
library (7)
city (12)
help (11)
arrive (9)
German language (5)
Germany (5)
German language (5)
a German (5)
money (6)
costs money (14)
goes back, returns there (12)
die, pass away (honorific) (14)
comes back, returns here (12)
neighborhood (11)
Great East Gate (6)
younger brother or sister (9)
for the duration of, during, for (a week) (13)
It’s OK; It’ll do; It’s acceptable; It works (8)
become (7)
both, both of them (13)
at the back; behind (6)
costs (money) (14)
lift; hold (14)
dry cleaning (12)
give (honorific) (13)
eat, drink (honorific) (8)
listen to; hear (7); take (courses) (8)
go in, enters (12)
come in, enter; return home (12)
back, spine (14)
daughter (hon.) (13)
daughter (9)
time (when) (12)
because of, on account of (9)
leave, depart (7)
Moreover, What’s more; (yet) again (9)
be bright, intelligent (12)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>영어</th>
<th>한국어</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lighter (6) Russia (5)</td>
<td>라이터 러시아 러시아어 러시아인 러시아어 사람 런던 레스토랑 리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the living room (in an apartment) (13) animals, fish, birds (counter) (11) drink (7) one’s mind, spiritual center, heart (12) finish it (12) meet (7) comics, cartoons (12) be much/many (7) a lot (adverb) (7) language; words (5) obey (listens to words) (8) words, speech (humble or honorific equivalent of 말) (8) say (humble), say (humble) (13) Go ahead; Please say what you have to say. (8) speak, talk (7) taste (7) taste bad, not taste good (7) be tasty, delicious (7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맞- 맞은편 매- 매- 매- 매일 대표소 매주 미 미- 민 미리 미리(가) 나쁘 미리(가) 좋 민 민이- (w/ 품) 면어 면지 면리 면리서 면느리 명 명함 몽 몽년생이세요 몽학년이세요 모두 모레 모르 모자 목요일 잘 생겼 무- 무- 무거우 무릎 무손 무영 무역</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be right, correct; hit the mark (13) across/opposite from (6) put on/wear (a tie) (9) tie (7) be spicy (11) every day (8) ticket counter (7) beer (11) what? (5) be distant, far (8) head; hair (8) be dumb (8) be bright/intelligent (8) eat (7) starch it (12) first (of all), before anything else (8) far (13) from a distance (13) daughter-in-law (13) persons, people (counter) (11) namecard, business card (9) how many? (7) how many? some/several (11) What year were you born in? (11) What year are you in (school)? (11) all, everyone (13) day after tomorrow (14) not know (7) hat (9) Thursday (7) be ugly (9) bite (7) be heavy (12) knee (14) which/what kind of? (5) what? (5) trade (9)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
무역회사
문
문제
물
물
물건
물론
물론이에요.
뭐
미국
미국 사람
미안해-
미혼(이에요)
밀

배
배(가) 푸르-
배우-
배화점
버리-
버스
변
번호
별씨
별로-
별로 + negative
병
보-
보내-
보통
보도
볼펜
볼
봉지
부르-
부르-
부모(들)
부엌
부인
부자
부츠
부치-
부탁(을) 하-

분
분
분
분필
불
불
불고기
불어
불편하-

비
비빔밥

stomach (12)
(stomach) be full, sated (12)
learn (7)
department store (6)
throw it away (13)
bus (8)
times (counter) (11)
number (11)
already (12)
take off (clothes) (7)
(not) particularly (9)
bottle (counter) (11)
look at, see (7)
spend (time); send (9)
usually, normally (7)
corridor, hallway (12)
corridor, hallway (12)
spring (13)
paper bag (counter) (11)
sing (a song) (7)
be full (stomach) (12)
parents (6)
kitchen (13)
your/his wife (5)
rich person (11)
boots (9)
post it, mail it (9)
make a request, ask a
favor/errand (8)
esteeemed people
(counter) (11)
minutes (counter) (11)
person (honorific) (5)
chalk (5)
fire; light; a light (7)
U.S. dollars (counter)
(11)
pulgogi (7)
French language (5)
be uncomfortable,
inconvenient (14)
rain (13)
pibimpap (7)
시아버지 (father-in-law) (woman’s honorific) (13)
시아버지 (father-in-law) (13)
시어머니 (mother-in-law) (woman’s) (13)
시어머니 (mother-in-law woman’s, honorific) (13)
시작 (begin) (11)
시장 (market) (6)
시청 (city hall) (6)
시기 (order) (11)
시험 (examination) (14)
식구 (family members) (13)
식당 (dining room, restaurant, cafeteria, refectory) (7)
식탁 (dining table, kitchen) table (11)
신 - (wear (footwear)) (9)
신문 (newspaper) (5)
신용카드 (credit card) (8)
신발 (shoes, footwear in general) (9)
In fact (9)
be disliked, distasteful (12)
dislike it (12)
be bored (12)
want to (9)
cheap, inexpensive (8)
pours (rain) (13)
wear (glasses) (13)
wear (a hat) (13)
use it (8)
write (7)
polite title for name (5)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>아저씨</td>
<td>mister (any man old enough to be married) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아저씨</td>
<td>mister; form of address (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아주</td>
<td>very (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아주미니</td>
<td>ma'am (casual for 아주머니) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아줌마</td>
<td>ma'am (any woman old enough to be married) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아내</td>
<td>my wife (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아내면</td>
<td>Or (sentence-initial), or (between nouns) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아니예요</td>
<td>No; It is not (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아드님</td>
<td>son (honorable) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아들</td>
<td>son (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아래</td>
<td>below, lower, down, downstairs (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아래층</td>
<td>downstairs; the floor below (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아르바이트</td>
<td>part-time work for students (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—(을) 하-</td>
<td>do part-time work for students (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아마</td>
<td>maybe, probably (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아마도</td>
<td>maybe, probably (more tentative) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아무거나</td>
<td>anything, anything at all (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아버님</td>
<td>father (honorable) (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아버지</td>
<td>father (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아이</td>
<td>child (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아이스크림</td>
<td>ice cream (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아침</td>
<td>morning; breakfast (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아침식사</td>
<td>(not) yet, still (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아프-</td>
<td>hurt, be painful (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안</td>
<td>inside (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안경</td>
<td>glasses (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안녕히 주무세요.</td>
<td>Good night (honorable) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안녕요</td>
<td>It's no good; It won't do; It's not acceptable;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안녕요</td>
<td>It doesn't work. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안주</td>
<td>snacks to go with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>악-</td>
<td>understand, catch (something said) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앞</td>
<td>in front (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>애</td>
<td>child (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>애기</td>
<td>baby (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야구</td>
<td>baseball (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야구(를) 하-</td>
<td>play baseball (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>약-</td>
<td>medicine (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>약(을) 먹-</td>
<td>take (eat) medicine (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>약혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>get engaged (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>약혼자</td>
<td>fiancé(e) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>양복</td>
<td>foreign cigarettes (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>양말</td>
<td>socks (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>양주</td>
<td>a suit (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예기</td>
<td>whiskey, western spirits (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어느</td>
<td>talk, chat, story (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어느 것인지?</td>
<td>which? what kind of? (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여기</td>
<td>where? (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어떻게?</td>
<td>How is it? How about it? (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어때?</td>
<td>how? in what way? (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어려-</td>
<td>be difficult (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어리-</td>
<td>be young (a child) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어머니</td>
<td>mother (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어머님</td>
<td>mother (honorable) (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어제</td>
<td>yesterday (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연니</td>
<td>older sister (girl’s) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>언제</td>
<td>when? (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>언제나</td>
<td>always (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>언젠가</td>
<td>sometime or other, at one time; some time ago (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>얼마</td>
<td>how many? how much? (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>얼마나</td>
<td>about how much? approximately how much? (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>얼음</td>
<td>ice (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>염 -</td>
<td>be nonexistent, not exist, not have (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없어요</td>
<td>does not exist, there is not, aren’t (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영터리</td>
<td>rubbish, junk, something or someone cheap and shabby (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엘리베이터</td>
<td>elevator, lift (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여 - 르 -</td>
<td>open it (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여관</td>
<td>small hotel, inn (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여기</td>
<td>here (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여기 좀 와요!</td>
<td>Say there! Excuse me! (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여동생</td>
<td>younger sister (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여러</td>
<td>several, various (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여름</td>
<td>summer (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>역</td>
<td>several, various (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여자</td>
<td>Hello! Excuse me! (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여자친구</td>
<td>girlfriend (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>역 -면/-년</td>
<td>train station (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연구</td>
<td>years (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연구 (들) 하 -</td>
<td>research (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연구실</td>
<td>do research (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(professor’s) office (9)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연구</td>
<td>play, drama (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연대</td>
<td>Yonsei University (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연락 (을) 하 -</td>
<td>get in touch, make contact (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연세</td>
<td>age (honorable) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연필</td>
<td>pencil (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>염심히</td>
<td>diligently (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영국</td>
<td>England (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영국 사람</td>
<td>English person (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영사관</td>
<td>consulate (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영어</td>
<td>English language (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영화</td>
<td>movie, film (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영화 구경 (을) 하 -</td>
<td>see a film (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영화 배우</td>
<td>movie actor (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영 -</td>
<td>next to, beside (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예쁘 -</td>
<td>pretty, cute (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예약</td>
<td>make a reservation (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예약 (을) 하 -</td>
<td>come (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오 -</td>
<td>today (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오렌지 추스</td>
<td>orange juice (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오르 -</td>
<td>ascend, rise (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오른쪽</td>
<td>on the right (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오른편</td>
<td>on the right (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오빠</td>
<td>older brother (girl’s) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오전</td>
<td>morning, A.M. (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오징어</td>
<td>squid (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오징어 꼬</td>
<td>squid chips (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오후</td>
<td>afternoon (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오후</td>
<td>P.M. (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>올라가 -</td>
<td>go up (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>올라오 -</td>
<td>come up (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옷</td>
<td>clothes (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>와이셔츠/ 셔츠</td>
<td>shirt, dress shirt (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>왜요?</td>
<td>wine (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>왜나하면</td>
<td>why? (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>왜나하면</td>
<td>The reason is; Because (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외교관</td>
<td>diplomat (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외국</td>
<td>foreign country (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외국 사람</td>
<td>a foreigner (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외국어</td>
<td>foreign language (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외삼촌</td>
<td>uncle (on mother’s side) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이 이름</td>
<td>this (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이데</td>
<td>be (the same as, equal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이따가</td>
<td>to) (copula) (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이렇게</td>
<td>Ewha Women's University (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이모</td>
<td>in a while, a while later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이모부</td>
<td>in this way, like this (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이번 NOUN</td>
<td>(given) name (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>aunt (mother's sister)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>uncle (mother's sister's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>husband) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>this NOUN (week, month) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>be strange, odd (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>talk, chat, story (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>talk, chat (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>now (finally) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>second-year student (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>get divorced (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>portion (of food) (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>ginseng (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>ginseng wine (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>now (finally) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>matter, business (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>days (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>work, do work (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>Japan (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>Japanese language (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>person from Japan (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>Japanese language (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>get up; stand up (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>Sunday (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>early (adv) (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>first-year student (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>read (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>wear; put on (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>grandmother (on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>mother's side) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>grandfather (on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>mother's side) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>on the left (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>on the left (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>cooking, cuisine (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>cook (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>nowadays, these days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>business, matter to take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>care of (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>forgive (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>we, our (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>umbrella (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>first of all, before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>anything else (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>milk (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>post office (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>sports (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>do sports; exercise (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>sports stadium (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>sneakers, tennis shoes (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>Korean monetary unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>month names (counter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>(11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>Monday (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>above, over, on (top);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>upstairs (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>whisky (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>upstairs, the floor above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>retire (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>bank (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>banker (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>beverage, something to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>drink (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>food (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>restaurant (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>music (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>concert (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>doctor, physician (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>chair (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>tooth, teeth (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>this (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>be (the same as, equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>to) (copula) (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>Ewha Women's University (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>in a while, a while later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>in this way, like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>(given) name (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>aunt (mother's sister)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>uncle (mother's sister's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>husband) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>this NOUN (week, month)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>be strange, odd (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>talk, chat, story (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>talk, chat (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>now (finally) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>second-year student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>get divorced (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>portion (of food) (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>ginseng (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>ginseng wine (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>now (finally) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>matter, business (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>days (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>work, do work (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>Japan (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>Japanese language (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>person from Japan (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>Japanese language (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>get up; stand up (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>Sunday (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>early (adv) (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>first-year student (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>read (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
<td>wear; put on (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한국어</td>
<td>영어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있-</td>
<td>be, exist; stay; have (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있어요</td>
<td>it exists, there is/are (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잊어버리-</td>
<td>forget (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>sleep (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자녀분</td>
<td>children (honorific) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자동차</td>
<td>car, automobile (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자료</td>
<td>materials (written) (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자르-</td>
<td>cut (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자매</td>
<td>sisters (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자전거</td>
<td>bicycle (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자제분</td>
<td>children (honorific) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자주</td>
<td>often (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작-</td>
<td>be little (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작년</td>
<td>last year (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작년아버지</td>
<td>uncle (father’s younger brother) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잔</td>
<td>cupfuls (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘</td>
<td>well; often (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘됐어요.</td>
<td>It's going well. It's turning out well. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘생겼-</td>
<td>be good-looking, handsome (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘안 됐어요.</td>
<td>It's not going well. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘 자요!</td>
<td>Good night. (polite, but not honorific) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘하-</td>
<td>do well, do (it) well (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잠깐</td>
<td>a short while, a moment (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잠시</td>
<td>a short while (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잠수시-</td>
<td>eat (honorific) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잠자리</td>
<td>magazine (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잠자리(으)로-</td>
<td>flat objects (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장(을)보-</td>
<td>do grocery shopping (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장갑</td>
<td>gloves (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장마</td>
<td>rainy season, seasonal rains (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장마(기)지-</td>
<td>rainy season sets in (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장모</td>
<td>mother-in-law (man’s) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장인</td>
<td>father-in-law (man’s) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장인여론</td>
<td>father-in-law (man’s) (elegant) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장인장모</td>
<td>parents-in-law (man’s) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자켓</td>
<td>jacket (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>재미 없-</td>
<td>be not interesting, boring (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>재미 있-</td>
<td>be interesting (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>재미있게</td>
<td>interestingly, in such a way that it is interesting (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저</td>
<td>yon, that (over there) (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저기</td>
<td>over there (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저기요!</td>
<td>Hey there! (a bit brusque or even rude) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저녁</td>
<td>evening; supper (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저녁계</td>
<td>in that way (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작-</td>
<td>are few (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전공</td>
<td>one's major, specialization (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전공(을)하-</td>
<td>major in something (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전부</td>
<td>the whole thing, total (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전부다</td>
<td>everything, all of it (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전예</td>
<td>earlier, before (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전화</td>
<td>telephone (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전화(를)하-</td>
<td>make a phone call (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전화(를)받-</td>
<td>make a phone call (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전화번호</td>
<td>answer the phone (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젊-</td>
<td>telephone number (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젊심</td>
<td>be young (but past puberty) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정각(에)</td>
<td>lunch (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정거장</td>
<td>exactly at (a time) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정류장</td>
<td>&quot;station/stop (train) (14)&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정말(로)</td>
<td>bus stop (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>truly, really (8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*K-E Vocabulary / 328*
Really? Is it true? (8)
main gate (of a university) (6)
passionate(ly) (8)
garden (9)
politics (8)
political science (8)
the most; number one (14)
manufactured good(s) (5)
a little (7)
grandparents (13)
nephew (13)
niece (13)
grahuate (13)
a little; please (8)
paper (5)
be good; be liked (12)
be good (7)
like it (8, 12)
a state, a province (8)
give (7)
mainly, mostly,
for the most part (8)
state (-established),
provincial (-ly
established) (8)
a state university (8)
weekend (7)
sleep (hononific) (8)
order (at restaurant)
(12)
Please give. (6)
week (counter) (11)
during the week, on
week days (11)
die (14)
middle, midway (9)
midway, in the middle
(9)
China (5)
Chinese language (5)
person from China (5)
juice (8)
be enjoyable, pleasant,
fun (9)
enjoyably (9)
past, last (11)
now (7)
get along (14)
subway, underground,
metro (12)
rice, meal (hononific)
(13)
house, home (5)
my wife (5)
jazz (12)
side, direction (6)
car, vehicle (7)
tea (9)
wear (a watch) (9)
ticket (train, bus) (7)
be good by nature; be a
good boy (girl, dog) (8)
truly, really (8)
window (6)
look for; find (7)
withdraw (money)
from; fetch (money) (9)
buildings (counter) (11)
book (5)
desk (6)
the beginning (11)
thousand (6)  
slowly (8)  
first (7)  
jeans (9)  
clean up (8)  
invite someone (14)  
be/get invited (14)  
(a) second (11)  
(counter)  
be cold (13)  
dances (a dance) (12)  
get tipsy/drunk (14)  
(floors of a building) (counter) (11)  
strike, hit (7)  
play tennis, golf (12)  
skirt (9)  
friend (5)  
relative (13)  
blackboard (5)  

Canada (5)  
a Canadian (5)  
campus (6)  
coffee (12)  
pair [of shoes, etc.] (9)  
nose (14)  
comedie (13)  
coat (9)  
contact lenses (13)  
cola (12)  
be large (7)  
cream (12)  
uncle (father's elder brother) (13)  
add/put in (sugar) (12)  
ride in, ride on (12)  
go (riding) (14)  
come (riding) (14)  
towel (7)  
be born (11)  
tennis (12)  
play tennis (12)  
table (6)  
television (6)  
tomato juice (8)  
Saturday (7)  
get through to, make contact with (13)  
get through to, make contact with on phone (8)  
sell it (7)  
pounds (sterling) (counter) (11)  
party (11)  
arm (14)  
ballpoint pen (5)  
side, direction (6)  
letter (7)  
be comfortable; convenient (14)  
comfortably; conveniently (14)  
ticket (7)  
solve it; undo it (14)  
starch, glue (12)  
starch it (12)  
France (5)  
French language (5)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>프랑스</td>
<td>person from France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사람</td>
<td>program (TV); pro (sports)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>프리마</td>
<td>nondairy creamer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>플랫폼</td>
<td>platform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피-</td>
<td>bloom, blossom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피곤하다</td>
<td>be tired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피아노</td>
<td>piano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피아노(를) 치-</td>
<td>play piano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피우-</td>
<td>smoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피자</td>
<td>pizza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>웰버거</td>
<td>hamburger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=행</td>
<td>bound for (a place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>허리</td>
<td>waist, lower back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>형</td>
<td>older brother (boy's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>형제</td>
<td>brothers (for males); brothers and sisters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>호주</td>
<td>Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>호주사람</td>
<td>an Australian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>호텔</td>
<td>hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>혼자[서]</td>
<td>alone, on one's own, by oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍차</td>
<td>black/English tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍콩</td>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍콩사람</td>
<td>person from Hong Kong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화요일</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화장실</td>
<td>toilet, restroom, bathroom, washroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>회사</td>
<td>company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>회사원</td>
<td>company employee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>회화</td>
<td>conversation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>후에</td>
<td>after, later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>후지</td>
<td>tissue paper; toilet tissue, Kleenex™</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>흐리-</td>
<td>be cloudy, overcast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>흐리-</td>
<td>become/get cloudy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>힘(이) 드-</td>
<td>strength, energy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>힘(이) 드- 리-</td>
<td>be difficult, taxing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>힘(이) 드- 리-</td>
<td>strength enters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

K-E Vocabulary/331
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Korean Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a lot (adverb)</td>
<td>많이 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a while later</td>
<td>이따가 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a worry</td>
<td>걱정 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about (numeral)</td>
<td>한 plus numeral (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>above</td>
<td>위 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>across from</td>
<td>잇은편, 건너편 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actor</td>
<td>배우 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add (sugar)</td>
<td>타- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjacent to</td>
<td>다음 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after</td>
<td>다음 (6); 후에 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afternoon</td>
<td>오전 (7; 11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>again</td>
<td>또 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>age</td>
<td>나이 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>age (honorific)</td>
<td>연세 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airplane</td>
<td>비행기 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alcoholic drink</td>
<td>술 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>다 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>모두 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all of it</td>
<td>전부 다 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allright</td>
<td>팬찰- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alone</td>
<td>혼자[서] (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>already</td>
<td>벌써 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>always</td>
<td>항상 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>always</td>
<td>언제나 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>always</td>
<td>늘 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.M.</td>
<td>오전 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>America</td>
<td>미국 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American</td>
<td>미국사람 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And also</td>
<td>그리고 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And so</td>
<td>그래서 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And then</td>
<td>그때 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And then</td>
<td>그런데 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And then</td>
<td>그리고 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And then</td>
<td>마리 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>another</td>
<td>다른 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>answer (he phone)</td>
<td>받- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anything (at all)</td>
<td>아무거나 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apple</td>
<td>사과 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approximately</td>
<td>한 (plus numeral)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>area near</td>
<td>근처 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arm</td>
<td>껍 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>도착(을) 하- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ascend</td>
<td>오르- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>물- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assignment</td>
<td>숙제 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attend</td>
<td>다니- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attend (church)</td>
<td>나가- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aunt (father's sister)</td>
<td>고모 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aunt (mother's sister)</td>
<td>이모 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>호주 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian</td>
<td>호주사람 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>automobile</td>
<td>자동차, 차 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autumn</td>
<td>가을 (13)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Korean Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baby</td>
<td>아기 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baby</td>
<td>애기 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back</td>
<td>위 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back</td>
<td>뒤 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Word</td>
<td>Korean Word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>나쁜 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad mood</td>
<td>기분이 나쁘다 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bag</td>
<td>가방 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ballpoint pen</td>
<td>볼펜 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bank</td>
<td>은행 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banker</td>
<td>은행원 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bar</td>
<td>술집 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baseball</td>
<td>야구 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bathroom</td>
<td>화장실 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>있- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be (honorific)</td>
<td>계시- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be better</td>
<td>나(가) - (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be introduced</td>
<td>소개(물) 받- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be invited</td>
<td>초대(물) 받- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be sure to</td>
<td>꼭 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be (same as, equal to)</td>
<td>-이- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beach</td>
<td>비치 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Because (sentence-initially)</td>
<td>왜냐하면 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because of</td>
<td>때문에 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>되- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beer</td>
<td>맥주 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>전에 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before anything else</td>
<td>우선 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before anything else</td>
<td>먼저 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>시작(을) 하- (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beginning</td>
<td>처음 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behind</td>
<td>뒤 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>below</td>
<td>아래 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>below</td>
<td>뒤 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beside</td>
<td>옆 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between</td>
<td>사이 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beverage</td>
<td>음료수 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bicycle</td>
<td>자전거 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bill (in a restaurant)</td>
<td>계산서 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bird (counter)</td>
<td>마리 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birthday</td>
<td>생일 (11), 생선 (honorific) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>무-로- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blackboard</td>
<td>철판 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black tea</td>
<td>홍차 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bloom</td>
<td>피- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blossom</td>
<td>피- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book</td>
<td>책 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bookstore</td>
<td>서점 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boots</td>
<td>부츠 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bored</td>
<td>심심하- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boring</td>
<td>재미 없- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>born</td>
<td>태어나- (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>both</td>
<td>둘 다 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottle</td>
<td>병 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottom</td>
<td>밑 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bound for</td>
<td>원 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bound volumes (counter)</td>
<td>꼭 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box</td>
<td>상자 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boyfriend</td>
<td>남자친구 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bread</td>
<td>빵 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breakfast</td>
<td>아침 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>briefcase</td>
<td>가방 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bright</td>
<td>뜻깊- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bright</td>
<td>빛나 (가) 좋- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>갈다주- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Briton</td>
<td>영국 사람 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother (boy’s older)</td>
<td>형 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother (girl’s older)</td>
<td>오빠 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brothers (for males)</td>
<td>형제 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother and sister</td>
<td>남매 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brothers and sisters</td>
<td>형제 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brush (teeth)</td>
<td>뜨- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>building</td>
<td>건물, 빌딩 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buildings (counter)</td>
<td>체 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus</td>
<td>버스 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus</td>
<td>택시 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus stop</td>
<td>정류장 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business</td>
<td>일 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business</td>
<td>사업 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business card</td>
<td>명함 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>바쁘- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But (sentence-initially)</td>
<td>그런데 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But (sentence-initially)</td>
<td>그렇지만 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>사- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by oneself</td>
<td>혼자[서] (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By the way</td>
<td>그런데 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cafe</td>
<td>카페 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cafeteria</td>
<td>식당 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>campus</td>
<td>캠퍼스 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>캐나다 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canadian person</td>
<td>캐나다 사람 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car</td>
<td>자동차, 차 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car</td>
<td>교통 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cartoon</td>
<td>만화 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case</td>
<td>상자 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cat</td>
<td>고양이 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch (something said)</td>
<td>양아들- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chair</td>
<td>의자 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chalk</td>
<td>분필 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change (clothes)</td>
<td>갈아입- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change, exchange</td>
<td>바꾸- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chat</td>
<td>애기, 이야기 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chat</td>
<td>이야기(를) 하- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>싼- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check (in a restaurant)</td>
<td>계산서 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chest</td>
<td>상자 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>child</td>
<td>아이 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>child</td>
<td>애 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>children (honorific)</td>
<td>자녀분, 자제분 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>중국 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese language</td>
<td>중국말 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese person</td>
<td>중국 사람 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>church (Catholic)</td>
<td>성당 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>church (Protestant)</td>
<td>교회 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cigarette(s)</td>
<td>담배 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinema</td>
<td>극장 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city</td>
<td>도시 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city center</td>
<td>시내 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City Hall</td>
<td>시청 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>반 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>수업 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classroom</td>
<td>교실 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean</td>
<td>깨끗하다- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cleaners</td>
<td>세탁소 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean up</td>
<td>청소(를) 하- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cleanly</td>
<td>깨끗이 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close</td>
<td>가까워- (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close it</td>
<td>닫- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clothes</td>
<td>옷 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coat</td>
<td>코트 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coffee</td>
<td>커피 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cola</td>
<td>콜라 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold</td>
<td>추- (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>college</td>
<td>대학 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comb</td>
<td>뼈- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>오- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come (riding)</td>
<td>타고오- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come back</td>
<td>돌아오- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come down</td>
<td>내려오- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come in</td>
<td>들어오- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come on foot</td>
<td>걸어오- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come out</td>
<td>나와- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come up</td>
<td>올라오- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comedy</td>
<td>코메디 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfortable</td>
<td>편하다- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfortably</td>
<td>편하게 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comic</td>
<td>만화 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company</td>
<td>회사 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company employee</td>
<td>회사원 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company president</td>
<td>사장 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concert</td>
<td>음악회 (12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
consulate 영사관 (6)
contact 연락 (7)
contact 통화 (13)
contact lenses 렌즈 (13)
convenient 편히 (14)
conveniently 편히 (14)
conversation 회화 (8)
cook 요리 (12)
cooking 요리 (12)
copula -이- (7)
correct 맞- (13)
corridor 복도 (12)
cost 값 (9)
cost money 돈 (이) 드- 르- (14)
country 나라 (5)
countryside 시골 (12)
cousin 사촌 (13)
cousin (boy or girl's younger cousin) 사촌동생 (13)
cousin (boy's older female cousin) 사촌누나 (13)
cousin (boy's older male cousin) 사촌형 (13)
cousin (girl's older female cousin) 사촌언니 (13)
cream 크림 (12)
cream (fresh) 생크림 (12)
creamer (nondairy) 프리크림 (12)
card 신용카드 (8)
credit card 신용카드 (8)
cuisines 통합 (11)
cupfuls (counter) 수량 (12)
customer 차- (8)
cut 잘- (8)
cut (hair) 에브- (14)
dance 춤 (12)
date 데이터 (13)
damnation 디암 (9)
day 미녀 (13)
daybreak 새벽 (11)
daylight 낮 (7)
day after tomorrow 모레 (14)
day before yesterday 그리고 (14)
days (counter) 일 (11)
daylight 낮 (7)
degree of temperature 도 (11)
delicious 맛 (이) 있- (7)
deport 떠나- (7)
department store 백화점 (6)
descend 내려- (9)
desk 책상 (6)
die 죽- (14)
die (honorific) 몰아가시- (14)
different 다르- (11)
difficult 힘 (이) 드- 르- (8)
difficult 어려워- (8)
diately 열심히 (8)
dining room 식당 (7)
diplomat 외교관 (5)
direction 쪽 (6)
direction 편 (6)
dirty dishes 설거지 (13)
dislike it 싫어 하- (12)
disliked 싫- (12)
distant 멀- (8)
distasteful 설- (12)
divorce 이혼 (7)
do 하- (7)
do (it) well 잘하- (7)
do laundry 세탁 (7)
do the dishes 설거지 (13)
doctor 의사 (5)
dog 개 (7)
dollar 달라 (11)
dollar (counter) 볼 (11)
door 문 (6)
dormitory 기숙사 (6)
down
downstairs

downtown
Dr., Ph.D.
draft beer
drama
dress shirt
drink
drink (honorable)
drink (honorific)
drinking establishment
dry cleaning
dumb
during
during the week
downstairs

downtown

English tea
Englishman
enjoyable
enjoyably
enter
errand
Esteemed people
Even so (sentence-initially)
evening
every day
everyone
everything
Ewha Woman's University

exactly at (a time)
examination
exchange
exchange, change
exchange student
Excuse me!
exercise
exist
exist (honorific)
expensive
eye

fact
fall
family
family members
far
far (adverb)
fast
father
father (honorific)

E-K Vocabulary / 336
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Korean Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law (man's)</td>
<td>장인 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law (woman's) (elegant)</td>
<td>장인어른 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law (woman's) 시아버지 (13)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>favor</td>
<td>부탁 (을) 하- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel sorry</td>
<td>미안하- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feelings</td>
<td>기분 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fetch (money)</td>
<td>찔- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>few</td>
<td>적- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiancée</td>
<td>약혼자 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>film</td>
<td>영화 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>찾- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finger</td>
<td>손가락 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish</td>
<td>끝내- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish it</td>
<td>끝내- (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fire</td>
<td>불 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first (of all)</td>
<td>먼저 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first</td>
<td>첫 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first of all</td>
<td>우선 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first-year student</td>
<td>일학년 (생) (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fish (counter)</td>
<td>마리 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flat objects (counter)</td>
<td>장 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor above</td>
<td>위층 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor below</td>
<td>아랫층 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor, story (counter)</td>
<td>층 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flower</td>
<td>꽃 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>food</td>
<td>음식 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot</td>
<td>발 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>footgear</td>
<td>신발 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for the duration of</td>
<td>동안 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for the most part</td>
<td>주로 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for (a week, etc.)</td>
<td>동안 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign cigarettes</td>
<td>외국배 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign country</td>
<td>외국 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign language</td>
<td>외국어 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreigner</td>
<td>외국 사람 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>잊어서 (을) 하- (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>용서 (을) 하- (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>프랑스 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French language</td>
<td>프랑스말; 불어 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French person</td>
<td>프랑스 사람 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fresh cream</td>
<td>생크림 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friday</td>
<td>금요일 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friend</td>
<td>친구 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from a distance</td>
<td>멀리서 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>front</td>
<td>앞 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fruit</td>
<td>파일 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>full</td>
<td>배 (가) 부르- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>full (stomach)</td>
<td>부르- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fun</td>
<td>즐거- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garden</td>
<td>정원 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gate</td>
<td>문 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>독일 사람 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German language</td>
<td>독일말; 독어 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>독일 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>받- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get a haircut</td>
<td>머리 (를) 자르- (females), 머리 (를) 깎- (males) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get across (message)</td>
<td>통화- (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get along</td>
<td>지내- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get (money) from</td>
<td>찾- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get better</td>
<td>나 (자) - (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get drunk</td>
<td>취하- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get engaged</td>
<td>약혼 (을) 하- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get hurt</td>
<td>다치- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get in touch</td>
<td>연락 (을) 하- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get introduced</td>
<td>소개 (를) 받- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get invited</td>
<td>초대 (를) 받- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get tipsy</td>
<td>취하- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get up</td>
<td>일어나- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gift</td>
<td>선물 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ginseng</td>
<td>인삼 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ginseng wine</td>
<td>인삼주 (5)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
girlfriend
give
give (honorific)
given name
glasses
honorific
grandchild
granddaughter
grandfather
grandfather (honorific)
grandfather (mother’s side)
grandmother
grandmother (honorific)
grandmother (mother’s side)
grandparents

son
Japan
Great East Gate
Great South Gate
grocery shopping

guest

hair
half
hallway
hamburger
hand
handsome

hat
have

head
health
healthy
hear
heart
heavy
Hello!
help
here
Hey there!
his wife
hit
hit the mark
hold
home
homework
Hong Kong
hot
hot dog
hotel
hotel
hours (counter)
house

수녀 (9)
모녀 (13)
부인 (5)
치- (7)
맞- (13)
드- (14)
집 (5)
숙제 (13)
홍콩 (5)
더 w- (7)
핫도그 (12)
호텔 (6)
여관 (9)
시간 (11)
집 (5)
댁 (9)

E-K Vocabulary/338
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>how about it?</td>
<td>어때요? (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how is it?</td>
<td>어때요? (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how many?</td>
<td>얼마 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how many?</td>
<td>몇 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how much (about)?</td>
<td>얼마나 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how much?</td>
<td>얼마 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how?</td>
<td>어떻게? (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>아프- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>husband</td>
<td>남편 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>나 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't really know, Let me think.</td>
<td>글쎄요 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice</td>
<td>얼음 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice coffee</td>
<td>냉커피 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice cream</td>
<td>아이스크림 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice slash</td>
<td>빙수 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice water</td>
<td>냉수 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If so (sentence-initially)</td>
<td>그러면 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imported goods</td>
<td>수입품 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impressive</td>
<td>평강하- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in a while</td>
<td>이따가 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in fact</td>
<td>사실 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in fact</td>
<td>사실은 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In fact (sentence-initially)</td>
<td>그러면 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In that case (sentence-initially)</td>
<td>그러면 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in that way</td>
<td>어떻게 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in what way?</td>
<td>어떻게? (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inconvenient</td>
<td>불편하- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-law's home (honoric, for females)</td>
<td>시댁 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inexpensive</td>
<td>싸- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injure oneself</td>
<td>다치- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inn</td>
<td>여관 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insert</td>
<td>넣- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inside</td>
<td>안 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inside</td>
<td>속 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>institution (counter)</td>
<td>군데 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intelligent</td>
<td>똑똑하- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intelligent</td>
<td>미리 (가) 좋- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>재미 있- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interestingly</td>
<td>재미있게 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>introduce</td>
<td>소개 (를) 하- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite someone</td>
<td>초대 (를) 하- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is it true?</td>
<td>정말이에요? (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It doesn't work.</td>
<td>안 돼요. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It won't do.</td>
<td>안 돼요. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It works.</td>
<td>돼요. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It'll do.</td>
<td>돼요. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's acceptable.</td>
<td>잘 돼요. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's going well.</td>
<td>잘 돼요. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's no good.</td>
<td>안 돼요. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's not acceptable.</td>
<td>안 돼요. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's not going well.</td>
<td>잘 안 돼요. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s OK.</td>
<td>돼요. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's turning out well.</td>
<td>잘 돼요. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>item (counter)</td>
<td>개 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>일본 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese language</td>
<td>일본말; 일어 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese person</td>
<td>일본 사람 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jacket</td>
<td>자켓 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jazz</td>
<td>재즈 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeans</td>
<td>청바지 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juice</td>
<td>주스 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jumper (sweater)</td>
<td>셔터 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>junk</td>
<td>엉터리 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just (as one is)</td>
<td>그냥 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just (below, above)</td>
<td>바로 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just a moment ago</td>
<td>방금 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just a moment ago</td>
<td>아까 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just now</td>
<td>방금 (9)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
karaoke box
kind (counter)
kitchen
Kleenex™
knee
know it
Korea
Korea University
Korean language
Korean mile (counter)
Korean monetary unit
Korean person
Kwanghwa Gate

language
large
last
last year
late
late (adverb)
later
laundry
laundromat
laundry
learn
leave
left side
left side
leg
lesson
letter
library
lie down
lift

lift
gold (14)
light
light
lighter
like it
like that
like that
like this
liked
listen to
little
little
live
living room
London
look at
look for
love
lower
lower back
lunch

ma'am (any woman
old enough to be
married)
ma'am (casual)
machine (counter)
magazine
mail it
main gate
mainly
major
major in something
make contact
make a reservation
man
manufactured good(s)
many
many (adverb)

트- 르- (14)
가버- (12)
볼 (7)
라이타 (6)
좋아하- (8, 12)
그렇게 (13)
저렇게 (13)
이렇게 (13)
좋- (12)
들- (7)
작- (7)
조금 (7), 줄 (8)
사- 르- (7)
마루 (13)
런던 (8)
보- (7)
찾- (7)
사람 (8)
사람 (으) 였- (8)
아래 (6)
허리 (14)
접심 (7)

 아주머니 (13)
아줌마 (13)
대 (11)
장지 (5)
루치- (9)
정문 (6)
주로 (8)
전공 (7)
연락 (으) 였- (9)
예약 (으) 였- (8)
남자 (6)
제품 (5)
많- (7)
많이 (7)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>market</td>
<td>시장 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marry</td>
<td>결혼 (올 하- (12))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match(es)</td>
<td>성남 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>materials (written)</td>
<td>자료 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matter</td>
<td>일 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matter to take care of</td>
<td>용무 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maybe</td>
<td>아마 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maybe (more tentative)</td>
<td>아마도 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meal (honoric)</td>
<td>진지 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meat</td>
<td>고기 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medicine</td>
<td>약 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>만나- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>members of the family</td>
<td>식구 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>metro</td>
<td>지하철 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>midway</td>
<td>중간, 중간에 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>middle</td>
<td>중간 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milk</td>
<td>우유 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind</td>
<td>마음 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minutes (counter)</td>
<td>분 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>missionary</td>
<td>선교사 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mister (any man old enough to be married)</td>
<td>아저씨 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moment</td>
<td>잠깐 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>월요일 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>돈 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month</td>
<td>달 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month (counter)</td>
<td>개월 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month names</td>
<td>월 (달) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mood</td>
<td>기분 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more</td>
<td>더 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moreover (sentence-initially)</td>
<td>또 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morning</td>
<td>아침 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most</td>
<td>가장, 체일 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mostly</td>
<td>주로 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>어머니 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother (honoric)</td>
<td>어머님 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother-in-law (man’s)</td>
<td>장모 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother-in-law (woman’s)</td>
<td>시아버지 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountain</td>
<td>산 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movie</td>
<td>영화 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movie actor</td>
<td>영화배우 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movie theatre</td>
<td>극장 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mow (grass)</td>
<td>깎- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>많- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music</td>
<td>음악 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>이름 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>namecard</td>
<td>명함 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nation</td>
<td>나라 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>national</td>
<td>국립 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>national university</td>
<td>국립대학교 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>near</td>
<td>가까워서 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neatly</td>
<td>깔끔한 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>necktie</td>
<td>넥타이 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neighborhood</td>
<td>동네 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nephew</td>
<td>조카 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nevertheless (sentence-initially)</td>
<td>그래도 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
<td>새 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York</td>
<td>뉴욕 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>news (radio/TV)</td>
<td>뉴스 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newspaper</td>
<td>신문 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next to</td>
<td>다음 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next to</td>
<td>옆 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next year</td>
<td>내년 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>좋- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niece</td>
<td>조카딸 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>night</td>
<td>밤 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nondairy creamer</td>
<td>프리미엄 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nonexistent</td>
<td>없- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noon</td>
<td>낮 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>normally</td>
<td>보통 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nose</td>
<td>코 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not exist</td>
<td>없- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not have</td>
<td>없- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not interesting</td>
<td>재미 없- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not know</td>
<td>모르- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not particularly</td>
<td>별로 + negative (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not yet</td>
<td>아직 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notebook</td>
<td>공책 (5), 노트 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
<td>이제 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now (finally)</td>
<td>이제 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now (finally)</td>
<td>요즘 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nowadays</td>
<td>번호 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number</td>
<td>제일 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number one</td>
<td>맞은편, 건너편 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opposite</td>
<td>아니면 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>오렌지 주스 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orange juice</td>
<td>시키- (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order</td>
<td>주문(을) 하- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order (at restaurant)</td>
<td>다른 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other</td>
<td>우리 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td>밖 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outside</td>
<td>위 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over</td>
<td>저기 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over there</td>
<td>저기 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pack (of cigarettes)</td>
<td>갓 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>painful</td>
<td>아프- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pair [of shoes, etc.]</td>
<td>클레 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paper</td>
<td>종이 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paper bag</td>
<td>봉지 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parents</td>
<td>부모(들) (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parents-in-law (man’s)</td>
<td>장인장모 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parents-in-law (for females)</td>
<td>시부모 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parents-in-law’s home</td>
<td>시댁 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for females, honorific</td>
<td>공원 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>park</td>
<td>별로 + negative (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not) particularly</td>
<td>아르바이트 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part-time student work</td>
<td>파티 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>party</td>
<td>돌아가시- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass away</td>
<td>정열적(으로) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passionate(ly)</td>
<td>혼자(서) (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>지난 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>내- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pen</td>
<td>펜 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pen (ballpoint)</td>
<td>볼펜 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pencil</td>
<td>연필 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people (counter)</td>
<td>사람 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people (counter)</td>
<td>명 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people (honorific counter)</td>
<td>-분 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person</td>
<td>사람 (5)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
person (counter)  | 멤 (11)
---|---
person (honorable)  | 박사 (5)
person born in such-and-such a year  | 민생 (이에요) (11)
Ph.D. (Dr.)  | 박사 (5)
physician  | 의사 (5)
piano  | 피아노 (5)
pibimbap  | 비빔밥 (7)
picture  | 그림 (6)
pizza  | 피자 (12)
place  | -곳 (5), 테 (13)
place (counter)  | -곳 (5), 테 (13)
place it  | 농 (11)
platform  | 플랫폼 (7)
play  | 연극 (12)
play baseball  | 야구 (들) 하 (8)
play golf  | 골프 (들) 치 (13)
play piano  | 치 (12)
play tennis  | 레너스 (들) 치 (12)
pleasant  | 즐거워 (9)
please (to soften a request)  | 즐거워 (9)
P.M.  | 오후 (11)
polish  | 난 (9)
political science  | 정치학 (8)
politics  | 정치 (8)
popsinger  | 가수 (5)
portion (of food)  | -인분 (14)
post it  | 부치 (9)
post office  | 우체국 (9)
potato chips  | 감자깡 (11)
potato(es)  | 감자 (11)
pounds (sterling)  | 파운드 (11)
pour (rain)  | 쓰아지 (13)
present  | 선물 (14)
pretty  | 예쁘 (14)
price  | 값 (9)
private university  | 사립대학교 (8)
private (-ly established)  | 사립 (8)
probably  | 아마 (13)
probably (more tentative)  | 아마도 (13)
problem  | 문제 (14)
professor  | 교수 (5)
program on TV  | 프로 (13)
province  | 주 (8)
provincial (-ly established)  | 주립 (8)
pulgoji  | 불고기 (7)
put in  | 넣 (12)
put in (sugar)  | 타 (12)
put it  | 넣 (11)
put on  | 입 (7)
put on (a tie)  | 매 (9)
quick  | 빠르 (7)
quickly  | 빨리 (7)
quit (smoking, drinking)  | 흡연 (14)
quite something  | 평정하 (9)

Q

rain  | 비 (13)
rainy season  | 장마 (13)
rainy season sets in  | 장마(가) 지 (13)
read  | 샘 (7)
read  | 의 (7)
Really?  | 정말이에요? (8)
really  | 정말 (로) (8)
really  | 참 (8)
receive  | 받 (7)
refectory  | 식당 (7)
relative  | 친척 (13)
request  | 부탁 (을) 하 (8)
research  | 연구 (9)
reservation  | 예약 (8)

R
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Korean Equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>residence hall</td>
<td>기숙사 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rest</td>
<td>쉐- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restaurant</td>
<td>식당, 음식점, 레스토랑 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restroom</td>
<td>화장실 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retire</td>
<td>은퇴 (들) 하- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>return here</td>
<td>돌아오- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>return home</td>
<td>돌아오- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>return there</td>
<td>돌아가- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rice (cooked)</td>
<td>밥 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rich person</td>
<td>부자 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride in/on</td>
<td>타- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right</td>
<td>맞- (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right side</td>
<td>오른편, 오른쪽 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>반지 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise</td>
<td>오르- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>road</td>
<td>길 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>room</td>
<td>방 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rubbish</td>
<td>엽터리 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>러시아 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russian language</td>
<td>러시아어 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russian person</td>
<td>러시아 사람 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>보- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see a film</td>
<td>영화 구경 (을) 하- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell it</td>
<td>판- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semester</td>
<td>학기 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seoul National University</td>
<td>서울대 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set in (rainy season)</td>
<td>장마 (가) 지- (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>several</td>
<td>몇 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>several</td>
<td>여려 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sharpen (pencil)</td>
<td>차- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shaved ice</td>
<td>빙수 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shirt</td>
<td>와이셔츠 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shirt</td>
<td>샤ツ (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoes</td>
<td>구두, 신발 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shop</td>
<td>가게 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shop</td>
<td>상점 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shopping</td>
<td>쇼핑 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short while</td>
<td>잠깐 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short while</td>
<td>잠시 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short while ago</td>
<td>약간 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shrimp</td>
<td>새우 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shrimp chips</td>
<td>새우깡 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>side</td>
<td>쪽 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>side</td>
<td>정 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>side dishes</td>
<td>반찬 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sightsee</td>
<td>구경 (을) 하- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similar</td>
<td>같-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing (a song)</td>
<td>부르- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>single (unmarried)</td>
<td>미혼 (이)에요 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sister (older, girl's)</td>
<td>언니 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sister (younger)</td>
<td>여동생 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sisters</td>
<td>자매 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sits</td>
<td>앉- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skate(s)</td>
<td>스케이트 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skate</td>
<td>스케이트 (을) 타- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skirt</td>
<td>치마 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ski(s)</td>
<td>스키 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ski</td>
<td>스키 (을) 타- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skirt</td>
<td>치마 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>자- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep (honorific)</td>
<td>주무시- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slowly</td>
<td>천천히 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smart</td>
<td>머리 (가) 좋- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smoke</td>
<td>피우- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snacks to go with alcohol</td>
<td>안주 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sneakers</td>
<td>운동화 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snow</td>
<td>눈 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so</td>
<td>그렇계 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>So, what I mean to say is</td>
<td>그러니 까 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>socks</td>
<td>양말 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soldier</td>
<td>군인 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solve it</td>
<td>푸-르- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some</td>
<td>몇 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some time ago</td>
<td>언젠가 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sometime or other</td>
<td>언젠가 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>가끔 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son</td>
<td>아들 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son (honorific)</td>
<td>아드님 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son-in-law</td>
<td>사위 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>song</td>
<td>노래 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sorry</td>
<td>미안해- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>말 (을) 하- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specialization</td>
<td>전공 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speech (honorific or humble)</td>
<td>말씀 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend (time)</td>
<td>보내- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spicy</td>
<td>매- (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spine</td>
<td>등 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spiritual center</td>
<td>마음 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sports</td>
<td>운동 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sports</td>
<td>스포츠 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sports stadium</td>
<td>운동장 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spring</td>
<td>봄 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>squid</td>
<td>오징어 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>squid chips</td>
<td>오징어깡 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>서- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>starch</td>
<td>풀 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>starch it</td>
<td>풀 (을) 먹이- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start term/school</td>
<td>개학 (을) 하- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>state</td>
<td>주 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>state university</td>
<td>주립대학교 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>state (-established)</td>
<td>주립 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>station</td>
<td>경거장 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay</td>
<td>있- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay (honorific)</td>
<td>계시- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>still</td>
<td>아직 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stomach</td>
<td>배 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>끝나- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>정거장 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop (bus)</td>
<td>정류장 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>store</td>
<td>상점 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>story</td>
<td>얘기, 이야기 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>straight</td>
<td>바로 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strange</td>
<td>이상하다- (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>street</td>
<td>길 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strength</td>
<td>힘 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strike</td>
<td>치- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stroll</td>
<td>산보 (를) 하- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>student</td>
<td>학생 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>student union (building)</td>
<td>학생회관 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study</td>
<td>공부 (를) 하- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject</td>
<td>과목 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suburb(s)</td>
<td>교외 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suddenly</td>
<td>지하철 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sugar</td>
<td>장다 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suit</td>
<td>양복 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summer</td>
<td>여름 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunday</td>
<td>일요일 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supermarket</td>
<td>슈퍼마켓 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supper</td>
<td>저녁 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surname</td>
<td>성 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surname (honorific)</td>
<td>성함, 성씨 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweater</td>
<td>셔터 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>수영 (을) 하- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming pool</td>
<td>수영장 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tabang</td>
<td>다방 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table</td>
<td>상, 테이블 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take (courses)</td>
<td>들- (들다) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take (time)</td>
<td>걸리- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take medicine</td>
<td>약 (울) 먹- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off (clothes)</td>
<td>벗- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk</td>
<td>이야기, 이야기 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk</td>
<td>말 (울) 하- (7), 이야기 (물) 하- (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taste</td>
<td>맛 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taste bad</td>
<td>맛 없- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tasty</td>
<td>맛 (이) 있- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tavern</td>
<td>술집 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taxiing</td>
<td>택시 (이) 드- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tea</td>
<td>차 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tea (black/Indian)</td>
<td>홍차 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tea room</td>
<td>달방 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>가르치- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teacher</td>
<td>선생 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teaching materials</td>
<td>교재 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teeth</td>
<td>이 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telephone</td>
<td>전화 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telephone</td>
<td>전화 (물) 하- (8); 전화 (물) 가- (9) 전화번호 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telephone number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>television</td>
<td>데레비전 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis</td>
<td>테니스 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis shoes</td>
<td>운동화 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>term</td>
<td>학기 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>textbook</td>
<td>교재 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thankful</td>
<td>고마워- (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thanks to</td>
<td>덕분에 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that</td>
<td>그 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that way</td>
<td>그렇게 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reason is</td>
<td>왜나하면 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sentence-initially)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>theatre</td>
<td>극장 (7)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**E-K Vocabulary / 346**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trade</td>
<td>무역 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trading company</td>
<td>무역회사 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>train</td>
<td>기차 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>train station</td>
<td>역 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tree</td>
<td>나무 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trousers</td>
<td>바지 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truly</td>
<td>정말로 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truly</td>
<td>찬스 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>화요일 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn out a certain way</td>
<td>생기- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ugly</td>
<td>웃직잡겠- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umbrella</td>
<td>우산 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle (father's elder brother)</td>
<td>큰아버지 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle (father's sister's husband)</td>
<td>고모부 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle (father's younger brother)</td>
<td>작은아버지 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle (mother's sister's husband)</td>
<td>이모부 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle (father's side)</td>
<td>샌준 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle (mother's side)</td>
<td>외삼촌 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncomfortable</td>
<td>불편하- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underneath</td>
<td>밑 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underground</td>
<td>지하철 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand something said</td>
<td>알아들- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undo it</td>
<td>푸-르- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unit (counter)</td>
<td>개 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>university</td>
<td>대학교 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unmarried</td>
<td>미혼이에요 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upstairs</td>
<td>위층 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA</td>
<td>미국 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use it</td>
<td>쓰- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usually</td>
<td>보통 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacation</td>
<td>방학 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variety (counter)</td>
<td>가지 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>various</td>
<td>여러 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vehicle</td>
<td>차 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vehicle (counter)</td>
<td>대 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>very</td>
<td>아주 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>very</td>
<td>평강히 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>very</td>
<td>너무 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>very much</td>
<td>평강히 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vicinity</td>
<td>근처 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>view</td>
<td>구경 (울) 하- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waist</td>
<td>하리 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait</td>
<td>기다리- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>걸- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>걷어오- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>걷어가- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>산보(돌) 하- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want to</td>
<td>설치(물) 하- (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wash the dishes</td>
<td>화장실 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>washroom</td>
<td>시계 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>물 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>걸 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>way</td>
<td>우리 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>입- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>매- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear (a tie)</td>
<td>차- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear (a watch)</td>
<td>쓰- (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear (glasses)</td>
<td>신- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear (a hat)</td>
<td>기- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear (footwear)</td>
<td>기- (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear (gloves, ring)</td>
<td>날씨 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear (lenses)</td>
<td>날씨 (13)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Wednesday  주일 (11)
week  주일 (11)
week (counter)  주간 (11)
weekend  주말 (7)
well  잘 (7)
western spirits  양주 (12)
what kind of?  무슨? (5)
what NOUN? 어느 NOUN? (5)
What's more (sentence-initially)  또 (9)
what?  무엇, 뭐 (5)
when?  언제 (7)
where?  어디 (6)
which?  어느 NOUN? 무슨 NOUN? (5)
while (in a while, a while later)  이따가 (7)
whiskey  양주 (12); 위스키 (5)
who? (as subject)  누가 (5)
who? (nonsubject)  누구 (5)
whole thing  전부 (5)
why  왜 (요)? (11)
wife (my)  아내, 집사람 (5)
wife (elegant/honorific)  사모님 (9)
wife (his/your)  부인 (5)
window  창문 (6)
wine  와인 (5)
winter  겨울 (13)
withdraw (money)  캐---- (9)
without doing anything  그냥 (13)
without fail  꺼 (11)
woman  여자 (6)
words  말 (5)
words (honorific or humble)  말씀 (8)
work  일 (을) 하- (7)
worry  걱정 (을) 하- (13)
write  쓰- (7)

해 (11)
-학년 (이에요) (11)
살 (11)
어제 (7)
또 (9)
저 (5)
연대 (6)
여러- (13)
젊- (11)
아가씨 (6)
남동생 (13)
동생 (9)
동생 (9)
부인 (5)

E-K Vocabulary / 348
# KOREAN to ENGLISH PATTERN GLOSSARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Pattern</th>
<th>English Gloss</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가~이</td>
<td>subject/focus particle</td>
<td>5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갈아요</td>
<td>be like something</td>
<td>9.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갈이</td>
<td>like; together</td>
<td>9.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-겠-</td>
<td>future-presumptive base; inferential or intentional (I shall, I will, I’ll bet)</td>
<td>14.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-고 싶어요</td>
<td>want to, wish to, would like to</td>
<td>9.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-고 있어요</td>
<td>progressive (is doing)</td>
<td>13.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과 ~와</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과 ~와 같이</td>
<td>(together) with</td>
<td>9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과 ~와 함께</td>
<td>(together) with</td>
<td>9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>까지</td>
<td>as far as; by; until; up to</td>
<td>11.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>케</td>
<td>honorific에게 ~ 한테</td>
<td>13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>케서(는)</td>
<td>honorific 이 ~ 가</td>
<td>13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나~이나</td>
<td>generalizer (any/every); about,; approximately; or, or something; as many as, as much as</td>
<td>12.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>느~은</td>
<td>topic/contrast Particle</td>
<td>14.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-니(가) ~ -으니(가)</td>
<td>sequential ending (as, because, since: when [I realized])</td>
<td>5.2, 6.6, 13.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
construction

- 다
- 도
- 들
- 또

special consonant base 7.4
dictionary form 7.3
also, even, too, [not] either 5.4, 7.11, 12.3, 12.6
plural marker 6.8
again, and, moreover; then again;
what's more (adverb) 12.6

- 르 (← 을)
- 르 ~ 르
- 르- doubling
- 르- extending
- 르 거예요 ~ 을 거예요
- 르 까 해요 ~ 을 까 해요
- 르 까요 ~ 을 까요
- 르 까요 ~ 을 까요
- 르 까요 ~ 을 까요
- 르 까요 ~ 을 까요
- 르 까요 ~ 을 까요
- 르 까요 ~ 을 까요
- 르 까요 ~ 을 까요

(direct) object particle 7.6
special consonant base 7.4
special vowel base 7.5
special vowel base 7.5
probable future (is going to, will probably) 13.4
thinking of doing 12.5
suggestions/tentative questions (do you suppose? how about? I wonder: do(es)? Shall I/we?) 12.4
immediate future (Let me) 14.6
wanna form (feel like, have a mind to, would like to) 12.8
and 8.6
(together) with 9.3
(together) with 9.3
purposive ending (for the purpose of, intending to, with the intention to) 9.5
instrumental particle 8.5
(direct) object particle 7.6

K-E Pattern Glossary / 350
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>11.3</th>
<th>11.3</th>
<th>8.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>마다</td>
<td>each; every</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>반</td>
<td>just; only</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>못</td>
<td>negative marker (cannot, not)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>7.4</th>
<th>11.5</th>
<th>11.5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>뷰 ~ 투</td>
<td>special consonant base</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ 하니가 ~ ~습니가</td>
<td>formal question</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ 하니다 ~ ~습니다</td>
<td>formal statement</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ 하시다 ~ ~습시다</td>
<td>formal suggestion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>박에 + negative</td>
<td>only</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부터</td>
<td>from</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>7.4</th>
<th>9.1</th>
<th>14.5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>~ - irregular verbs</td>
<td>special consonant base</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ -</td>
<td>past base</td>
<td>9.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 쌓겠-</td>
<td>past-future (must have done/been)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 쌓어요</td>
<td>past infinitive</td>
<td>9.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 쌓어요</td>
<td>past tense, Polite Style</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 쌓였-</td>
<td>past-past</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서 ~ 에서</td>
<td>dynamic location (at/in); from (places)</td>
<td>8.2.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-세요 ~ -으세요</td>
<td>honorific Polite Style</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-습니가 ~ -하니가</td>
<td>formal question</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-습니다 ~ -하니다</td>
<td>formal statement</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-시 - ~ -으시-</td>
<td>honorific marker</td>
<td>8.2.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-시오 ~ -으시오</td>
<td>formal command</td>
<td>11.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-시키요 ~ -으시키요</td>
<td>Please do it.</td>
<td>14.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>싸이요 ~ 싸이해요</td>
<td>dislike</td>
<td>12.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-십시오 ~ -으십시오</td>
<td>formal (honorific) command</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>식</td>
<td>distributive (apiace, per)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*K-E Pattern Glossary* / 351
-아~어

아니다
아니면
아니어요
아님니다
안
-있-
-있어-
-있어요
-어~아
-있어요~있어요

있어요

-있-
-있어-
-있어요

예게
예게서
-예요~이예요
와~과
와~과 같이
와~과 함께
요
-으러(가)~나(가)

-으러~리

으로~로
-으세요~-세요
-으시~-시-
-으시오~-시오
-으십시오~-십시오
-으십시오~-십시오
은~는
을~를

infinitive ending 7.1
negative copula 5.3
or 12.7
negative copula 5.3
negative copula 5.3
negative marker (doesn't, not) 8.1
past base 9.1
past infinitive 9.1
past tense, Polite Style 9.1
infinitive ending 7.1

existence; location; possession (not be/be, not have/have) 6.2
past base 9.1
past infinitive 9.1
past tense, Polite Style 9.1
Static Location (at), Direction
Particle (to) 7.8
Direction Particle (to [people]) 7.7
Direction Particle (from [people)] 7.7
copula 5.3
and 9.2.
(totally) with 9.3
(totally) with 9.3
Polite Style particle 7.1
sequential ending (as, because, since; When [I realized]) 13.1
purposive ending (for the purpose of, intending to, with the intention to) 9.5
instrumental particle 8.5
honorific Polite Style 8.2.1
honorific marker 8.2.2
formal command 11.5
Please do it. 14.8
formal (honorific) command 11.5
topic/contrast particle 5.2., 6.6
(direct) object particle 7.6

K-E Pattern Glossary/352
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-을 거예요 - 르 거예요</td>
<td>probable future (is going to, will)</td>
<td>13.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-올가 해요 - 르카 해요</td>
<td>thinking of doing</td>
<td>12.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-올가요 - 르카요</td>
<td>suggestions/tentative questions (Do you suppose? How about? I wonder: do(es)? Shall I/we?)</td>
<td>12.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-올게요 - 르게요</td>
<td>immediate future (Let me)</td>
<td>14.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-올래요 - 르래요</td>
<td>wanna form (feel like, have a mind to, would like to)</td>
<td>12.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-음시다 - 바시다</td>
<td>formal suggestion</td>
<td>11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>의</td>
<td>possessive particle (‘s)</td>
<td>5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이 ~ 가</td>
<td>subject/focus particle</td>
<td>5.2, 6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이나 ~ 나</td>
<td>generalizer (any/every); about; approximately; or, or something</td>
<td>12.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-이다</td>
<td>copula</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이랑 ~ 람</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이랑 ~ 람 같이</td>
<td>(together) with</td>
<td>9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이랑 ~ 람 함께</td>
<td>(together) with</td>
<td>9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-아해요 - 아해요</td>
<td>copula</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-입니다</td>
<td>existence; location; possession (be/not be, have/not have)</td>
<td>6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-자 마자</td>
<td>as soon as, no sooner than</td>
<td>13.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ڷ바요</td>
<td>rhetorical retorts</td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋아요 ~ 좋아해요</td>
<td>like it</td>
<td>12.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-지</td>
<td>susp ective ending</td>
<td>12.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-지</td>
<td>suppositive ending</td>
<td>14.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-지 마 - 르 -</td>
<td>negative commands (don’t, let’s not)</td>
<td>12.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-지 맞시다</td>
<td>Let’s not</td>
<td>12.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-지 못 해요</td>
<td>long negative</td>
<td>12.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-지 않아요</td>
<td>long negative</td>
<td>12.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-지만</td>
<td>although; but; though</td>
<td>12.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-지요</td>
<td>suppositive (isn’t that the case? you know, I guess, I presume, nicht wahr? n’est-ce pas?)</td>
<td>14.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

K-E Pattern Glossary / 353
about; approximately; by

like

and; with
(togther) with
(direction particle (to [people])
(direction particle (from [people])
# ENGLISH to KOREAN PATTERN GLOSSARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Gloss</th>
<th>Korean Pattern</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
<td>(이)나</td>
<td>12.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>줘</td>
<td>11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adverbs</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>again (adverb)</td>
<td>또</td>
<td>12.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>also</td>
<td>도</td>
<td>5.4, 7.11,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12.3, 12.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>although</td>
<td>-지만</td>
<td>12.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am</td>
<td>-이다, -이에요, -입니다</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>하고</td>
<td>6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>와~과</td>
<td>9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(이)랑</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and (adverb)</td>
<td>또</td>
<td>12.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any/every</td>
<td>(이)나</td>
<td>12.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apiece</td>
<td>셋</td>
<td>11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approximately</td>
<td>(이)나</td>
<td>12.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>줘</td>
<td>11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>-이다, -이에요, -입니다</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as</td>
<td>-(으)니(까)</td>
<td>13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as far as</td>
<td>까지</td>
<td>11.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as many as</td>
<td>(이)나</td>
<td>14.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as much as</td>
<td>(이)나</td>
<td>14.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as soon as</td>
<td>-자 마자</td>
<td>13.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at (dynamic location)</td>
<td>에서, 서</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at (static location)</td>
<td>에</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*E-K Pattern Glossary/355*
### B

- be
  - -이다, -이(에)요, -입니다 5.3
  - 없어요 ~ 있어요 6.1
- be like something
  - 갑니다 9.4
- because
  - -(으)니 (~가) 13.1
- both, and
  - 도, 도 7.11, 12.3
- but
  - -(으)니 (~가) 12.2.1
- by
  - 가지 11.4
  - 작 11.3

### C

- cannot (negative marker)
  - 못 8.1
- casual Polite Style
  - -(으)니 (~가) 14.8
- copula
  - -(으)니 (~가) 5.3

### D

- dictionary form
  - -(으)니 (~가) 7.3
- direct object particle
  - -(으)니 (~가) 7.6
- direction particle (to [people])
  - -(으)니 (~가) 7.7
- direction particle (from [people])
  - -(으)니 (~가) 7.7
- direction particle (to [things])
  - -(으)니 (~가) 7.7
- direction particle (from [places])
  - -(으)니 (~가) 7.7
- discovery when
  - -(으)니 (~가) 13.1
- dislike it
  - -(으)니 (~가) 12.9
- do you suppose?
  - -(으)니 (~가) 12.4
- doesn’t (negative marker)
  - -(으)니 (~가) 8.1
- don’t
  - -(으)니 (~가) 12.2.3
- don’t you know?
  - -(으)니 (~가) 13.5
- dynamic location
  - -(으)니 (~가) 7.8

*E-K Pattern Glossary / 356*
each 마다 11.3
equals -하다, -이에요, -입니다 5.3
even 도 5.4, 7.11,
every 마다 12.3, 12.6
existence 없어요 ~ 있어요 11.3

feel like -(으)려 12.8
for the purpose of -(으)려 9.5
formal (honorific) command -(으)실시오 11.5
formal command -(으)시오 11.5
formal question -(으)니까 ~ -(으)니까 11.5
formal statement -(으)니까 ~ -(으)니까 11.5
formal suggestion -(으)시다 ~ -(으)시다 11.5
from 부터 11.4
from (people) 한테서 ~ 예게서 7.7
from (places) 에서, 서 7.7
future-presumptive base -(으)것 14.4

generalizer -(으)나 12.6, 2
going and coming 지요 14.3
guess 지요 14.8

have 없어요 ~ 있어요 6.2
have a mind to -(으)려 12.8
honorific marker -(으)시- 8.2, 2.2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Glossary</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>honorific 에게 ~ 한테</td>
<td>깨</td>
<td>13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honorific Polite Style</td>
<td>-(으)세요</td>
<td>8.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honorific 이 ~ 가</td>
<td>끼서 (눈)</td>
<td>13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honorifics</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honorifics: nouns and particles</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how about?</td>
<td>-(으)르쳐요</td>
<td>12.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I guess</td>
<td>지요</td>
<td>14.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I presume</td>
<td>지요</td>
<td>14.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall/I will</td>
<td>겠-</td>
<td>14.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wonder: do(es)?</td>
<td>-(으)르켜요</td>
<td>12.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll bet</td>
<td>겠-</td>
<td>14.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immediate future</td>
<td>-(으)르켜요</td>
<td>14.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in (dynamic location)</td>
<td>서</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in (static location)</td>
<td>에</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inferential</td>
<td>겠-</td>
<td>14.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infinitive ending</td>
<td>어 ~ 아</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental particle</td>
<td>-(으)로</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intending to</td>
<td>-(으)리</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intentional</td>
<td>겠-</td>
<td>14.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>-이다, -이에요, -입니다</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is doing</td>
<td>-고 있어요</td>
<td>13.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is going to</td>
<td>-(으)르 겠어요</td>
<td>13.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is like something</td>
<td>같아요</td>
<td>9.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is the same as</td>
<td>-이다, -이에요, -입니다</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isn't that the case?</td>
<td>지요</td>
<td>14.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just</td>
<td>만</td>
<td>11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kinship terms</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

_E-K Pattern Glossary / 358_
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>L</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-1 (ㄹ→ㄴ) verbs</td>
<td>special consonant base</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-doubling verbs</td>
<td>special vowel base</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-extending verbs</td>
<td>special vowel base</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let me</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let's not</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like it</td>
<td></td>
<td>9.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
<td></td>
<td>9.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long negative</td>
<td></td>
<td>12.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long negative</td>
<td></td>
<td>12.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long negatives</td>
<td></td>
<td>12.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manner adverbs</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moreover (adverb)</td>
<td></td>
<td>12.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must have done/ been</td>
<td></td>
<td>14.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n'est-ce pas?</td>
<td></td>
<td>14.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negative commands</td>
<td></td>
<td>12.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negative copula</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negative honorifics</td>
<td>12.2.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negative marker</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neither, nor</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.11, 12.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nicht wahr?</td>
<td></td>
<td>14.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no sooner than</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not (negative marker)</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not either</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.4, 7.11, 12.3, 12.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
object particle
only
- 른, 옆
만 plus affirmative
바에 plus negative
아니면
또는
또는 (이) 나
또는 (이) 나

p ~ w (ㅂ ~ w) verbs
past base
- 쪼- -있-/-있-
past future
- 쥐었-
past infinitive
-있어/-있어, - 쳐-
past tense, Polite Style
-있어요/-있어요, - 쳐요
past-past
- 쳐-
per
색
Please do it.
- (으) 시지요
plural marker
들
Polite Style particle
요
possession
있어요 ~ 없어요
possessive particle
의
presume
-지요
-겠-
probable future
- (으) 를 거예요
progressive
- 고 있어요
promise-like future
- (으) 끼께요
pronouns
purposive ending
- (으) 러
| realization when | -(으)니(까) | 13.1 |
| rhetorical retorts | -(으)나요 | 13.5 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-'s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s-irregular verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequential ending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shall I/we?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject/focus particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suggestions/tentative questions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suppose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suppositive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspetive Ending</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t~ 1 (~) verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>then again (adverb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thinking of doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>though</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to (in order to)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to (people)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to (places)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(together) with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>too</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>topic/contrast particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>types of base and types of future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>until</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>up to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbal nouns (descriptive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbal nouns (processive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w - 니 verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wanna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>what’s more (adverb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When, [I realized]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will probably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with the intention to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would like to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you know</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E-K Pattern Glossary /362
Lesson Five

Dialogue 1

Chris  Uh, excuse me.
Kim    Oh, Mr. Murphy. Long time no see.
Chris  Mr. Kim, this is my wife.
Eunice I'm Eunice. How do you do?
Kim    I'm Kim Ch'anggi. How do you do?
Chris  Mr. Kim is my Korean teacher.
Eunice Oh, I see. Pleased to meet you.

Dialogue 2

Chris  My wife is a piano teacher.
Kim    Oh, really? You're (an) English (person), aren't you, Mr. Murphy?
Chris  Yes.
Kim    Is your wife also English?
Chris  No, she isn't English. She's from Australia (she's an Australia person).

Dialogue 3

Chris  Is this your umbrella, Mr. Kim?
Kim    Yes, it's mine. Thank you.
Eunice Is this newspaper yours, too?
Kim    No, that's not mine.

Dialogue 4

Kim    Where is that wine from? (As for that thing, what country's wine is it?)
Eunice (Do you mean) This one? This one is French wine.
Kim    Well then, what is that (thing over there)?
Eunice Ah, that is an English alcoholic beverage.
Kim    What kind of drink is it?
Eunice It's whiskey.
Kim    It's all imported stuff, isn't it?
Chris  No. That ginseng wine is a Korean product.
Lesson Six
Dialogue 1

Store Clerk Welcome! What can I get for you?
Chris Do you have cigarettes?
Store Clerk Yes, we do.
Chris Do you have matches, too?
Store Clerk No, we don't. We have lighters.
Chris In that case, please give me some cigarettes and a lighter.
Store Clerk Shall I give you the American cigarettes?
Chris No, please give me those Korean cigarettes.
Store Clerk Yes, all right. Here you are.
Chris How much is it altogether?
Store Clerk 1000 won.

Dialogue 2

Eunice Excuse me, Miss, but where's the Plaza Hotel?
Young Lady The Plaza Hotel? Over there—across from City Hall.
Eunice Oh, right. In that case, what about the British Embassy?
Young Lady The British Embassy? It's just behind this building.
Eunice Thanks.

Lesson Seven
Dialogue 1

Eunice Hello.
Halmôni Good morning. Where are you going?
Eunice I'm off to school.
Halmôni You're going to school these days?
Eunice Yes. On Mondays and Wednesdays I go to Korea University. I'm learning Korean at Korea University.
Halmôni Really? Hurry home!

Dialogue 2

Eunice Hi, I'm back.
Halmôni Where do you eat lunch usually?
Eunice I eat at the school cafeteria.
Halmôni Do they make good food, there?
Eunice Yes. They do a good job on the pulgogi and pibimpap. It's very tasty.
Halmôni Do they sell alcohol, too?
Eunice Go on, halmôni — since when do they sell alcohol at a school cafeteria?

English Equivalents / 364
Dialogue 3

Chris  Excuse me. Where do they sell tickets for trains to Taejŏn?
ajŏssi  The ticket counter is over there.
Chris  Thanks.
Chris  From what platform does the train to Taejŏn leave?
agassi  It leaves from the first platform.
Chris  How many hours does it take?
agassi  It takes two hours.
Chris  What are you looking for?
agassi  My pen.
Chris  Oh, here it is! Sorry.

Lesson Eight
Dialogue 1

Miss Lee  What are you doing lately?
Eunice  I'm studying Korean.
Miss Lee  Where are you studying Korean?
Eunice  At Korea University.
Miss Lee  Really? What book are you learning from?
Eunice  We're using Korean Conversation. The book's OK.
Miss Lee  Do you also know Japanese?
Eunice  No! I can't speak Japanese. It's too difficult.
Miss Lee  So, you're not doing any other subjects?
Eunice  No. I'm also learning economics and political science.
Miss Lee  Are your Korean language studies going well?
Eunice  No, it's really hard. I have a long way to go.

Dialogue 2

Eunice  Hello?
Operator  Yes, this is the National Theatre. Go ahead.
Eunice  I'd like to make a reservation, please.
Operator  Yes, Ma'am. Please tell me your name and credit card number.
Eunice  Excuse me? One more time, please! Oh, Miss Lee! This is too difficult. I can't catch what they're saying.
Miss Lee  Really? In that case, I'll talk to them.
Lesson Nine
Dialogue 1

ajŏssi Uh, how do you do?
Murphy What? Oh—right, hello.
ajŏssi Oh! You speak Korean! Is this your first time in Korea?
Murphy Yes. Well, in fact, I came last year. I live in Seoul.
ajŏssi Really? What brought you here?
Murphy I'm here on business. I work in an English company.
ajŏssi So, how long are you here?
Murphy Well, I don't really know yet.
ajŏssi Are you American?
Murphy No, I'm English.
ajŏssi Oh, really? My apologies. I've just arrived from London, too.
Murphy Really? What were you doing there?
ajŏssi I've also been on business. I work in a trading company. Here, please take my namecard. Get in touch sometime.

Dialogue 2

Murphy Did you have a fun weekend, Miss Lee?
Miss Lee Yes. I went to the cinema yesterday with your wife.
Murphy So I heard. Were there lots of people at the theatre?
Miss Lee Yes, it was quite something. There were lots of people, like Namdaemun Market.
Murphy What film did you see?
Miss Lee It was a Korean film.
Murphy I'd like to see a Korean film sometime (once) too.
Miss Lee Was the film OK?
Miss Lee It wasn't particularly interesting. So we came out in the middle. After that we went to a tabang to drink tea.

Lesson Eleven
Dialogue 1

Yŏngch’ŏl Eric, where do you live? (Where's your house?)
Eric In P’yŏngch’ang-dong.
Yŏngch’ŏl Really? My, you live in quite a rich neighborhood!
Does it take a long time from home to school?
Eric It takes about an hour.
Yŏngch’ŏl How old are you, Eric?
Eric I'm 21. I was born in 1976.
Yŏngch’ŏl Really? That makes us the same age! When's your birthday?
Eric August 24. Why?
Yŏngch’ŏl Ha! Then that makes you my older brother! (jokingly) Older brother, please take good care of me! Say, what's your telephone number at home?
Eric 352-1073. By the way, Yŏngch’ŏl, our Korean class is having a party this weekend. Be sure to come.

English Equivalents / 366
Dialogue 2

Yŏngch’ŏl  How many people came to the party yesterday?
Eric     About fifteen.
Yŏngch’ŏl  Really? Did you drink a lot?
Eric     We drank about seventy bottles of beer.
Yŏngch’ŏl  Did you consume a lot of snacks, too?
Eric     Ten squid, twenty packs of potato chips, and a box of apples.
Yŏngch’ŏl  What time did it finish?
Eric     At 2 o’clock in the morning. Say, why didn’t you come?
Yŏngch’ŏl  I’m sorry, I forgot. Please forgive me, older brother!
Eric     OK, OK. No problem. Say, what time is it now?
Yŏngch’ŏl  It’s 12:35 P.M. It’s already lunchtime! Let’s go eat.

Lesson Twelve

Dialogue 1

Sŏngman  What would you like to drink?
Sandy    Anything is fine. Shall we have a cup of coffee or something?
Sŏngman  (to waitress) Excuse me! Two cups of coffee here, please.
Sŏngman  (to Sandy) So, aren’t you bored? What should we do today?
Sandy    Hmm, I don’t know. Shall we go to a concert?
Sŏngman  Or shall we go see a play?
Sŏngman  Let’s not go to a concert. I like plays, but I don’t particularly like music.
Sandy    In that case, let’s go see a play. I like plays, too.
Sŏngman  But I want to see a Korean play. What do you think, Sandy?
Sandy    I don’t really know. I’ve never seen one yet (even once). Let’s see one once!

Dialogue 2

Eric     Miss, won’t you join me for a cup of tea or something?
Waitress I’m afraid I’m a bit busy.
Eric     In that case, do you have any time this evening? Would you like to go somewhere and have a good time? [without any of the tacky connotations of the English phrase]
Waitress I’m afraid I’m busy in the evening, too.
Eric     Really? I see. My apologies. (Eric backs off)
Waitress Just a minute! I’m not busy tomorrow.
Lesson Thirteen

Dialogue 1

Eric  Shall we go someplace else? Or shall we just stay here?
Miss Kwak  It's cold outside, so let's just stay here.
Eric  Miss Kwak, do you have many brothers and sisters?
Miss Kwak  I have one older brother and one older sister.
Eric  Are they both married?
Miss Kwak  Just my older brother. They have a son too. My older sister is still single, but as soon as she graduates from college, she's getting married. What's your family like, Eric?
Eric  There's just my mother, my father, and my sister.
Miss Kwak  My sister's name is Sandy.
Eric  I hope you don't mind my asking, but what does your father do?
Miss Kwak  He's with a trading company.
Eric  Is your father old?
Miss Kwak  Yes, he'll be fifty this September.
Miss Kwak  Oh, go on—he's still young!

Dialogue 2

Chris  Did you get through to Mr. Nam?
Miss Lee  When I called just a moment ago, nobody answers.
Chris  Oh, that's right. He probably isn't there today. It's Friday, so he's probably playing golf.

Lesson Fourteen

Dialogue 1

Eunice  Are you going to go downtown today?
Mrs. Kim  Yes, I'm thinking of doing some shopping today. Won't you go with me?
Eunice  Yes, fine. So what are you going to buy?
Mrs. Kim  There's not much time left until Christmas, so I want to buy some Christmas presents. Where do you suppose would be best?
Eunice  Probably Tongdaemun Market would be the best, right?
Mrs. Kim  Yes, that's probably the case. I've been there several times, too. The prices of things there are very cheap, aren't they?
Eunice  Just a moment. I'll just go to the restroom.
Mrs. Kim  Hurry up. I'll be waiting in front of the elevator.
Eunice  So, shall we go? Shall we ride the subway? Or shall we take a taxi?
Mrs. Kim  I want to go in comfort, so let's take a taxi. I'll pay.

English Equivalents / 368
Dialogue 2

Kang  Let me introduce a friend to you. This is Nam Chu-hyŏng.
Chris  How do you do? I'm Chris Murphy.
Nam   How do you do? I'm Nam Chu-hyŏng.
Kang  Well then, let's sit down, shall we?
Chris  Is this your first time here (in this establishment)?
Nam   No, I've been here a few times before.
Waitress  What would you like?
Kang  (to waitress) Just a moment. (to Nam) What shall we order?
Nam   Anything at all is fine, but I think I'll have kalbi.
Chris  In that case, I'll have kalbi, too.
Waitress  And you, sir?
Nam   I'll have pulgogi.
Waitress  Right then. Two servings of kalbi and one serving of pulgogi.
          How about beverages?
Chris  Would you like to imbibe a bit?
Kang, Nam  Sure!
Chris  In that case, why don't you start off by bringing us three bottles of beer.

Dialogue 3

Nam   Hello. Is Chris Murphy in?
Miss Lee  Yes he is. What shall I say it is about?
Nam   Beg your pardon?
Miss Lee  May I have your name please?
Nam   It's Nam Chu-hyŏng.
Miss Lee  Just a moment please.
Chris  Well, well, well! How good to see you! Do come in.
          Please sit down.
          Miss Lee — would you mind bringing us two cups of coffee?
Nam   How have you been keeping all this time?
Chris  Thank you. Nothing special to report. Well then, so what business brings you here?
Answer Key to
Written Exercises

Lesson One

Exercise (1): English Equivalents

(1) Is that so? Really?
(2) Thank you.
(3) See you later (Formal).
(4) How are you, Mr. Kim?
(5) Hello (to someone working).

(6) Please come in.
(7) Hello (on the phone).
(8) Excuse me (for what I did).
(9) Pleased to make your acquaintance.
(10) Please come in.

Exercise (2): Korean Equivalents

(1) 만나서 반갑습니다.
(2) 수고 하셨어요.
(3) 안녕하세요, 이 설생님.
(4) 어서 오세요.
(5) 천만에요.

(6) 시간이 다 됐습니다.
(7) 또 웃겠습니까, or 또 하요.
(8) 설례하겠습니다.
(9) 안녕히 계세요.
(10) 수고하세요.

Exercise (3): How do you Respond?

(1) 과울합니다. or 설례했습니다.
(2) 여보세요.
(3) 처음 부릅니다.
(4) 만나서 반갑습니다.
(5) 그래요?
(6) 안녕하세요.
(7) 들이오세요. 앉으세요.
(8) 설생님, 시간이 다 됐습니다.

(9) 설례합니다.
(10) 감사합니다. or 고맙습니다.
(11) 냐 or 에/아니오.
(12) 설례했습니다.
(13) 또 하요.
(14) 안녕히 가세요.
(15) 또 웃겠습니다.

Lesson Two

Exercise (1): Practicing Responses

(1) a (2) b (3) c (4) b (5) a/b/c (6) a/b (7) a/b (8) a (9) b (10) b
Exercise (2): Match the Appropriate Response

(1) d (2) h (3) b (4) c (5) i/g (6) f (7) a (8) c (9) c

Exercise (3): Remember the Korean Equivalent

(1) 시작할까요? (14) 그래요?
(2) 설례합니다. (15) 심분만 섞시다.
(3) 네, 시작합니다. (16) 영어로 하지 마세요.
(4) 다 같이, 한국말로 하세요. (17) 하나, 둘, 셋, 넷, 다섯, 여섯, 일곱, 여덟, 아홉, 열
(5) 질문 있어요? (18) (다시) 심분만 섞시다.
(6) 책을 보지 마세요. (19) 들기만 하세요.
(7) 다시 말해 주세요. (20) 놓어서 미안합니다.
(8) 크게 말해 주세요. (21) 첫 페이지를 보세요.
(9) 대답하세요. 알겠어요? (22) 따라 하세요.
(10) 다음 페이지를 보세요. (23) 감사합니다. or 고맙습니다.
(11) 철저히 말해 주세요. (24) 안녕히 가세요. or 안녕히 게세요.
(12) 모르겠어요.
(13) 네, 알겠어요.

Exercise (4): Practice with Korean Names

(1) 김정호 male, (2) 이석현 male, (3) 박은미 female,
(4) 최홍석 male, (5) 장혜경 female, (6) 남경자 female,
(7) 홍진호 male, (8) 허미선 female, (9) 서지선 male,
(10) 백경희 female, (11) 조철민 male, (12) 노호철 male,
(13) 정재훈 male, (14) 임석준 male, (15) 오경애 female,
(16) 강승자 female, (17) 안철호 male, (18) 한수미 female,
(19) 심전희 female, (20) 윤철수 male

Lesson Three

Exercise (2): Recognizing Country Names

(1) Kenya (2) France (3) Pakistan (4) Mexico
(5) Laos (6) Greece (7) Iraq (8) Finland
(9) New Zealand (10) Singapore (11) Denmark (12) Netherlands
(13) Thailand (14) Poland (15) Chile (16) Sweden
(17) Libya (18) Brazil (19) Indonesia (20) Canada

Answer Key / 371
Exercise (3): Recognizing Loans from English

1. radio  2. bus  3. taxi  4. piano
5. kangaroo  6. toast  7. tennis  8. banana
9. camera  10. sausage  11. lemon  12. cheese
13. cake  14. ice cream  15. cassette  16. interview
17. hotel  18. golf  19. tomato  20. nightclub
21. television  22. tire  23. computer  24. hamburger

Lesson Five

Exercise (2): Complete the Sentence

1. 일본사람 (8) 내 친구 or 재 친구
2. 한국가수 (9) 재 집사람 or 아내; 저희 집사람
3. 은행원 (10) 내 남편 or 재 남편; 우리 남편
4. 러시아 학생 (11) 중국 외교관
5. 미국 의사 (12) 영어 선생님
6. 회사원
7. 김 교수님 사모님

Exercise (3): Complete the Sentences

1. 철판  2. 감지  3. 분필  4. 성냥
5. 중국말 신문 (8) 종이
6. 신문  7. 답례 (10) 연필
9. 붐펜 (11) 일본말 짧지
10. 연필  11. 일본말 짧지
12. 러시아말 채

Exercise (4): Complete the Sentence

1. 박 박사님(의)  6. 맨호체(의) 부인(의)
2. 김 박사(의)  7. 천구(의)
3. 그 사람(의)  8. 수진체(의)
4. 박 박사님(의) 부인(의)  9. 남편(의)
5. 재  10. 집사람(의) or 아내(의)
Exercise (5): Translation into Korean

(1) 그 것은 박 선생님의 고향이에요? or 그 공책은 박 선생님 것이에요?
(2) 아니오. 박 선생님 것이 아니에요.
(3) 이 우산은 누구(의) 것이에요?
(4) 가수(의) 것이에요.
(5) 장 선생님의 부인은 학생이에요?
(6) 아니오. 학생이 아니에요. 한국말 선생님이에요.
(7) 그 외국학생은 미국사람이에요?
(8) 아니오. 미국사람(이) 아니에요. 호주사람이에요.
(9) 이 성냥은 만들고(의) 것이에요?
(10) 이 공책은 어느 나라(의) 제품이에요?
(11) 저 사람은 중국외교관이에요.
(12) 이 것은 중국외교관의 한국말책이에요.
(13) 어떤 것이 러시아인분이에요?
(14) 모르겠어요. 그 것이에요?
(15) 모가미 박사님은 일본인이에요.
(16) 부인이 러시아인에요? 아니오, 러시아사람(이) 아니에요.
    프랑스사람이에요.
(17) 그 사람은 누구에요? 장교수님이에요.
(18) 그 집지는 어떤 집지에요? 모르겠어요.

Exercise (6): Vocabulary Drill

(1) 선문 (2) 은행 (3) 영어 (4) 책
(5) 한국 (6) 회사원 (7) 성냥 (8) 철판

Lesson Six

Exercise (1): Fill in the Blanks

(1) a. 안에  b. 밖에 c. 앞에 d. 뒤에  e. 뒤에
(2) a. 위에  b. 속에 c. 뒤에 d. 아래(에)/밑에  e. 오른쪽/편에
(3) a. 에  b. 뒤에 c. 앞에 d. 앞에  e. 근처에

Exercise (2): Sentence Construction

(1) 방 안에 책상이 있어요 ~ 없어요.
(2) 집에 텔레비전이 있어요 ~ 없어요.
(3) 교실에 선생님이 있어요 ~ 없어요.

Answer Key / 373
Exercise (3): Naming Locations

(1) 김선생님은 _____ 옆에, 왼편/쪽에, 맞은편에, (___하고___) 사이에, 오른편/쪽에 있어요.
(2) 제 책은 _____ 위에, 뒷에, 앞에, (___하고___) 사이에, 안에/속에 있어요.
(3) 은행은 _____ 옆에, 맞은편에, 뒤에, 왼편/쪽에, 밖에 있어요.
(4) 공원이 _____ (___) 근처에, 앞에, (___하고___) 사이에, 맞은편에, 뒤에 있어요.

Exercise (4): English to Korean Translation

(1) 제 담배가 어디 있어요?
(2) 안호씨의 가방 속에 있어요?
(3) (제) 가방 속에는 책하고 종이하고 라이타가 있어요.
(4) 그런데 담배는 없어요.
(5) 여기 담배가 있어요. 성남이 있어요?
(6) 성남은 책상 위에 있어요.
(7) 딸레합니다. 성남은 책상 위에 없어요.
(8) 텔레비전 위에 있어요?
(9) 없어요. 그렇지만 옆방에는 있어요. 설례합니다.
(10) 여기 성남이 있어요. 한국성남이에요.
(11) 안호씨의 담배는 한국담배에요?
(12) 아니오. 미국 것이에요.
(13) 박교수님의 부인이 안호씨하고 수진씨 사이에 있어요.
(14) 안호씨는 제 친구에요. 한국 학생이에요.
(15) 수진씨가 누구에요? 수진씨도 학생이에요?회사원이에요?

Exercise (5): Korean to English Translation

(1) There is a tree in front of the school.
(2) What is under the tree? Is it a baby? I don’t know.

Answer Key / 374
(3) Yongjin and his parents are here. Manho is in the next room.
(4) There is a picture beside the desk. What is inside the picture?
(5) How much money does Mr. Ch’oe have?
(6) How much is it? Please give me one thousand won.
(7) There is a newspaper and a magazine on the desk. (There are newspapers and magazines on the desk.)
(8) Where is my notebook? I’m sorry. Please say it again. And please speak slowly.
(9) What buildings are there in the vicinity of the embassy? On the left there is a hotel. And opposite there is City Hall.

Exercise (6): Possession and Plurals

(1) 저는 책을하고 잡지들이 있어요.
(2) 저는 신문들을 주세요. 저는 없어요.
(3) 그런데, 한국신문들이 있어요?
(4) 이 천성남은 학생들이 있어요.
(5) 이 방 안에는 의사들이 있어요?
(6) 라이타들은 있어요. 그렇지만 성남들은 있어요.
(7) 좋은가 없어요? 아니오, 있어요.
(8) 만호씨의 친구는 학생들이 없어요? 네, 없어요.
(9) 방 안에 그림들이 있어요? 아니오, 그렇지만 부모님들의 방에는 있어요.

Exercise (7): Vocabulary Drill

(1) 책상 옆에 ______ 이~가 있어요?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>학교</th>
<th>대사관</th>
<th>은행</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>공원</td>
<td>백화점</td>
<td>호텔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>회사</td>
<td>대학교</td>
<td>가게</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer Key / 375
Lesson Seven

Exercise (1): Fill in the Blanks

(1) 잠지를, 신문을, 잠지도 신문도, 중국책을, 영국신문하고 러시아신문을, 미국잡지를들
(2) 라디오를, 고기를, 휴지하고 수건을, 담배도 성냥도, 공책을, 돈을, 연필(들)하고 종이를
(3) 영화관도 공원도, 의사 선생님하고 의사 선생님의 부인을, 영화를, 감선생님 부인도 박 선생님 부인도, 선생님을, 제 친구들을, 학생을 많이

Exercise (2): Building Sentences from Phrases

(1) 영화관에
(2) 의자 옆에
(3) 박 박사님한테서
(4) 집하고 나무사이에
(5) 집에서
(6) 공원에
(7) 영화관 오른편/쪽에
(8) 아버지한테서
(9) 요즘에
(10) 이 방에서
(11) 아침에
(12) 환자/편에
(13) 제 친구에게 (한테)
(14) 메모장에서
(15) 음식점에서
(16) 집에서

Exercise (3): Verb Phrases

(1) 창문을 닫아요.
(2) 잠지를 놓아요.
(3) 물을 마셔요.
(4) 방에서 놀아요.
(5) 노래를 불러요.
(6) 영화구경을 해요.
(7) 늦게 일어나요.
(8) 담배를 피워요.
(9) 학교에 가요.
(10) 한국말을 말해요.
(11) 영어를 배워요.
(12) 의사소리를 기다려요.
(13) 라디오를 듣어요.
(14) 일해요.

Exercise (4): Korean to English Translation

(1) What are you doing now? I am watching television. Are you watching alone?
   No, the baby is watching, too.
(2) Do you have a dog at home? Yes, we do. Where is it now? I don’t know. Does the dog play well? Yes, it plays well.
(3) Our dog plays in the park.

Answer Key/376
(4) Our baby drinks both water and milk well.
(5) What are you doing? I am waiting for my friend.
(6) Where are you going? I am going to the park. I am looking for our dog.
(7) Where are you going? I am going to the restaurant.
(8) Our father works in a bank. He receives a lot of letters at the bank. And he writes a lot of letters at home.
(9) I stay at home on Sundays. What do you do at home? Do you read the newspaper? Yes, and I read magazines, too.
(10) My younger sibling doesn’t talk much.
(11) Is the Australian embassy big or small?

Exercise (5): English to Korean Translation

(1) 학교 선생님이에요. 보통 영어를 가르치요.
(2) 토요일 아침에는 신문을 읽어요. 그리고 목요일 저녁에는 극장에 가요.
(3) 공부(물) 잘 해요. 많이 배워요.
(4) 밥에는 쉬어요.
(5) 도시락에는 짜이 맛어요. 요즘에는 짜이 비싸요.
(6) 금요일 아침에는 늦게 일어나요. 우유를 빠리 먹어요. 그리고 학교에 가요.
(7) 이 교수님을 기다려요.
(8) 휴지를 주세요. 수건도 주세요.
(9) 우리 집은 작아요. 그렇지 않아요.
(10) 수요일에는 빅토우 우유를 사요.
(11) 예기는 혼자(서) 놀아요.
(12) 아버지는 노래를 잘 불러요.
(13) 어머니가 예기를 불러요. 그렇지 않아도 예기는 자요.
(14) 우리 어머니는 서울에서 살어요. 거기에는 상점하고 백화점이 많아 있어요.
(15) 도서관이 어디에요? 알아요? 네, 저기 식당하고 저 건물 사이에 있어요.
(16) 오늘 저녁에 영화를 봐요.

Exercise (7): Particle Insertion

(1) I watch TV. 을
(2) It tastes good. 이
(3) The baby is coming. 가
(4) I meet a friend. 들

Answer Key / 377
(5) Books are expensive. 이
(6) We eat [rice/a meal]. 을
(7) I play in the park. 에서
(8) I get money from my friend. 는/한테서/을
(9) We eat [a meal] at the restaurant. 에서/을
(10) Students learn Korean in the classroom. 에서/이/을
(11) There is a newspaper on top of the desk. 에/이
(12) There is a train beside the platform. 에/가
(13) A woman is buying a ticket in front of the ticket counter. 에서/가/를
(14) On the weekend I see movies with my boyfriend. 에/하고/을

Exercise (8): Vocabulary Drill

(1) 나는 아침에 _______.
공부(를) 해요, 개하고 놀아요, 산책(를) 해요, 운행에 가요, 신문을 읽어요, 집에 와요, 공원에 가요, 편지를 씀, 영화구경을 가요, 신문을 봐요, 집에 있어요, 러시아말을 배워요, 영어로 말해요, 우유를 마셔요, 라디오를 들어요, 영화구경(을) 해요, 담배를 피워요, 개를 찾아요, 중국말을 가르쳐요, 물을 많이 마셔요, 친구를 만나요, 도서관에서 일(을) 해요, 아침을 먹어요, 창문을 열어요.

(2) 나는 _______ 편지를 씀.
밤에, 아침에, 토요일에, 텔레비전에, 금요일 아침에, 화요일에, 일요일에, 목요일에, 오늘 저녁에, 수요일에, 많이, 낮에, 오후에, 월요일 아침에, 자주, 오늘 밤에

Lesson Eight

Exercise (1): Using 안 and 도


Answer Key / 378
Exercise (2): Building Sentences from Phrases

(1) 밥에 (2) 부모님하고 (3) 음행에서 (4) 책상 위에 (5) 펜으로 (6) 대학교에서 (7) 분필로 (8) 회사에 (9) 공원에서 (10) 비행기로 (11) 정밀적으로 (12) 정치학하고 (13) 개하고 (14) 뉴스 요크로 (15) 다른 기차로 (16) 무엇으로 (17) 명어로 (18) 내 친구하고 (19) 오른편으로 (20) 오늘하고 내일 (21) 그림 아래에 (22) 향상

Exercise (3): Practice with 안, 못 and -(으)시-

(1) 안 먹어요, 못 먹어요. (2) 안 마셔요, 못 마셔요. (3) 안 가요, 못 가요. (4) 안 좋아해요. (5) 안 자요, 못 자요. (6) 안 살아요. (7) 안 쫓어요, 못 쫓어요. (8) 안 써요, 못 써요. (9) 잘 안 빌리요, 잘 못 빌리요. (10) 안 나가요, 못 나가요. (11) 없어요.

Now repeat the exercise.


Exercise (5): Honorific Questions

(1) 선생님은 음행에서 일하시네요?
(2) 선생님은 펜을 잘 사세요?
(3) 선생님은 한국에서 영어를 가르치세요?
(4) 선생님은 아침에 빵이랑 우유를 잡수세요?
(5) 선생님은 교회에 나가세요?
(6) 선생님은 미국 사람이세요?
(7) 선생님은 수영을 안 좋아하세요?
(8) 선생님은 오늘 저녁에 바쁘세요?
(9) 선생님은 중국말이 힘드세요?
(10) 선생님은 술을 잘 하세요?
(11) 선생님은 많이 못 잡수세요?
(12) 선생님은 친구를 기다려세요?
(13) 선생님은 담배를 안 피우세요?
(14) 선생님은 밤에 일찍 주무세요?
(15) 선생님은 린던대학교에서 한국말을 배우세요?
(16) 선생님은 여기(서) 사세요?

Answer Key/379
(17) 선생님은 안 터우세요?
(18) 선생님은 항상 악을 잡으세요?
(19) 선생님은 다른 교제를 안 쓰세요? (use/write)
(20) 선생님은 라디오를 들으세요?
(21) 선생님은 내일 못 떠나세요?

Exercise (6): English to Korean Translation

(1) 지금 주무세요? 아니요, 일어나요.
(2) 주말에는 가끔 약을 먹어요.
(3) 미피세요는 부인이랑 수영을 자주 하세요.
(4) 담배를 피우세요? 아니요, 안 피워요.
(5) 어머니한테서 돈을 받아요. 그리고 친구랑 영화를 보어요.
(6) 우리 아버지는 경제학을 공부하세요. 정치학도 공부하세요.
(7) 그 학생의 책상 위에는 공책이 있어요. 그리고 방도 항상 깨끗이 청소 (를) 해요.
(8) 무슨 과목을 배우세요? 전공이 무엇이에요?
(9) 일요일에는 보통 교회에 가요. 가끔 혼자서 가요.
(10) 비행기로는 못 가세요. 알아요!
(11) 팔리 오세요!
(12) 그 교회에서 오른편으로 가세요.
(13) 시간이 많이 없어요.

Exercise (7): Korean to English Translation

(1) The doctor doesn’t watch television. The children don’t watch television, either.
(2) Our dog doesn’t play in the park. He is always in the house. He is a really good dog.
(3) Do you have a cat? Is it big? She is rather small. Does she often play with other cats? Yes, and she also eats a lot of meat. And drinks a lot of milk.
(4) Usually I go by bus. It doesn’t [Literally: can’t] go very fast.
(5) The hotel is directly across from the American embassy. It is right next to our house.
(6) My husband doesn’t write letters very often (or well).
(7) What does your girlfriend do at home?
(8) Mr. Oh goes to Seoul by train. He always goes to is friend’s house in the evening.

Answer Key / 380
(9) My father goes for a walk every day with my mother.
(10) These days we have an Australian exchange student living at our house. She is always studying.
(11) Kyonghee always gets up early. And she goes to bed late.
(12) My room is usually clean. I sometimes study there. But the library is preferable.
(13) Professor Pak’s wife and Mr. Pa’s wife eat lunch together every day.
(14) I can’t play baseball alone. First I wait for my friends. They live in this neighborhood.

Lesson Nine

Exercise (1): Past Tense

(1) 친구를 만나셨어요? Did you meet your friend?
(2) 무슨 영화를 봤어요? Which movie did you see?
(3) 어머니는 친구들을 한테 편지를 많이 쓰셨어요. My mother wrote a lot of letters to her friend.
(4) 개가 문을 열었어요. The dog opened the door.
(5) 아버지는 많이 적으셨어요. My father didn’t say much.
(6) 그렇지만 친구가 봤어요. But he had a lot of friends.
(7) 살던, 고기를 많이 못 먹었어요. Actually, I wasn’t able to eat a lot of meat.
(8) 사모님도 그 책을 읽으셨어요? Did your wife read that book, too?
(9) 그 영화가 좋았어요? Was the movie good?
(10) 사장님이 나한테 돈을 많이 주셨어요. The company president gave me a lot of money.
(11) 나는 공원에서 아이와 같이 놀았어요. I played in the park with the child.
(12) 사모님은 언제 도착하셨어요? When did your wife arrive?
(13) 나는 우체국에서 왔어요. I came from the post office.
(14) 누가 우리를 봤어요? Who saw us?
(15) 동생은 언제 호주로 떠났어요? When did your younger sibling leave for Australia?
(16) 그 개는 잘 견디어요. That dog was very big.
(17) 나는 런던 대학생이었어요. I was a student at the University of London.
(18) 박 교수님은 런던에서 사셨어요. Professor Pak lived in London.
(19) 내 장갑이 여기 있었어요. My gloves were here.
(20) 그 집 앞은 참 착했어요. Mr. Kim’s daughter was a really nice girl.
(21) 무슨 연구를 하셨어요? What kind of research did you do?
(22) 정원이 예뻤어요. The garden was pretty.

Answer Key / 381
Exercise (2): Using -고 싶어 (해) 요

(1) 나는 새 자동차를 사고 싶어요.
(2) 나는 다른 네트워크를 배고 싶어요.
(3) 서울에 같이 올리가고 싶으세요?
(4) 택시를 부르고 싶어요?
(5) 선생님은 학교에 전화를 걸고 싶어하세요?
(6) 지난 주일에 부산에 내려가고 싶었어요.
(7) 나는 한국사람한테 면지를 쓰고 싶었어요.
(8) 나는 중국말도 배우고 싶어요.
(9) 애기가 같이 놀고 싶어요?
(10) 청바지를 입고 싶어요.
(11) 옷집 아들은 영화배우가 되고 싶어했어요.
(12) 나는 명함 하나를 받고 싶었어요.
(13) 신발은 안 벗고 싶었어요.

Exercise (3): English to Korean Translation

(1) 어제 어디 가셨어요? 시장에 갔었어요.
(2) 어제 밤에 빌 벌어요 or 하셨어요? 있겠어요.
(3) 어제 밤에 늦게 왔어요? or 오셨어요? 아니요. 일찍 왔어요.
(4) 어제 백화점에서 무엇을 샀어요? or 사셨어요? 마지막으로 의류를 샀어요.
(5) 낭동생하고 빌 벌어요? or 하셨어요? 공원에서 놀았어요.
(6) 은행 앞에서 빌 벌어요? or 하셨어요? 어미님한테 전화를 걸었어요.
(7) 버스에 사람이 많이 있었이요?
(8) 우체국을 쉽게 찾았어요?
(9) 다방에서 벌 벌어요? or 하셨어요? 햄스를 먹었어요.
(10) 어제 신발을 안 닦았어요. 그리고 이도 안 닦았어요.

Exercise (4): Purposes

(1) 전화를 걸러 나갔어요.
(2) 우리 말은 한국어 연구를 하려 한국에 갔어요.
(3) 화요일에 우리 어머니는 신발을 사리 시장에 가셨어요.
(4) 낭동생이 토요일에 광장을 보러 백화점에 갔어요.
(5) 이를 닦으려 화장실에 갔어요.
(6) 학생이 문을 열리 나왔어요.
(7) 아버지는 휴가일에 돈을 챙기려 운행에 갔다오셨어요.
(8) 아버지가 친구를 만나러 가셨어요.
(9) 제 친구가 영어를 가르치러 한국에 갔어요.
(10) 어제 밤에 술 마시러 나갔어요.

**Exercise (5): Do/Be Like**

(1) 그 영화배우는 영국사람처럼 영어를 말해요.
(2) 가수처럼 노래를 잘 불러요.
(3) 여기는 시장처럼 사람이 늘 많아 있어요.
(4) 저 사람이 누구에요? 좋겠어요. 모르겠어요. 밤에 놀아요.
(5) 오늘처럼 내일도 바빠요?
(6) 내 친구처럼 공부를 잘 하고 싶어요.
(7) 가끔 영화배우처럼 웃을 입어요.
(8) 나하고 내 친구는 가족 같아요.
(9) 그 분들의 정원은 아주 커요. 공원 같아요!
(10) 오늘이 좋아요. 주말 같아요.
(11) 저녁에는 이 방은 술집 같아요.
(12) 이 구두를 작년에 샀어요. 그런데 새 구두 같아요.
(13) 이 모자는 그 것과 같아요.

**Exercise (6): Fill in the Gaps and Translate**

한테 On Sunday Sumi wrote a letter to me.
한테 So on Tuesday I called Sumi.
And we met yesterday.
와/하고/랑 Sumi came with Chaeho.
에서 We went for a walk together in the park.
는 Chaeho didn’t have a lot of time. So he went quickly.
와/하고/랑 I went to the cinema with Sumi.
가 The movie was really interesting.

**Exercise (7): Korean to English Translation**

(1) I went to Seoul to go sight-seeing.
(2) The students all went out to smoke.
(3) Don’t you want to go out today? No, I want to go to sleep early.
(4) It was really hot this morning. But on Tuesday it wasn’t particularly hot.
(5) The movie wasn’t particularly interesting. The movie theatre was too small.
(6) The teacher went out to rest for a minute.
(7) Is the movie finished? It’s not finished yet.
(8) Do you want to make a phone call?
(9) Father went out to call a taxi.
(10) They went out to go for a walk in the park.
(11) The dog bit the cat.
(12) Did you eat supper in that new restaurant yesterday? Yes, but the food wasn’t that tasty.
(13) I want to go to the bar upstairs.
(14) I did some economics research at university. But it wasn’t very interesting.
(15) I went over to (play at) Mr. Yeon’s house yesterday.
(16) Where did you go? or Where have you been? I’ve just come back from the post office.
(17) The movie just finished.
(18) Father, I want to go to the station to watch the trains.
(19) I want to rest a bit on the weekend.
(20) I want to go to the market for a minute.
(21) I spent a lot of money on these new shoes. [Literally: A lot of money went out on account of these shoes.]
(22) Are we there yet? No, we still have a long way to go.

Lesson Ten

Exercise (1): Find the Misfit

(1) 누구  (2) 지금  (3) 친구  (4) 남편
(5) 문  (6) 미국 사람  (7) 학생  (8) 다
(9) 산보해요  (10) 물  (11) 약  (12) 분필

Exercise (2): Related Words

(1) 박사, 사장
(2) 대학교, 회사, 백화점, 도서관, 식당
(3) 저녁, 밤, 날
(4) 아레, 밥
(5) 캐나다, 중국, 한국, 일본, 호주, 독일
(6) 어머니, 아너, 부모
(7) 마셔요, 이를 담아요, 학교에 가요

Answer Key / 384
Exercise (3): Fill in the Blanks

(1) 는/에서/을                       (8) 떠
(2) 는/에서                            (9) 여/와
(3) 가/이                             (10) 한테서/가
(4) 이/에                              (11) 보/에/여
(5) 이/에서/을/를                     (12) 에서/이/을
(6) 에서/을/하고(과)/를                (13) 에/을/몇
(7) 에서/는/을                   (14) 하고(과)

Exercise (5): Questions and Answers

(1) 정치학을 공부해요? 아니오, 정치학 공부를 안 해요.
(2) 친구를 기다려요? 아니오, 친구를 안 기다려요.
(3) 자요? 아니오, 안 자요.
(4) 혼자서 살아요? 아니오, 혼자서 안 살아요.
(5) 러시아말을 배워요? 아니오, 러시아말을 안 배워요.
(6) 한국 사람이 있어요? 아니오, 사람이 없어요.
(7) 영말을 찾아요? 아니오, 영말을 안 찾아요.
(8) 일때문에 왔어요? 아니오, 일때문에 안 왔어요.
(9) 집에 있어요? 아니오, 집에 없어요.
(10) 영화구경을 해요? 아니오, 영화구경을 안 해요.
(11) 의사예요? 아니오, 의사가 아니예요.
(12) 무역 회사에서 일 해요? 아니오, 무역 회사에서 일을 안 해요.
(13) 명함을 많이 받아요? 아니오, 많이 못 받아요.
(14) 와인을 마셔요? 아니오, 와인을 안 마셔요.
(15) 일본말을 해요? 아니오, 일본말을 못해요.
(16) 선생님이예요? 아니오, 선생님이 아니예요.
(17) 여기 계세요? 아니오, 여기 안 계세요.
(18) 값이 좀 내렸어요? 아니오, 값이 안 내렸어요.
(19) 술집에 자주 가요? 아니오, 술집에 자주 안 가요.
(20) 지금 은행에서 일을 해요? 아니오, 은행에서 일을 안 해요.
(21) 텔레비전을 너무 많이 보세요? 아니오, 너무 많이 안 보세요.
(22) 알아 들어요? 아니오, 못 알아 들어요.
(23) 청바지를 자주 입어요? 아니오, 청바지를 자주 안 입어요.
(24) 많이 알아요? 아니오, 많이 몰라요.
(25) 밥이 깨끗해요? 아니오, 밥이 안 깨끗해요.
(26) 부산에 언제 도착 해요?

Answer Key / 385
Exercise (6): Questions and Answers (Honorific)

(1) 네, 여기 강의 사이트가 있어요?
(2) 네, 여기 교과서가 있어요?
(3) 네, 여기 학생이 있어요?
(4) 네, 여기 교사가 있어요?
(5) 네, 여기 자료가 있어요?
(6) 네, 여기 기사가 있어요?
(7) 네, 여기 학생이 있어요?
(8) 네, 여기 학생이 있어요?
(9) 네, 여기 학생이 있어요?
(10) 네, 여기 학생이 있어요?
(11) 네, 여기 학생이 있어요?
(12) 네, 여기 교사가 있어요?
(13) 네, 여기 교사가 있어요?
(14) 네, 여기 교사가 있어요?
(15) 네, 여기 교사가 있어요?
(16) 네, 여기 교사가 있어요?
(17) 네, 여기 교사가 있어요?
(18) 네, 여기 교사가 있어요?
(19) 네, 여기 교사가 있어요?
(20) 네, 여기 교사가 있어요?
(21) 네, 여기 교사가 있어요?
(22) 네, 여기 교사가 있어요?

Exercise (8): Opposites

(1) 건물이 커요? 아니요, 작아요.
(2) 문을 열어요? 아니요, 닫아요.
(3) 학생이 많어요? 아니요, 적어요.
(4) 김 선생님한테 돈을 빌어요? 아니요, 김 선생님한테 돈을 받아요.
(5) 한국어를 가르쳐요? 아니요, 한국어를 배워요.
(6) 스웨터를 입었어요? 아니요, 스웨터를 벗었어요.
(7) 일어나요? 아니요, 자요.
(8) 음식은 맛이 있었어요? 아니요, 맛 없었어요.
(9) 차를 팔았어요? 아니요, 차를 샀어요.
(10) 선생님의 말을 잘 들었어요? 아니요, 말을 잘 안 들었어요.
(11) 방갈이 비쳤어요? 아니요, 쌓아요.
(12) 보통 집에 있어요? 아니요, 집에 있어요.
(13) 일은 해요? 아니요, 쉬어요.
(14) 난간 놓았어요? 아니요, 난간 도착 했어요.

Exercise (9): Opposites (Honorific)

(1) 건물이 크세요? 아니요, 작으세요. [but odd]
(2) 문을 여세요? 아니요, 닫으세요.
(3) 학생이 많으세요? 아니요, 적으세요.
(4) 김 선생님한테 돈을 주세요? 아니요, 김 선생님한테서 받으세요.
(5) 한국어를 가르치세요? 아니요, 한국어를 공부하세요.
(6) 스웨터를 입으셨어요? 아니요, 스웨터를 벗으셨어요.
Exercise (10): Korean to English Translation

(1) It’s time. Let’s start.
(2) Is that person a teacher? No, he’s a student.
(3) What are you doing (now)? I’m watching the news.
(4) Whose ring is this? It’s my ring. Please give it to me.
(5) Where do you study Korean? At Korea University.
(6) Are you going to a restaurant? I’m going to [Literally: play at] a friend’s house.
(7) Do you study in the evenings? Yes, sometimes.
(8) I couldn’t understand. Please say it in English.
(9) These days I usually get up quite late. And I always go to bed late.
(10) Did you find the house easily? No, it was a little difficult.
(11) Were they all Koreans? No, some foreigners came too.
(12) Do you usually go to bed early? Yes, I usually go to sleep early.
(13) I came as an exchange student. Really? Which country are you from?
(14) Do you speak Japanese as well? I want to learn a bit of Japanese, too.
(15) Aren’t you busy this afternoon? I have a favor to ask.
(16) Is it far from here? No, it’s not that far. I’ll go with you.
(17) Isn’t he American? No, he’s English.
(18) Is Korean difficult? Yes, it’s hard.
(19) Isn’t she Manho’s girlfriend?
(20) Do you teach Korean? No, I teach English.
(22) There are lots of trees outside my house. They are really pretty.
(23) Who sleeps in the next room?
(24) Is the building next door a restaurant? No, it seems to be a bar.
(25) Do you usually study at school or at home? I study at home. I can’t really study at school.
(26) Do you have a dog? Yes, we do. It’s very good. We have a cat as well.
(27) Is your father home now? Yes, he is. Please wait a moment.

Answer Key / 387
(28) Where are the children? They are playing in front of the house.
(29) I can’t go and watch a movie today. I’m sorry.
(30) Do you usually eat lunch in the school cafeteria? No, the food is bad (tasting) there.
(31) Did you buy a ticket? No, I didn’t buy [haven’t had a chance to buy] one yet.
   Where is the ticket booth?
(32) When does the Chonju train leave? And how many hours does it take?
(33) Where have you been? I’ve been to buy new shoes.
(34) How long does it take? It takes two hours.
(35) Where did you learn Russian? I learned it in Russia. Really? How long were you in Russia?
(36) Do you like foreign languages? Yes, I want to learn many foreign languages.
(37) Ewha University, Yonsei University and Sogang University are all in Shinch’ón. They are rather far from Seoul National University. They are far from Korea University, too.
(38) Do you usually get up early on Sundays? No, I get up late on Sundays.
(39) Is there a shoe store in this area? Yes, there’s one over there across from the front gate of the university.
(40) Our car is always clean. So it’s like new.
(41) Who are you waiting for? I am waiting for my father and mother.
(42) Usually I go straight home from school.
(43) In the afternoon I’m meeting a friend in front of the post office.
(44) Excuse me, but I have a favor to ask. Yes, go ahead.
(45) Did you eat? No, I haven’t eaten yet.
(46) Take your time (go slowly). You still have lots of time.
(47) Between the market and the post office there are a lot of inns.
(48) Do you usually return home late in the evenings? No, I don’t return late. Usually I come home early.
(49) On Sunday morning I read a book in the garden.
(50) I can’t drink alcohol. And I can’t smoke either. Really? I didn’t know.

**Exercise (11): English to Korean Translation**

(1) 한국말 선생님이 어디 계세요? 교실에 계세요.
(2) 미국 분이세요? 아니예요, 영국 사람이에요.
(3) 여기서 무엇을 하세요? 영국 무역회사에서 일하세요.
(4) 도서관에 한국 신문이 있어요? 네, 있어요.
(5) 부인이 한국에 갈 거야요? 아니오, 갈 거야요.
(6) 일본말을 배우세요? 네, 일례문에 일본에 자주 가요.

*Answer Key: 388*
(7) 당신이 있어요? 네, 당신도 성냥도 제 책상 위에 있어요.
(8) 너무 재미있어요. 시간이 빨리 갔어요.
(9) 저녁에 점심과 체육 임요세요? 보통 식사를 먼저 잡아요.
(10) 누구한테서 들었어요? 정말이에요. 남동생한테서 들었어요.
(11) 부모님하고 같이 살아요? 아니오, 사정 근처에 친구하고 살아요.
(12) 펜이 있어요? 미안합니다. 펜도 연필도 없어요.
(13) 무엇을 하세요? 제 명함을 찾아요.
(14) 김 선생님은 담배를 안 피우세요. 술도 안 마셔요.
(15) 오늘 저녁에 영화구경을 같이 못 가요. 너무 바빠요.
(16) 저녁에는 보통 집에 있어요. 그리고 일찍 자요.
(17) 한국에는 정원하고 공원이 많이 있어요? 네, 있어요. 그런데 영국에는 더 많아요.
(18) 김 선생님은 미국에서 외교관들한테 한국말을 가르치셨어요. 그렇지만 지금은 서울에서 사세요.
(19) 학교에서 일본말을 배워요? 아니요, 중국말을 배워요. 그렇지만 말을 아직 잘 못 해요.
(20) 가방에는 좋아 있어요? 네, 여기 있어요.
(21) 성냥도 담배도 없어요. 있어요?
(22) 집이 크세요? 아니요, 별로 안 커요. 그렇지만 좋아요.
(23) 어제는 아주 즐거웠어요. 다시 가고 싶어요.
(24) 고양이 있어요? 아니오, 개도 고양이도 없어요.
(25) 낮에는 은행에서 일을 해요. 그리고 밤에는 호텔에서 일을 해요. 일 때문에 항상 바빠요.
(26) 저녁에는 이 가게 앞에서 제 친구를 만났어요. 그리고 영화구경을 가요.
(27) 보통 공원에서 혼자서 산보를 해요. 아니오, 보통 제 친구하고 해요.
(28) 아침을 아주 일찍 먹어요. 그리고 학교에 가요.
(29) 물을 많이 마셔요. 그런데 고기는 많이 안 먹어요.
(30) 점심을 먹으러 식당에 가요.
(31) 양을 먹었어요?
(32) 어느 것이 더 좋아요? 이 것이 더 좋아요.
(33) 오늘 저녁에는 시간이 좀 있어요.
(34) 친구한테 전화를 걸고 싶었어요.
(35) 그런데 나갔어요.
(36) 가끔 공원에서 일을 해요.
(37) 그래서 전화를 못 받어요.
(38) 지금 바로 집에 가지고 싶어요.
(39) 극장 안에는 너무 더웠어요. 그래서 스웨터를 벗었어요.
(40) 이를 닦고 싶었어요. 그런데 시간이 없었어요.
(41) 오늘 아침에 어디에 갔다가 왔어요? 세 경포지를 사러 시간에
Lesson Eleven

Exercise (2): Numerals and Counters

(1) 일곱시, 여덟시 정각, 일곱시 오분, 일곱시 오분 전, 여섯시 반
(2) 여섯시, 잠자 아홉 권, 개 두 마리, 건물 열한 층, 자동차 네 대
(3) 열한시, 열시 사십 오분, 열한시 십분, 아홉시 반, 일두시
(4) 이불, 신문 두 개, 책 열 권, 개 두 마리, 중이 열다섯 장
(5) 두 시간, 오일, 십사일, 여덟 시간 반, 십분
(6) 이월, 십일, 이 주간, 삐개월/세달/석달, 여섯 해
(7) 여덟시 십칠분, 여덟시 사십칠분, 여덟시 천분, 일부시 오십 삼분, 일곱시 이십 오분, 일곱시 정각

Exercise (3): Answer the Questions

(4) 십이월에 있습니다.
(6) 여덟시간 반쯤 일했습니다.
(7) 일월달에 시작합니다.
(8) 마혼 한살입니다.
(9) 석달쯤 입니다.
(10) 일시부터 일을 시작합니다.
(11) 스물네 시간입니다.

Exercise (4): Fill in the Missing Particles

(1) 마다/لازم
(2) 부터
(3) 마다
(4) 만
(5) 부터/까지
(6)لازم
(7) 부터/까지
(8) 마다/لازم
(9) 정각에
(10) 마리/상차/병

Answer Key / 390
Exercise (5): Formal Style

Part One: Easier Verbs
(1) 여기 앉으십시오, 앉으시니까?, 앉으십시오, 앉으십시오.
(2) 늦게 떠나십시오, 떠나십시오?, 떠나십시오, 떠나십시오.
(3) 여기 있습니다, 있습니까?, 있습니까, 있습니까.
(4) 친구를 전달하십시오, 전달하십시오?, 전달하십시오, 전달하십시오.
(5) 여기 향수를 줍니다, 줍니다?, 주십시오, 줍니다.
(6) 빨리 시작하십시오, 합니까?, 하십시오, 합시다.
(7) 술집에 갑니다, 갑니까?, 가십시오, 갑시다.
(8) 면지를 줍니다, 줍니다?, 쓰십시오, 쓰십시오.
(9) 교회에 나갑니다, 나갑니까?, 나가십시오, 나갑시다.
(10) 전화를 받습니다, 받으십시오, 받으십시오.
(11) 식분만 하십시오, 식니까?, 쉬십시오, 쉬시다.

Part Two: Trickier Verbs
(1) 라디오를 듣습니다, 듣습니까?, 들으십시오, 들으십시오.
(2) 책을 끝にとっては, 끝내십시오, 끝십시오.
(3) 사장님한테 전화를 걸습니다, 걸니까?, 거실시오, 걸시다.
(4) 고기를 굽습니다, 굽습니까?, 구우십시오, 구웁니다.
(5) 즐겁습니다, 즐겁습니까?, (absent), (absent).
(6) 오늘은 잘 덮습니다, 덮습니까? (absent), (absent).
(7) 나는 이 사람을 잘 알 acclaim, 알니까?, 아십시오, 알시다.
(8) 한국 음식은 아주 맛습니다, 맛습니까? (absent), (absent).
(9) 밥에 좀 줍니다, 줍니까? (absent), (absent).
(10) 내 동생은 서울에서 삽니다, 삽니까?, 사십시오, 삽시다.

Exercise (6): English to Korean Translation
(1) 하루에 세 번씩 이를 닦습니다.
(2) 오늘부터 아주 바릅니다.
(3) 언제까지 있습니까?
(4) 신보를 하려 나갑니다.
(5) 사랑마다 닿습니다.
(6) 언제 만나고 싶습니까?
(7) 아르바이트를 찾으러 왔습니다.
(8) 학생마다 그 선생님을 좋아합니다.
(9) 토요일까지 그 여관에 있었습니다.
(10) 왜 늦었습니까? 최송합니다.

Answer Key / 391
Lesson Twelve

Exercise (1): Manipulating

(1) 돼시를 빌렸지만 아직 안 왔어요.
(2) 아기는 자지만 엄마는 못 주무세요.
(3) 음악회는 가지 않지만 연극에는 가요.
(4) 내 나이가 어ottesville지만 오십년은 더 살고 싶어요.
(5) 점심때까지 일을 마치고 싶었지만 손님이 갑자기 왔어요.
(6) 택수는 좋지만 소주는 싫어요.
(7) 지금 잠자리를 보고 싶지 않지만 만화는 보고 싶어요.
(8) 양주는 비싸지만, 소주는 싸요.
(9) 우리 오빠는 결혼했지만 아직도 술집에 다녀요.
(10) 선배님을 만나고 싶지만 시간이 없어요.
(11) 돈은 있지만 사고 싶지 않아요.
(12) 나는 영화 한영을 가끔 가지만 동생은 잘 가지 않아요.
(13) 나는 돈이 적지만 친구는 많아요.
(14) 김 사장은 아 telefon은 없지만 많은 들이 있어요.
(15) 오빠는 일찍 왔지만 동생은 늦게 왔어요.
(16) 그분의 아버님은 우체국에서 일을 하시지만 변지를 많이 안 쓰세요.
(17) 나는 근데는 학생이었지만 지금은 신생이에요.
(18) 내 약혼자는 나한테 못을 주었지만 나는 못을 좋아하지 않아요.
(19) 엄마는 부산에 사시지만 달마다 서울에 한 번씩 오세요.
(20) 우리집은 크지 않지만 좋아요.
(21) 아침마다 수영을 하지만, 건강하지 못합니다.
(22) 학생들은 많지만 학교는 작아요.

Exercise (2): Suggestions and Tentative Questions

(1) 집에 돌아갈까요? Shall we go home?
(2) 그 책을 읽을까요? Shall we read that book?
(3) 춤을 출까요? Shall we dance?
(4) 길에서 옷을 벗을까요? Shall we take off our clothes on the road?

Answer Key / 392
(5) Shall we go by foot?
(6) Shall we go to the music concert together?
(7) Shall we order soju? Or, shall we order draft beer?
(8) Do you suppose my older sister will marry that man?
(9) Shall I listen to that story one more time?
(10) What clothes do you suppose mother bought at the department store?
(11) Do you suppose Mr. Kim will come with his girlfriend?
(12) Shall we wear Korean clothes?
(13) Shall we live in a different house?
(14) Shall I call a taxi?
(15) Shall I add cream? Or shall I add non-dairy creamer?

Exercise (3): The wanna Form

(1) Do you feel like drinking?
(2) Do you feel like playing tennis?
(3) Do you feel like going to the movies tomorrow?
(4) Do you feel like reading a Korean newspaper?
(5) Do you want to go to our house?
(6) Do you feel like listening to a Korean song?
(7) Do you feel like eating a hamburger quickly or something?
(8) Do you feel like smoking Korean cigarettes? Or Western cigarettes?
(9) Do you feel like waiting for me in the school cafeteria?
(10) Do you feel like meeting in front of the bank on Saturday?
(11) This is difficult. Do you feel like helping me?
(12) Do you feel like leaving tomorrow? Or, the day after tomorrow?

Answer Key / 393
Exercise (4): Long Negatives

(1) 그 여자의 언니는 학교에서 공부를 하지 않았어요. Her sister did not study at school.
(2) 이 상자는 여자에게는 너무 무겁지 않아요? Isn’t this box too heavy for a woman?
(3) 애들 때문에 피곤하지 않으세요? Aren’t you tired because of the kids?
(4) 나는 일본에서 오지 않았어요. I did not come from Japan.
(5) 언니는 나를 많이 기다리지 않았어요? You didn’t wait long for me?
(6) 언니는 담배를 피우지 않아요. My older sister doesn’t smoke.
(7) 나는 한국말을 한국에서 배우지 않았어요. I did not learn Korean in Korea.
(8) 저 아저씨는 부자 동네에서 살지 않았어요. That man does not live in a rich neighborhood.
(9) 아들은 춤을 추지 않았어요. My son did not dance.
(10) 아이들은 별다고 학교에 가지 않았어요. The children do not go to school every day.
(11) 그 여자는 그 남자와 약혼하고 싶어하지 않아요. That woman does not want to be engaged to that man.
(12) 수미씨는 오빠와 같이 라디오를 듣지 않아요. Sumi does not listen to the radio with her brother.
(13) 일요일에 나는 성당에 나가지 않아요. I do not go to church on Sundays.
(14) 커피에 설탕이랑 크림을 타지 않아요? Don’t you take sugar and cream in your coffee?

Exercise (5): Negative Commands

(1) 책을 보지 마세요. Don’t look at the book.
(2) 여자 친구를 만나지 마세요. Don’t meet your girlfriend.
(3) 술을 많이 마시지 마세요. Don’t drink a lot of alcohol.
(4) 담배를 피우지 마세요. Please don’t smoke.
(5) 그 외자에 앉지 마세요. Don’t sit in that chair.
(6) 얼음 끼지 마세요. Don’t add ice.
(7) 설탕 타지 마세요. Don’t add sugar.
(8) 늦게 들어오지 마세요. Don’t come back late.
(9) 남마다 술집에 다니지 마세요. Don’t go to bars every day.
(10) 남자랑 춤 추지 마세요. Don’t dance with that man.
(11) 모레 떠나지 마세요. Don’t leave the day after tomorrow.
(12) 걸어가지 마세요. Don’t go by foot.

Answer Key / 394
(13) 혼자 다니지 마세요. Don’t go alone.
(14) 내년에는 은퇴하지 마세요. Don’t retire next year.
(15) 그 사람한테 전화번호를 주지 마세요. Don’t give (that person) him your phone number.
(16) 이 샌드에 흙을 먹지도 마세요. Don’t starch this shirt.
(17) 이 바지를 세탁하지 마세요. Don’t wash these pants.

Exercise (6): English to Korean Translation


Exercise (7): Korean to English Translation

(1) Mr. Nam does not like music. My wife does not like it either.
(2) I’m thinking of going for a walk or something in that park over there.
(3) These things are very heavy. Do you feel like helping me?
(4) When did you return home?
(5) I cooked the meat cooked deliciously, but no one ate any.
(6) Yesterday our dog suddenly bit my father.
(7) This cream is expensive, but it is not at all tasty. Do not eat it!
(8) Teacher Kim is pretty like a movie actress.
(9) A. Would you like a cola? Or would you like ice water? B. I don’t like either one. Could you give me a beer?
(10) I’m thinking of going to Pusan tonight. Would you like to go with me (together)?
(11) I called many times, but no one answered.
(12) A. What would you like to buy? B. I do not want to buy anything.
(13) You speak Korean well. About how many years did you study?
(14) I’m bored. Shall we go to a tabang or something?
(15) A. Do you suppose whiskey and soju are bad for your health? B. I’m not sure. Let’s not eat them.

Answer Key / 395
Lesson Thirteen

Exercise (1): Sequentials in - (으)니까

(1) 밤에 눈이 왔으니까 골프를 못 칠 거예요. *It snowed last night so I won’t be able to play golf.*

(2) 저희 엄마가 항상 집에 있으니까 걱정 마세요. *Don’t worry — my mom is always at home.*

(3) 한국말이 너무 어려우니까 다른 외국어를 할래요. *Korean is so difficult, I would like to do a different foreign language.*

(4) 오늘 좀 바쁘니까 내일 만날까요? *I am a bit busy today, so shall we meet tomorrow?*

(5) 나는 중국사람이 아니니까 중국말은 못 가르칩니다. *I am not Chinese, so I can’t teach Chinese.*

(6) 영화관 앞으로 나가니까 천구가 빨리 가더라고 있었어요. *When I went out to the front of the theatre, my friend was already waiting.*

(7) 방 안으로 들어가니까 아무도 없었어요. *When I entered the room, there was no one there.*

(8) 밤에 나가니까 눈이 오고 있었어요. *When I went outside, I found that it was snowing.*

(9) 연구실에서 편지를 쓰고 있으니까 일본에서 전화가 왔어요. *While I was writing a letter in my [research] office, I got a phone call from Japan.*

(10) 서울역에 도착하니까 벌써 밤이 있었습니다. *When I arrived at Seoul station, it was already night.*

Exercise (2): - (으)ㄹ 거예요 as Probable Future

(1) 오늘은 교회에 갈 거예요. *My brother is going to go to church.*

(2) 시아버지님은 일주일 동안 계실 거예요. *My father-in-law is going to stay for a week.*

(3) 선생님이 벽타이를 벨 거예요. *The teacher is going to wear a tie.*

(4) 할아버지께서는 모자를 쓸 거예요. *Grandfather is going to wear a hat.*

(5) 내일 숙제가 많을 거예요. *There will be a lot of homework tomorrow.*

(6) 내일 비가 올 거예요. *It is going to rain tomorrow.*

(7) 오늘 밤에 조카가 올 거예요. *Tonight my nephew will come.*

(8) 나는 한국에서 영어를 가르칠 거예요. *I’m going to teach English in Korea.*

(9) 아저씨는 이번 겨울에 가족을 만날 거예요. *He will meet his family this winter.*

(10) 형은 군인이 될 거예요. *My brother will become a soldier.*

(11) 내일 아침부터 눈이 올 거예요. *It is going to snow from tomorrow morning.*

Answer Key / 396
(12) 나는 이번 가을에는 일본에 갈 거예요. *I am going to go to Japan this autumn.*
(13) 조카한테 편지를 줄 거예요? *What are you going to give to your nephew?*
(14) 김 선생님의 내년에 결혼할 거예요. *Mr. Kim is going to get married next year.*
(15) 내 약혼자는 이번 가을에 졸업할 거예요. *My fiance is going to graduate this autumn.*

**Exercise (3): -(으)로-거예요 as Probable Present**

(1) 외삼촌은 중국에 살고 계실 거예요. *My uncle is probably living in China.*
(2) 장인어른은 지금 주무실 거예요. *My father-in-law is probably sleeping now.*
(3) 밖이 추울 거예요. *It's probably cold outside.*
(4) 영국은 날씨가 별로 안 좋을 거예요. *The weather in England is probably not that good.*
(5) 우리 시아버지의 교회에 나가실 거예요. *My mother-in-law will probably go to church.*
(6) 그 아이가 아직 어릴 거예요. *That child is probably still young.*
(7) 그 부모님들이 젊으시지 않실 거예요. *His parents are probably not young.*
(8) 그 상점이 가까울 거예요. *That store is probably close.*
(9) 영화관은 너무 멀 거예요. *The movie theatre is probably too far.*
(10) 우리 시아버지의 돈이 많으실 거예요. *My father-in-law probably has a lot of money.*
(11) 우리 딸이 영어를 잘 할 거예요. *Our daughter-in-law probably speaks English well.*
(12) 선생님의 약혼자는 꽃을 좋아 하실 거예요. *The teacher’s fiance probably likes flowers.*
(13) 내 사위가 미국 사람이지만 한국말을 좀 할 거예요. *My son-in-law is an American, but he probably speaks a little Korean.*
(14) 아저씨는 남동생 집에서 사실 거예요. *He probably lives in his brother’s house.*
(15) 선생님의 아들이 졸업했을 거예요. *The teacher’s son has probably graduated.*
(16) 오빠가 운동하고 있을 거예요. *My brother is probably exercising.*
(17) 고모부가 그거 모르실 거예요. *My uncle probably won’t know that.*
(18) 할아버지가 일찍 주무셨을 거예요. *Grandfather probably went to bed early.*
(19) 영화가 이제 끝났을 거예요. *The movie is probably finished now.*
(20) 조카가 그 편지를 이틀 전에 받았을 거예요. *My nephew probably received the letter two days ago.*
Exercise (4): Kinship terms and Honorifics

(1) 남동생은 놈에는 골프를 치지만 여름에는 테니스를 치어요. 아버님께서는 놈에는 골프를 치지만 여름에는 테니스를 치셔요.
(2) 남동생은 어제 밤에 일찍 잤지만 오늘 아침에는 일찍 일어나지 않았어요. 아버님께서는 어제 밤에 일찍 주무셨지만 오늘 아침에는 일찍 일어나지 않았어요.
(3) 남동생은 고기도 잘 안 먹고 물도 잘 안 마셔요. 아버님께서는 고기도 잘 갓수시지 않고 물도 잘 안 드세요.
(4) 남동생은 늘었지만 마음은 젊어요. 아버님께서는 연세가 많으시지만 마음은 젊으세요.
(5) 남동생은 미느리를 안 좋아하지만 사위는 좋아해요. 아버님께서는 미느리를 좋아하시지 않지만 사위는 좋아하셔요.
(6) 남동생은 어제 오전에는 집에 없었지만 지금은 있어요. 아버님께서는 어제 오전에는 집에 안 계셨지만 지금은 계세요.
(7) 남동생은 낫에는 일을 열심히 해요. 밤에는 쉬어요. 아버님께서는 낫에는 일을 열심히 하세요. 밤에는 쉬세요.
(8) 남동생은 작년에 대학교에서 영어를 가르쳤지만 지금은 안 가르치요. 아버님께서는 작년에 대학교에서 영어를 가르치셨지만 지금은 가르치시지 않아요.
(9) 남동생은 호텔에서 한 시간동안 기다렸지만 친구가 안 왔어요. 아버님께서는 호텔에서 한 시간동안 기다리셨지만 친구가 오시지 않았어요.
(10) 어제 남동생은 여동생에게 돈을 빌어요. 어제 아버님께서는 여동생에게 돈을 주셨어요.
(11) 어제 밤에 남동생은 두 시간동안 라디오를 들었어요. 어제 밤에 우리 아버님께서는 두 시간동안 라디오를 들으셨어요.

Exercise (5): English to Korean Translation

(1) A. 우리 가족은 커피, 식구가 많아요.  
   B. 호 chí 씨, 형제가 몇 명이세요?  
   A. 남동생 네명 하고 여동생 한 명 있어요.  
   B. 형님이나 누님이 없으세요?  
   A. 네, 없어요. 형도 누나도 없어요.  
   B. 호 chí 씨, 자녀분이 있으세요?  
   A. 네, 이제 아들하고 딸이 있어요.
(2) A. 여기서 될 하고 있어요?  
   B. 여자친구를 기다리고 있어요.

Answer Key / 398
Exercise (6). Korean-to-English Translation

(1) That man was probably a soldier.
(2) I’m going to do some sight-seeing in Seoul tomorrow.
(3) A. Are you going to meet Mrs. Lee this evening?
   B. But she already left for Seoul, didn’t she?
(4) It probably snowed last night.
(5) Our grandparents are living in Taegu.
(6) I am going to graduate this spring.
(7) A. How old is your son? B. He is twenty-four.
(8) That woman is probably divorced.
(9) A. I majored in economics.
   B. Really? But it’s boring, don’t you think?
(10) A. Shall we go to the stadium to do some exercise?
     B. But it’s raining!
(11) My sister is writing a book.
(12) Our granddaughter always wears a hat.
(13) I have many members in my family. I have five younger brothers and two older sisters.
(14) A. Sujan speaks Korean really well now.
     B. She studies hard all the time, doesn’t she.
(15) A. There are always lots of customers in this restaurant.
     B. Well, the food is delicious (isn’t it).
(16) It’s cold, so let’s not go outside.
(17) This program is really boring, so don’t watch it.
(18) When I went outside, it was cold.
(19) I telephoned just now, but no one answered.
(20) The movie is probably finished now.
Exercise (7): More Practice with Sequentialis

(1) 집에 돌아가니까 아무도 없었어요. When I returned home there was no one there.
(2) 밖에 나가니까 아주 더웠어요. When I went outside, it was very hot.
(3) 산에 올라가니까 참 추웠어요. When I went up the mountain, it was very cold.
(4) 다시 한번 보니가 외삼촌이었어요. When I looked again, it was my uncle.
(5) 누님한테 전화 거시키가 받지 않았어요. When I called my sister, no one answered.
(6) 양복을 입으니까 다른 사람 같아요. With a suit on you look like a different person.
(7) 은퇴를 하니까 갑자기 심심해요. Now that I have retired, all of a sudden I feel bored.
(8) 맥주 한잔 마시니까 노래를 부르고 싶어요. Now that I’ve had a glass of beer, I want to sing.
(9) 그 여자랑 데이트 하니까 부모님이 싫어하셨어요. When I went on a date with that girl [I discovered] my parents didn’t like her.
(10) 택시 타니까 아저씨가 영어를 잘 했어요. When I got into the taxi [I discovered that] the taxi driver spoke English well.
(11) 좀 피곤하니까 오늘은 나가지 않시다. We’re a bit tired, so let’s not go out today.
(12) 한국은 겨울에 추우니까 봄에 감시다. It’s cold in Korea in the winter, so let’s go in the spring.
(13) 선교사니까 한국말을 잘 할거에요. He’s a missionary, so he probably speaks Korean well.
(14) 나이가 많으니까 너무 빠리 걷지 말아요. He’s old, so don’t walk too quickly.
(15) 내일 눈이 올거니까 다음 주말에 합시다. It’s probably going to snow tomorrow, so let’s do it next week.
(16) 사장님께 말씀 드렸으니까 걱정하지 마십시오. I told the company president, so don’t worry.
(17) 장마가 시작됐으니까 비가 많이 올 것입니다. The rainy season has started so it will rain a lot.
(18) 한국사람이니까 김치를 좋아해요. He’s Korean, so he likes kimchhee.
(19) 커피가 없으니까 홍차로 할래요? There’s no coffee, so shall we have tea?
(20) 닷에 혼자 계시니까 심심하실겁니다. He is staying home alone, so he is probably bored.
(21) They live in a rich neighborhood, so they probably have a lot of money.

Exercise (8): Practice with -고 있어요

(1) My brother is wearing a tie, or My brother is putting on a tie.
(2) A. 뭐 하고 있어요? What are you doing?
   B. 냉커피 마시고 있어요. I’m drinking iced coffee.
(3) Sunhui is listening to jazz.
(4) The president is speaking with a customer/guest.
(5) A. 기억 그 학생이 어디 갔어요?
    Where did that student just go?
   B. 지금 복도에서 기다리고 있을거예요.
    He’s probably waiting in the hallway.
(6) A. 아직도 시청 근처에 살고 계세요?
    Are you still living in the vicinity of city hall?
   B. 아니요, 지금은 전직 집에서 살고 있어요.
    No, I am living at my relative’s house now.
(7) I’m looking for my notebook. Haven’t you seen it?
(8) My older sister and brother are playing tennis now.
(9) A. 언니는 어디 갔어요?
    Where did she go?
   B. 자기서 좀을 쓰고 있잖아요?
    That’s her dancing over there (isn’t it – don’t you know).
(10) Why aren’t you wearing your glasses recently?

Exercise (9): Vocabulary Drill

(1) 아내-남편/ 형-오빠/ 조카/ 할머니/ 장모-시어머니한테서 편지를 받았습니다.
(2) 우리 아버지/ 고모-이모/ 누나-언니/ 부모님/ 할아버지 였/는 돈을 조금 주셨습니다.
(3) 제 친구가 남동생/ 형/ 장인/ 조카/ 부인 옆에 앉았습니다.
(4) 제 친구는 부모님/ 장인/ 손주/ 고모-이모/ 형하고같이 산다.

Answer Key / 401
Lesson Fourteen

Exercise (1): Future-Presumptives in -겠-

(1) 나는 우체국까지 가겠어요. I will go as far as the post office.
(2) 나는 서울대학교에서 공부하겠습니다. I will study at Seoul National University.
(3) 선생님은 무엇을 하시겠어요? What will you do?
(4) 내일까지 집에 돌아오겠어요. I will return home by tomorrow.
(5) 기차를 타고 시내에 가겠습니다. I will take the train downtown.
(6) 나는 한국에서 영어를 가르치겠습니다. I will teach English in Korea.
(7) 점심 식사를 내가 내겠습니다. I'll pay for lunch.
(8) 김 선생님이 자동차를 팔시겠어요? Are you going to sell your car, Mr. Kim?
(9) 다방 앞에서 기다리겠습니다. I will wait in front of the tabang.
(10) 나는 이번 가을에 일본에 가겠습니다. I will go to Japan this autumn.

Exercise (2): Suppositives in -지요

(1) 선생님이 매일 술값을 내지요. Our teacher pays for drinks every day, you know.
(2) 북동산의 할아버지크은 연세가 많으시지요? Pokiog's grandfather is really old, isn't he?
(3) 할머니는 별세 삐년 전에 돌아가셨지요. My grandmother passed away already three years ago, you know.
(4) 언니는 우리와 같이 살지 않지요. My older sister doesn't live with us, you know.
(5) 일본에 돌아가고 싶지요? I imagine you want to go back to Japan (don't you)?
(6) 그 사람은 지금 쉬고 있겠지요. I suppose he's resting now.
(7) 동생 옷이 예쁘지요. My sister's clothes are pretty, you know.
(8) 조금 더 걸어가시요. Let's walk a little more (OK)?
(9) 그 사람을 매일 만나지요. I meet him every day, you know.
(10) 화장실에 내 우산이 없었지요? My umbrella wasn't in the bathroom, was it?
(11) 머리가 아프지요? You have a headache (don't you)?

Answer Key / 402
Exercise (3): English to Korean Translation

(1) 음악회를 좋아하지요? 네, 영화는 좋아하지 않지만 음악회는 좋아해야요.
(2) 그럼, 오늘 밤에 음악회에 갈 거 같아요? 좋네요.
(3) 지금 멋지지요? 모르겠어요.
(4) 날씨가 너무 좋지요? 공원에서 산보를 할까요?
(5) 그 노래를 어떻게 배웠지요? 라디오에서 들었어요.
(6) 어제 밤에 눈이 많이 왔지요?
(7) 그 시티를 시점에서 삽어요? 아니요! 서점에서는 시티를 안 꺼겠어요!
(8) 기차가 세시까지 도착 할까요? 도착하겠습니다!
(9) 텔레비전을 보고 있겠지요?
(10) 형님이 두명만 있어요. or 형님이 두명밖에 없어요.
(11) 김 선생님이 텔레비전에서 나오셨지요?
(12) 작년에 서울에서 살지 않았어요?
(13) 자동차로 올께요.
(14) 값이 십오불 promin 하겠습니다.
(15) 현지를 별 쌓겠습니다.
(16) 한국에 갔어요.
(17) 그 아버지께서는 빌 쌓아가쳤겠지요?
(18) 여기서 잠깐 기다릴게요.
(19) 엘리베이터를 타고 올라왔어요.
(20) 들판에서 만날까요?
(21) 가방 쑥에 돈이 있었어요?
(22) 그저께 일을 많이 했지만 돈은 못 받았어요.

Exercise (4): Practice with -겠지요

(1) 장 선생님은 공부하고 계시겠지요. Mr. Chang is probably/must be studying.
(2) 밖이 춥겠지요. It must be cold outside.
(3) 오빠가 기본이 좋겠지요. My brother is probably/must be in a good mood.
(4) 학생들이 일찍 학교에 오겠지요. The students will probably come to school early.
(5) 그 아이가 어리겠지요. That child is probably be young.
(6) 부모님들이 젊으시겠지요. His parents are probably/must be young.
(7) 그 상점은 평범히 비싸겠지요. That store is probably/must be extremely expensive.

Answer Key/403
(8) 영화관은 너무 멀겠지요. The movie theatre is probably must be too far away.
(9) 시험이 어렵겠지요. The exam will probably be difficult.
(10) 선생님의 약혼자는 꽃을 좋아하시겠지요. The teacher's fiance will probably must like flowers.
(11) 선생님의 딸님이 예쁘겠지요. The teacher's daughter will probably be must be pretty.
(12) 내일 아침부터 눈이 오겠지요. It will probably snow from tomorrow morning.

Exercise (5): only

(1) 저희 학교에는 여자는 많지만, 남자는 한 명밖에 없어요.
(2) 지금은 방학이에요. 학교에는 학생 몇 명밖에 없어요.
(3) 이제 두 사람밖에 안 왔습니다/ 오지 않았습니다.
(4) 백주 몇 명 사셨어요? 한 명밖에 안/ 못 삽어요.
(5) 돈 얼마나 있으세요? 조금밖에 없어요.
(6) 이제 밤에는 네 시간밖에 못 자어요. 그래서 괜찮히 피곤하지요.
(7) 지난 달에는 영화구경을 두 번밖에 가지 않았어요.
(8) 크리스마스에는 선물을 많이 받으셨어요? 아니오, 몇 개밖에 안 받았어요.
(9) 이건 택티 합시다. 시간이 조금밖에 없어요.
(10) 한국말 잘 하세요? 아니오, 한 학기밖에 못 배웠어요.

Exercise (6): Korean-to-English Translation

(1) A. Chinho, don’t you smoke?
   B. I used to smoke, but I quit.
(2) A. Who all came to the last party?
   B. My friends from the dormitory and my church friends came.
(3) A. Sujeon goes to the swimming pool nowadays to learn how to swim.
   B. Really? I used to go there, too.
(4) A. Eric speaks Korean well, doesn’t he?
   B. Yes, he couldn’t speak a word a year ago, but now he speaks really well.
(5) A. Chinho, are you dating that girl these days?
   B. No, until one month ago we met often, but I’m dating another girl now.
(6) A. The weather is hot, isn’t it?
   B. Yes, it’s really hot.

Answer Key/404
(7) A. You like pulgogi, right?
    B. Yes; how many portions should we order?
(8) A. These shoes are much too big for me.
    B. Then give them to me. I’ll wear them.
(9) A. You’re going to change into a suit, right?
    B. Yes; I’ll change quickly.
(10) A. You’re going to quit drinking now, right?
    B. Yes. I’ll quit smoking, too.

Lesson Fifteen

Exercise (1): Matching Synonyms

(1) 좋아요 - 패 informatie요
(2) 주어요 - 드려요
(3) 한 주간 - 일주일 (4) 일년 - 일두달
(5) 읽어요 - 바요
(6) 교수 - 선생
(7) 거기 - 그 곳
(8) 세 명 - 세 사람
(9) 날마다 - 매일
(10) 백화점 - 상점
(11) 대학 - 학교
(12) 공부해야요 - 배워요

Exercise (2): Matching Opposites

(1) 전에 - 후에
(2) 추워요 - 따위요
(3) 여름 - 가을
(4) 일해요 - 쉬어요
(5) 말 - 아들
(6) 일어나요 - 누워요
(7) 가을 - 봄
(8) 손자 - 손녀
(9) 이야기해야요 - 들어요
(10) 내일 - 어제
(11) 할아버지 - 할머니
(12) 싸요 - 비싸요
(13) 오전 - 오후
(14) 밤 - 낮
(15) 사요 - 팔어요
(16) 싸요 - 많아요
(17) 시작해야요 - 마쳐요
(18) 여동생 - 남동생

Answer Key / 405
Exercise (3): Picking the Misfits

(1) 개가 나와요. (2) 교회
(3) 전화를 걸어요. (4) 시내
(5) 심어요. (6) 머리가 아파요.

Exercise (4): Particle Manipulation

(1) 내년까지 결혼을 하고 싶어요.
(2) 기차로 갈까요?
(3) 기차도 지하철도 팁장을.
(4) 이 옷 밖에 없어요.
(5) 비싸겠지만 새 옷을 사겠어요.
(6) 모자도 신발도 샀어요.
(7) 열 명품 파티에 왔어요.
(8) 아침마다 신문을 읽어요.
(9) 서울에서 부산까지 기차로 몇 시간 걸려요?
(10) 하루에 한 번쯤 지하철을 타요.
(11) 오늘 비가 오지만 나는 영화를 보러 시내에 갔어요.
(12) 시간이 얼마나 있어요? 심분만 있어요.
(13) 오늘 고기밖에 안 먹었어요.
(14) 점심에 한 번씩 음악회에 가셔요?
(15) 일년에 몇 번씩 음악회에 가세요?
(16) 오늘 오전 여덟 시에서 오후 여덟 시까지 일을 했어요.
(17) 어제 눈이 오지 않았어요. 그리고 비도 오지 않았어요.

Exercise (7): Change to Formal Style

(1) 영국 본어 싫니까? Are you English?
(2) 나는 영국 사람이 아니에요. I am not English.
(3) 그럼, 어디서 오셨습니까? Then, where are you from?
(4) 미국에서 왔어요. I came from America.
(5) 미국은 한국에서 멀니까? Is America far from Korea?
(6) 가깝지 않습니다. 대단히 멀습니다. It’s not close. It’s very far.
(7) 미국에서는 무슨 일을 하셨습니까? What kind of work did you do in America?
(8) 학교에서 경제학을 가르쳤어요. I taught economics at school.
(9) 지금 저희 학교를 좀 구경하시겠습니까? Would you like to have a look at my school?
(10) 네, 학생들을 만나고 싶습니다. Yes, I’d like to meet the students.

Answer Key / 406
(11) 우리 학교는 작지만, 학생은 많습니다. Our school is small but we have a lot of students.
(12) 담배를 하나 피우시겠습니까? Would you like to smoke a cigarette?
(13) 고맙습니다. 나는 담배를 너무 좋아합니다. 넋 피웁니다. Thank you. I really like cigarettes, I always smoke.
(14) 학생들이 어디서 점심을 먹습니까? Where do the students eat lunch?
(15) 학생들의 집들이 다 가깝습니다. 그래서, 집에서 점심을 먹지요. The student's houses are all close. So they all eat lunch at home, you see.
(16) 선생들은 좋습니까? Are the teachers good?
(17) 여기가 우리 교실입니다. This is our classroom.
(18) 교실이 크죠. The classroom is really large.
(19) 교실이 크지만, 책이 많지 않습니다. The classroom is big but there are not many books.
(20) 저희 학교는 돈이 없습니다. 그래서, 책을 많이 못 사습니다. Our school doesn't have any money. So, we can't buy many books.

Exercise (8): Numerals and Counters

(1) 어제 저는 여섯 시간, 일시부터 네 시까지, 사십분만, 일곱 시 십분
전부터 한 시 십분까지, 세 시간 일을 했습니다.
(2) 지난주에 서울에서 천구 세 명, 극장 내 극단, 미국 의사 선생님 열
분, 만병원, 건물 앞이 돌아서 체 됐어요.
(3) 교실에서 신문 세 장, 책 오십 권, 학생 사십 명, 선생님 세 분, 창문
여섯개하고 문 두 개가 있어요.
(4) 중국어를 삼년동안, 오주일만, 몇 달, 친구 밤 십일년에, 이월부터
유월까지 공부했어요.
(5) 내 남동생이 두 살, 한 살, 네 살, 마흔 살, 스무 살.
(6) 우체국 앞에 자전거 두 개, 자동차 네 대, 네 세 마리, 의사 선생님
다섯 분(케예요) 있어요.
(7) 저는 이십일년 전에, 친구 밤 십년 사월 일일에, 친구 밤 십일 년
구월 십일에, 친구 밤 십일 년 오월 십칠일에, 친구 밤 십일
오월 십일 사일에 태어났어요.
(8) 기차는 오전 여섯 시 십분에, 오전 네 시 십분에, 오전 일곱 시
십칠분에, 오전 다섯 시 오분에, 오전 한 시 십구분에 떠나요.

Exercise (9): Translate into English

(1) That movie was really boring. I wanted to leave in the middle.
(2) Six years ago I wore glasses, but nowadays I wear contact lenses, you know.

Answer Key / 407
(3) I put that book on top of the desk yesterday. I suppose someone is reading it.
(4) Until yesterday I wanted to go to Japan, but now I want to go to Korea.
(5) A. Have you brushed your teeth?
B. I'm brushing them now (aren't I?).
(6) I will give you three questions each. But, can you solve them?
(7) I only study political science at university. Sometimes I do six hours of homework per day. Then after that I rest.
(8) You haven't met anyone this morning? No. I haven't been out yet, have I?
(9) Tomorrow is the beginning of school. I am going to study hard this year.
(10) I will study hard, but my brother will most likely be mainly playing (having fun).
(11) I don't want to go out. I want to drink coffee at home.
(12) This food doesn't taste very good. Shall we eat something else?
(13) How much is that book? I'll get some money out of the bank.
(14) Yesterday I went out to find our cat, but I couldn't find him.
(15) I'm doing well thanks to my boss.
(16) A. I can't solve this problem.
B. Then I'll do it.
(17) Hurry up and go to sleep. It's really late, (isn't it?)!
(18) Do you suppose it will be cold tomorrow? I don't know.
(19) Shall we go to school? But it's Sunday today!
(20) That's my shirt, isn't it? Please give it to me quickly!
(21) Let's go and drink coffee in a tabang on Thursday.
(22) On the fifth floor they sell gloves and wallets.
(23) Would you like to play tennis?
(24) I go to church twice a month.
(25) I drank all the coffee but it didn't taste good.
(26) Has the boss arrived already? Then give him a glass of beer.
(27) What country are you from? I'm from Russia, but I came here ten years ago, you see.
(28) These books are all different. And what's more, they are all interesting. Which book store did you buy them from?
(29) My daughter is smart, but she doesn't study very hard.
(30) I don't like that story. Tell another one.
(31) The weather is bad today, but I'm in a good mood.
(32) Don't eat that bread!
(33) I'm thinking of finishing this work by next week.
(34) He doesn't live with us, but of course he wants to live with us.
(35) Shall we sit on the grass?

Answer Key / 408
(36) I am looking for a girlfriend, but I don’t want to get married yet.
(37) In London both the subway and the buses have lots of problems.
(38) This semester I am studying political science, economics, and Korean language.
(39) How many people are there in your family?
(40) My father goes to church, but my younger brother doesn’t go.
(41) I don’t have a chance to read any books these days.
(42) Last summer my professor came to my house.
(43) My nephew is still a bachelor, but I suppose he will get married sometime.
(44) Does Grandfather give you a lot of money?
(45) I’m thinking of seeing a play downtown this evening.
(46) Do they sell flowers in the book store? Of course they don’t sell them.
(47) My younger cousin is a soldier in the States.
(48) How many siblings do you have?
(49) Would you like coffee? No, I want to go to bed early.
(50) He probably learned some Russian in the United States.

**Exercise (10): Translate into Korean**

(1) 벌써 오셨어요. or 벌써 왔겠어요. or 벌써 왔겠어요.
(2) 그 학생은 브라운 선생님을 기다리고 있어요.
(3) 삼천원밖에 없어요. 그래서 이 물건을 다 못 사겠어요.
(4) 그 자전거를 자주 타세요?
(5) 십오분만 공부를 할거네요.
(6) 이번주에 아버님한테서 돈을 못 받을거예요.
(7) 박 선생님의 조카가 내년에 중입할거예요?
(8) 몇 시지요?
(9) 공원에서 같이 산보를 할래요?
(10) 그 여자는 형의 약혼자일거예요.
(11) 실례하지만, 잠깐 위층에 갈께요.
(12) 모레 장 선생님의 누님을 만날거예요.
(13) 지금 이 옷을 좀 입을래요?
(14) 기본이 좋으세요?
(15) 머리가 몹시 아파요.
(16) 여름에 시험 많이 있을 거예요.
(17) 버스 정류장이 어디 있습니까?
(18) 여제 봤지만 몰라요.
(19) 머리를 쫓으세요!
(20) 집에 계실까요? 물론 계시겠지요!

*Answer Key / 409*